

PROJECT MANUAL

PROJECT NO. DGS 0977-0009 PHASE 1

**Contract No. DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1.1 – General Construction
Contract No. DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1.2 – HVAC Construction
Contract No. DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1.4 – Electrical Construction**

For

**PA MILITARY MUSEUM
UPGRADE HVAC SYSTEMS AND OTHER ENERGY SAVING EQUIPMENT
Harris Township, Centre County, PA**

**COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA
DEPARTMENT OF GENERAL SERVICES
HARRISBURG, PENNSYLVANIA**

**Josh Shapiro, Governor
Reginald B. McNeill II, Secretary**



Date: June 18, 2024

**AE Works Ltd.
1315 W. College Avenue, Suite 101, State College, PA 16803
Phone: (814) 235-7373 Fax: (814) 235-7374**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>TITLE</u>
	Project Manual Cover Page Table of Contents
<u>DIVISION 01</u>	<u>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</u>
Section 010100	Summary of Work
Section 010250	Unit Prices in Lump Sum Contracts
Section 010300	Base Bid Descriptions
Section 010400	Coordination and Control
Section 013100	Sequence of Construction & Milestones
Section 014000	Quality Control Testing Services
Section 014010	Quality Assurance Testing and Inspection Services
Section 015000	Temporary Utilities
Section 016200	Historical and Museum Commission Projects – Supplemental Provisions
Section 019113	General Commissioning Requirements
<u>DIVISION 02</u>	<u>EXISTING CONDITIONS</u>
Section 024119	Selective Demolition
<u>DIVISION 03</u>	<u>CONCRETE</u>
Section 033053	Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete
<u>DIVISION 04</u>	<u>MASONRY</u>
Section 042120	Maintenance Unit Masonry
<u>DIVISION 05</u>	<u>METALS</u>
Section 053100	Steel Decking
Section 054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
Section 055000	Metal Fabrications
<u>DIVISION 06</u>	<u>WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 07</u>	<u>THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION</u>
Section 070800	Commissioning of Building Envelope
Section 072100	Thermal Insulation
Section 072119	Foamed-in-Place Insulation
Section 072200	Roof and Deck Insulation
Section 072413	Polymer-Based Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)
Section 075323	Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing
Section 075324	EPDM Roofing Repair
Section 076000	Flashing and Sheet Metal
Section 077100	Roof Specialties
Section 079200	Joint Sealants
<u>DIVISION 08</u>	<u>OPENINGS</u>
Section 081213	Hollow Metal Frames
Section 081416	Flush Wood Doors
Section 081613	Reinforced Fiberglass Door and Frame System
Section 084113	Aluminum-Framed Storefronts
Section 087100	Door Hardware
Section 088000	Glazing

<u>DIVISION 09</u>	<u>FINISHES</u>
Section 092216	Gypsum Board Assemblies on Metal Framing
Section 092900	Gypsum Board
Section 096513	Resilient Base and Accessories
Section 099123	Interior Painting
<u>DIVISION 10</u>	<u>SPECIALTIES</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 11</u>	<u>EQUIPMENT</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 12</u>	<u>FURNISHINGS</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 13</u>	<u>SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION</u>
Section 130121	FRP Buildings
<u>DIVISION 14</u>	<u>CONVEYING EQUIPMENT</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 21</u>	<u>FIRE SUPPRESSION</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 22</u>	<u>PLUMBING</u>
	Not Used
<u>DIVISION 23</u>	<u>HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING</u>
Section 230130.51	Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning
Section 230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
Section 230516	Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping
Section 230517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
Section 230518	Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
Section 230519	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
Section 230523.12	Ball Valves for HVAC Piping
Section 230523.14	Check Valves for HVAC Piping
Section 230529	Hanger and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
Section 230533	Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping
Section 230548.13	Vibration Control for HVAC
Section 230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
Section 230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
Section 230713	Duct Insulation
Section 230716	HVAC Equipment Insulation
Section 230719	HVAC Piping Insulation
Section 230800	Commissioning of HVAC Systems
Section 230900	HVAC Instrumental and Controls
Section 230923.12	Control Dampers
Section 230993.11	Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC
Section 231123	Facility Natural Gas Piping
Section 232113	Hydronic Piping
Section 232113.13	Underground Hydronic Piping
Section 232113.33	Open-Loop Well Water Piping
Section 232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties
Section 232123	Hydronic Pumps
Section 232533	HVAC Makeup-Water Filtration Equipment
Section 233113	Metal Ducts

Section 233300	Air Duct Accessories
Section 233713.13	Air Diffusers
Section 233713.23	Registers and Grilles
Section 235216	Condensing Boilers
Section 235700	Heat Exchangers for HVAC
Section 237416.13	Packaged Rooftop Heat Pumps
Section 237433	Dedicated Outdoor-Air Units
Section 238146	Water-to-Water Heat Pumps
Section 238146.13	Water-to-Air Heat Pumps
Section 238216.11	Hydronic Air Coils
Section 238239.16	Propeller Unit Heaters
Section 238413.29	Self-Contained Steam Humidifiers

DIVISION 25
Section 250800

INTEGRATED AUTOMATION
Commissioning of Integrated Automation

DIVISION 26

Section 260100
Section 260200
Section 260500
Section 260519
Section 260523
Section 260526
Section 260529
Section 260533
Section 260543
Section 260544
Section 260553
Section 260800
Section 262726
Section 262816
Section 265119
Section 265219

ELECTRICAL

Basic Electrical Requirements
Quality Requirements
Common Work Results for Electrical
Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables
Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
Identification for Electrical Systems
Commissioning of Electrical Systems
Wiring Devices
Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
LED Interior Lighting
Emergency and Exit Lighting

DIVISION 27

COMMUNICATIONS
Not Used

DIVISION 28

ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
Not Used

DIVISION 31

Section 312000

EARTHWORK
Earth Moving

DIVISION 32

Section 321216

EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS
Asphalt Paving (asphalt repair/patching)

DIVISION 33

Section 330500
Section 331114

UTILITIES
Common Work Results for Utilities
Open Loop Heat Pump Extraction Discharge Wells

APPENDIX

PERMITS
PA Uniform Construction Code – Administered by PA Labor & Industry for this Project

SECTION 010100
SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 LOCATION

- A. PA Military Museum, 51 Boal Avenue, Boalsburg, PA 16827

1.3 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

- A. Alteration and Renovation Project to address Façade and Building Envelope Repairs and Replacement of the HVAC Systems along with other miscellaneous interior repairs.

1.4 CONTRACT DURATION

- A. The Construction Contract duration shall be **339** calendar days commencing on the date of the Initial Job Conference.

1.5 WORK INCLUDED

- A. The Work of this Project consists of, but is not necessarily limited to, the following. Detailed requirements of the Work are described in the pertinent specification Sections and/or shown on the Drawings.
- B. General Construction (.1) Contract:
 - 1. Masonry Repair and Repointing along with Window and Door Replacement
 - 2. Interior Repairs to existing Vapor Barrier System and other minor alterations
 - 3. Construct mechanical mezzanine extension
- C. HVAC Construction (.2) Contract:
 - 1. Remove and replace primary HVAC equipment and modify existing systems
 - 2. Install New Open Loop Geothermal System, Equipment and Piping utilizing recently installed and tested Geothermal Wells.
- E. Electrical Construction (.4) Contract:
 - 1. Alter and upgrade existing Electrical system to accommodate new HVAC equipment

1.6 SPECIFICATION FORMAT

- A. The Specifications for the work of the separate prime Contracts are bound in one volume. Technical provisions which apply to each prime Contract are included in the Divisions listed below:
- B. General Construction (.1) Contract: Divisions 01 through 14 and Divisions 31, 32 and applicable Sections of Division 33

- C. HVAC Construction (.2) Contract: Divisions 01, 23 and applicable Sections of Divisions 02, 03, 05, 07, 09, 25, 31, 32 and 33.

- D. Electrical Construction (.4) Contract: Divisions 01, 25, 26 and applicable Sections of 02, 03, 07, 08, 31, 32, and 33.

Note: The term Professional refers to the Architectural or Engineering firm retained by the Department to design and document the work of the Project, or the Professional's authorized representative. The term Professional may also refer to the Client Agency if the Project design was delegated to the Client Agency. Throughout the Specifications and Drawings wherever the terms 'A/E', 'Architect' or 'Engineer' are used it shall mean Professional.

1.8 QUESTIONS DURING BIDDING PERIOD

- A. Direct all questions pertaining to the Project to the Project Professional utilizing the e-Builder Enterprise Software Program (e-Builder) as described in the Instructions To Bidders.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 010250
UNIT PRICES IN LUMP SUM CONTRACTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit Price: An amount bid by the Contractor for a unit quantity of a work item listed in the Schedule of Unit Prices.
- B. Schedule of Unit Prices: The schedule of work items in the Contract for which the Contractor is to provide a price for adjusting the Contract amount for changes in quantity of work required.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit Prices will be used as the basis for computing "additions to" or "deductions from" the Lump Sum Contract amount for extra work and for reductions in quantities of work called for by the Contract Documents. The unit price applied for "Adds" to the bid quantity will be equal to the unit price applied for "Deducts" to the bid quantity for each item listed. Unit Prices shall remain binding and irrevocable for the entire period of the Contract.
- B. Unit Prices shall include all costs by the Contractor, his suppliers and subcontractors for the work, including labor, material, tools, equipment, insurance, taxes, field overhead, general overhead and profit and bond. The work shall include all incidental items required to complete the work.
- C. The Department will not be bound by the Unit Prices unless it accepts the same by indication on the Construction Contract. The Department may award the contract without accepting the bidder's Unit Prices. If the Department and the Contractor are unable to agree upon a new Unit Price, the Department may at its discretion, direct the Contractor to perform such work on a force account basis.
- D. Work added to the Contract will be of the same general character as that required by the Contract Documents. Contractors are to assume that changes will be made in a timely manner, not requiring the Contractor to incur additional mobilization or other disproportional expenses in connection with the adjustment in contract quantities.
- E. Each bidder shall carefully check the drawings and specifications for the Base Bid quantities required to be included under the Contract.
- F. Contractors are to comply with requirements of the Instructions to Bidders and instructions for completion of the Bid Form.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. The following Schedules of Unit Prices apply to the Contracts indicated on the Schedules. The Contractor is to provide Unit Prices for all items.

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION (.1) CONTRACT – SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QUANTITY IN LUMP SUM BID			
			Base Bid No.1	Base Bid No. 2	Base Bid No. 3	Base Bid No. 4
1	Base Bid No. 1 - Top of Wall Masonry Repair	Square Feet (SF)	260.00	260.00	260.00	260.00
2	Base Bid No. 1 – Above Door Masonry Repair	Square Feet (SF)	100.00	100.00	100.00	100.00
3	Base Bid No. 3 – Window Replacement Masonry Repair	Square Feet (SF)	0.00	0.00	340.00	340.00
4	Base Bid No. 4 – Bottom of Wall Masonry Repair	Square Feet (SF)	0.00	0.00	0.00	320.00

1.5 CHANGES

- A. All changes in the quantity of work for which there is a Unit Price will be authorized using change order procedures provided in the General Conditions. Change Orders shall be written prior to performing the work where possible but may be written after the work is authorized, completed and measured when quantities are not able to be determined in advance.

1.6 MEASUREMENT

- A. Measurement of the work quantities where the work is performed prior to issuance of a Change Order shall be net quantities and not include cutting waste, or other adjustments to the unit of measure of the Unit Price. The Department and Contractor shall arrive at a rational procedure for measurement prior to performing the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for measurement and will submit the calculations and worksheets to the Department for approval.

1.7 DESCRIPTIONS OF UNIT PRICES

- A. General Construction (.1) Contract:

1. Unit Price 1: Base Bid No. 1 – Top of Wall Masonry Repair

- a. This unit price item (measured in Square Feet (SF)) applies to the masonry repair and repointing at the top of the wall as indicated on the building elevations (refer to Drawing A-2.1) and detailed (refer to Drawing A-3.3, Details 1 and 2) to bring the masonry back to a completed and weather tight condition in accordance with Specification Section 040120 – Maintenance of Unit Masonry.

2. Unit Price 2: Base Bid No. 2 – Above Door Masonry Repair

- a. This unit price item (measured in Square Feet (SF)) applies to the masonry removal, repair and repointing above the door openings as indicated on the building elevations (refer to Drawing A-2.1), and detailed (refer to Drawing A-4.1, Details 4 and 5) to bring the masonry back to a completed and weather tight condition following the installation of the new through-wall flashing in accordance with Specification Section 040120 – Maintenance of Unit Masonry.

3. Unit Price 3: Base Bid No. 3 – Window Replacement Masonry Repair
 - a. This unit price item (measured in Square Feet (SF)) applies to the masonry removal, repair and repointing of the exterior masonry and the removal and repair of the interior masonry above and around the window openings as indicated on the building elevations (refer to Drawing A-2.2), interior elevations (refer to Drawing A-2.4, elevations 1 and 2), and detailed (refer to Drawing A-4.1, Details 6 through 12) to bring the exterior masonry back to a completed and weather tight condition and the interior masonry back to a square, continuous edge condition in coordination with and the replacement of the windows in accordance with Specification Section 040120 – Maintenance of Unit Masonry.

4. Unit Price 4: Base Bid No. 4 – Bottom of Wall Masonry Repair
 - a. This unit price item (measured in Square Feet (SF)) applies to the masonry repair and flashing upgrades at the bottom of the wall as indicated on the building elevations (refer to Drawing A-2.2), and detailed (refer to Drawing A-3.5 Detail 11 and 12) to bring the masonry back to a completed and weather tight condition following the installation of the new through-wall flashing in accordance with Specification Section 040120 – Maintenance of Unit Masonry.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 010300
BASE BID DESCRIPTIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections “General Conditions of the Construction Contract”, “Special Conditions”, and “Division 1 - General Requirements” form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes identification of each Base Bid and description of the changes to be associated with each Base Bid.

1.3 DESCRIPTION OF SEPARATE BASE BIDS

A. GENERAL CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT (DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1 PHASE 1.1)

1. Base Bid No. 1:

- a. Shall include all the work indicated on the Contract Drawings and described in the Contract Specifications except that work specifically called out as being part of another Base Bid. The work associated with Base Bid No. 1 will be completed over during Construction Sequence No. Two.

2. Base Bid No. 2:

- a. Same as Base Bid No. 1, except add the work associated with the installation of a new suspended gypsum ceiling system in the Collections Area (Rooms 100, 101, 102, 104, 104A and 105). The work associated with this Base Bid and Base Bid No. 1 will be completed as part of Construction Sequence No. Two.

3. Base Bid No. 3:

- a. Same as Base Bid No. 2, except add the work associated with the installation of new aluminum windows along with the necessary interior and exterior wall alterations work to accommodate the window replacement work. The work associated with this Base Bid will be completed as part of Construction Sequence No. Two.

4. Base Bid No. 4:

- a. Same as Base Bid No. 3, except add the work associated with the exterior masonry repair work at the bottom of the existing walls. The work associated with this Base Bid will be completed as part of Construction Sequence No. Two.

B. HVAC CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT (DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1 PHASE 1.2)

1. Base Bid No. 1:

- a. Shall include all the work indicated on the Contract Drawings and described in the Contract Specifications except that work specifically called out as being part of another Base Bid. The work associated with Base Bid No. 1 will be completed during Construction Sequence No. Two.

2. Base Bid No. 2:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 1, except add coordination and installation of the HVAC Construction Work with the installation of a new suspended gypsum ceiling system in the Collections Area (Rooms 100, 101, 102, 104, 104A and 105). The work associated with this Base Bid and Base Bid No. 1 will be completed as part of Construction Sequence No. Two.
3. Base Bid No. 3:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 2.
4. Base Bid No. 4:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 2.

D. ELECTRICAL CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT (DGS 0977-0009 Phase 1PHASE 1.4)

1. Base Bid No. 1:
 - a. Shall include all the work indicated on the Contract Drawings and described in the Contract Specifications except that work specifically called out as being part of another Base Bid. The work associated with Base Bid No. 1 will be completed during Construction Sequence No. Two.
2. Base Bid No. 2:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 1, except add coordination and installation of the Electrical Construction Work with the installation of a new suspended gypsum ceiling system in the Collections Area (Rooms 100, 101, 102, 104, 104A and 105). The work associated with this Base Bid and Base Bid No. 1 will be completed as part of Construction Sequence No. Two.
3. Base Bid No. 3:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 2.
4. Base Bid No. 4:
 - a. Same as Base Bid No. 2.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 010400
COORDINATION AND CONTROL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections " General Conditions of the Construction Contract ", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This section includes the on-site provisions that govern the performance of the work to complete this Project.

1.3 CONTRACTS - FOR THIS PROJECT CONSTRUCTION

- A. DGS 0977-0009 PHASE 1.1 General Construction (Lead Contractor)
- B. DGS 0977-0009 PHASE 1.2 HVAC Construction
- C. DGS 0977-0009 PHASE 1.4 Electrical Construction

1.4 VISIT TO SITE

- A. For access to the site during the bidding period contact the Client Agency site personnel with phone number listed below:
 - 1. Client Agency Site Representative: Tyler Gum
 - 2. Telephone Number: 814 466-6263

1.5 UNIDENTIFIED HAZARDOUS MATERIALS (ASBESTOS, CHEMICALS, ETC.)

- A. There is a possibility that hazardous materials not identified in the contract documents may be discovered on this project. Should it be determined that some or all of the hazardous materials must be removed, the Contractor shall obtain an estimate for said removal from a Subcontractor who is experienced in the field, has insurance and is knowledgeable of the regulations as they apply. The Contractor may provide the estimate itself if it is qualified in the applicable hazardous materials field. The Department shall consider authorizing a Change Order for the removal of the hazardous material to the extent necessary.
- B. The Contractor or Subcontractor must comply with all requirements of the General Conditions, including the maintenance of insurance up to the limit required under the General Conditions.
- C. Should a hazardous material be encountered on the job, the Contractor shall comply with all statutes and regulations of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania and all rules and regulations of the United States Environmental Protection Agency as they apply during construction and demolition work and the disposal of hazardous material. Particular attention is drawn to Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40, Part 61, Section 112 of Clean Air Act and PA Department of Labor and Industry, Act 194 for asbestos.
- D. The Contractor shall comply fully with the regulations of OSHA as they pertain to the protection of workers exposed to the emission of asbestos fibers, chemicals, etc. and shall take all steps necessary to protect its employees, as well as all other people occupying the building.

- E. Whenever a hazardous material is to be removed or disposed of, the Contractor is required to make proper notification to the Bureau of Air Quality in the PA Department of Environmental Protections' Regional Office, PA Department of Labor and Industry and EPA as applicable, and is required to obtain and pay for any permits required. Disposal shall conform to all applicable regulations and documentation shall be required when, applicable.

1.6 LEAD PAINT

- A. All work is to be performed with the assumption that all painted surfaces are lead containing. Each Prime Contractor is responsible for following all required OSHA 1926.62 'Lead In Construction' standards when disturbing or impacting these painted surfaces during the course of the renovations, including but not limited to activities such as: cutting and patching, core drilling, penetration, anchoring, fastening, etc. The area(s) shall be visually clean upon completion of any of these activities.
 - 1. Action Plan: Contractor(s) shall submit an Action Plan that conforms to Paragraph 1.6.A.1-3 herein for approval at the Initial Job Conference, which specifically outlines details of means and methods to be used for each dust-generating activity involving lead-painted surfaces, erection of critical barriers and plastic sheeting for dust control, subsequent exposure assessment, personal protective equipment, hygiene and clean-up.
 - 2. Contractor(s) shall utilize means and methods that preclude dust generation to complete work that disturbs/impacts lead-containing paint (i.e., paint stripper, HEPA-assisted drills, etc.).
 - 3. Contractor(s) shall ensure areas beyond work area are not contaminated, and shall immediately stop work and erect plastic sheeting to prevent the spread of dust, anytime means and methods inadvertently create dust.

1.7 MOLD

- A. In the event mold is encountered, the Contractor shall implement corrective actions to protect workers, other building occupants, and to prevent the disturbance of mold in affected areas. Although not presently regulated by EPA and/or OSHA, the EPA does provide industry standards regarding worker safety and abatement procedures, which are the minimum procedures to be followed if mold is encountered.
- B. Any mold that appears as a result of construction shall be abated immediately by the Contractor responsible for this condition. The affected surface shall be cleaned, removed, and replaced. Inspection and testing shall be done by a qualified testing agency to confirm the mold has been removed in its entirety.

1.8 TESTING OF EQUIPMENT

- A. After any equipment furnished under the contract and any permanent heating, ventilating, plumbing, drainage or electrical systems and equipment have been installed or modified, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to operate its equipment for a satisfactory period of time, as required by the Department for proper testing and instructing the operating personnel. Fuel, electricity and water required for proper testing of permanent equipment and for the period of instructing personnel, shall be paid for by the Contractor testing its equipment.

1.9 PROJECT PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Refer to Section 016200 Historical and Museum Commission Projects.

1.10 INSTRUCTIONS AND TRAINING

- A. Refer to the General Conditions of the Construction Contract, as specified in the applicable technical portion of each specification for "Operations and Maintenance Instruction Manuals" and "Record Drawings" requirements.
- B. Unless approved by the Department, training shall not be scheduled/conducted until Record Drawings, Operation and Maintenance Instruction Manuals, valve tag lists, equipment and piping system identification, and all software programming is complete.
- C. Provide full on-site training and instruction to designated Commonwealth personnel given by competent manufacturer's authorized personnel thoroughly familiar with all technical and operational aspects of the installed items. Instructions are to cover operation and maintenance of all systems, equipment components and other items as specified and furnished under this contract. Instructional digital video recordings may be used to augment required instructions and training but may not be substituted for the in person on-site training. All on-site training shall be digitally recorded by the Contractor. The digital video files are to be turned over to the Client Agency.
- D. Contractor shall provide an outline of the training and course content, which shall be submitted and accepted by the Professional and the Department prior to conducting training.
- E. Conduct instruction and training during regular working hours. For training on complicated systems, allow at least one-half of the training time to be at and/or with the system equipment.
- F. Provide additional training and instructions for all significant modifications and/or changes made under the terms and/or conditions of the manufacturer's and/or Contractor's warranty.
- G. The Contractor shall maintain and submit a sign-in list that clearly documents all personnel attending the training.

1.11 PROJECT SIGN

- A. **Provide a Project Sign.** Refer to the General Conditions of the Construction Contract.

1.12 REUSE OF MATERIALS

- A. No removed materials or equipment shall be reinstalled in the work, unless so noted on the Drawing or in these Specifications.

1.13 GENERAL

- A. All construction trailers, offices, equipment and materials required to be on-site shall be located as shown on the Drawings, or at the direction of the Department.
- B. Building Security & Protection: Following the completion of Construction Sequence No. One – Administrative Period, the Owner will not occupy the building during construction (specifically during Construction Sequence No. Two). General Construction Contractor is required to leave the construction area and the building in a secure state at the end of each day. The building is required to be placed in a secure state shortly after the working hours and no later than 5 PM. A secured building is defined as providing hard-shell, hard-type coverings over all temporary openings during door and window installations to ensure the building is secure thereby allowing motion detectors and door contacts (unless temporary door openings are in place) to function properly. The existing security system including the motion detectors, door contacts, and cameras is to be maintained by the General Contractor throughout construction and armed each day as part of securing the building. Maintaining the security system entails that the Client Agency Staff continue to be notified of alarms and can respond to the site. DGS and the Client Agency will be provided with key or access to code to enter the building as needed when

the building is in a secure state. The existing building protection systems (heat and smoke detectors) will be maintained throughout construction. When necessary due to the nature of the construction, to avoid contaminants and a chance of false alarms, smoke detectors will either be bagged or temporarily removed from the system and unbagged and/or re-installed when construction activities have been completed. In the areas where IT equipment, artifacts, and high value items are stored, and where smoke detectors been bagged or temporarily removed to avoid contamination and false alarms, temporary heat detectors will need to be provided and tied into the building protection system to maintain protection of the building during construction.

1.14 WORKING HOURS

- A. The Contractor's available working hours shall be from 7:00 A.M. to 4:00 P.M., Monday through Friday.
- B. Work during different hours, or work on Saturdays, Sundays, State and National Holidays or overtime work, must have the Regional Director's or his designee's prior written approval. Work on these days if approved shall be at no additional cost or time to the Contract.
- C. This shall not apply in those unforeseen isolated and/or emergency instances when a particular operation must be performed in a continuous sequence that extends the working day beyond the approved working hours. Coordinate with the Department in these instances.
- D. The Department's failure to approve different working hours, weekend or holiday working hours, or overtime hours is not cause for a claim against the Department for delay or any added costs or time to the Contract.
- E. Utility shut-downs required for tie-ins to existing systems shall be done in off-hours, weekends, and/or holidays to minimize the impact on the operations of the Client Agencies (and/ or surrounding buildings). These costs shall be anticipated and included in the Contractor's bid. Contractors are to follow all requirements in Article 6.21 and 6.22 of the General Conditions and submit the "Utility Shutdown Checklist" form from eBuilder Forms Module for approval.

1.15 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Prefinished materials shall arrive at job site in their original unopened cartons or other protective packaging necessary to protect finishes. Materials shall be stored in such packages until time of application. Flat materials such as panels shall arrive and remain on adequate support to ensure flatness and prevent damage.
- B. Store all materials, equipment and bulk items prior to installation in clean, dry, well-ventilated locations away from uncured concrete, masonry or damage of any kind. Waterproof tarpaulin or polyethylene sheeting must allow for air circulation under covering.
- C. Coordinate storage location with the Department.
- D. Refer to each section for specific delivery, handling and storage instructions of items specified.

1.16 PARKING

- A. Parking shall be limited to areas designated by the Client Agency Site Representative. Refer to Drawing G.2 for Contractor designated parking areas. The Contractor designated parking areas may change as needed to accommodate the operation of the facility. All parking is subject to prior approval of the Department and Client Agency.

1.17 TRAFFIC

- A. The Lead Contractor shall establish at the Initial Job Conference a construction staging and traffic plan for the project which accommodates the Client Agency's access to and operation of

the site. This plan is subject to the Department's review and acceptance. This acceptance does not relieve the Contractors of their responsibilities regarding safety coordination, and adherence to all traffic laws and ordinances.

1.18 SUBSURFACE INFORMATION

- A. Any available data concerning subsurface materials or conditions based on soundings, test pits or test borings, has been obtained by the Department for its own use in designing this Project. The Test Boring logs are incorporated into the construction contract as a Contract Document. However, the Geotechnical Report with all other exhibits is provided for information purposes only; it is not to be relied upon or included in the construction contract as a Contract Document. The Report is available to Bidders but the Bidders must agree and acknowledge that the information and recommendations in the Report are not warranted for accuracy, correctness or completeness, and is not incorporated as a Contract Document.
- B. Test Boring logs reflect the conditions at the specific locations of each test boring only. The Contractor accepts full responsibility for any conclusion drawn with respect to conditions between test borings. Bidders shall therefore undertake to perform their own investigation of existing subsurface conditions. The Department will not be responsible in any way for the consequences of the Contractor's failure to conduct such an investigation. Excavation for the Project is "Unclassified" as fully described in the Earthwork Section.

1.20 ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Prime Contractor and its Subcontractors shall perform their work in a manner which shall minimize the possibility of air, water, land and noise pollution, in accordance with the General Conditions of the Construction Contract.
- B. The name, address and telephone number of the Department of Environmental Protection Regional Office is furnished below. This office shall be contacted for waste disposal permits and for information concerning sites already approved for conducting waste disposal.

Northcentral Regional Office
208 West 3rd Street, Suite 101
Williamsport, Pa. 17701-6448
(570) 327-3636

Counties: Bradford, Cameron, Clearfield,
Centre, Clinton, Columbia,
Lycoming, Montour,
Northumberland, Potter, Snyder,
Sullivan, Tioga, and Union

1.21 OFFICE FOR CONTRACTOR

- A. Each Prime Contractor shall provide and maintain, at its cost, a suitable office on the premises, at a location shown on the Lead Contractor's accepted staging plan. The Contractor shall provide and maintain heating facilities and supply fuel for same in cold weather, and shall remove the office from the premises at completion of all work. Provide electrical, telephone and internet service. No water or sanitary hook up is available to accommodate Contractor trailers.

1.22 DGS CONSTRUCTION PROJECT COORIDNATOR OFFICE

- A. The Lead Contractor shall prepare a drawing of the DGS Construction Project Coordinator Office along with proposed arrangement of the Contractor's Office and construction staging area for the Department's approval. An electronic copy in .pdf format of the sketch plan is to be submitted through e-Builder to the Department within 7 calendar days of Effective Date of Contract or issuance of Letter of Intent whichever occurs first.
- B. The Lead Contractor shall furnish, within five (5) days of the Department's approval of the Lead Contractor's drawing, a suitably finished mobile office of at least 720 square feet (12-foot x 60-foot) including the necessary extension or provisioning of utilities and service lines required for its proper operation. The Lead Contractor shall clean this office at least bi-weekly, maintain

and pay all utility bills, for the duration of the Project, through the completion of all punch list items (unless directed otherwise by the Department). The Lead Contractor shall disconnect all utilities and remove the office from the premises when directed by the Department. The office shall be suitably partitioned as directed by the Department and shall include:

1. Heating and Air-Conditioning
 2. Screened and locking windows, on at least two (2) sides, provided with adequate window blinds
 3. Locking doors, complete with entrance steps and up to four (4) sets of keys
 4. Lighting and electrical receptacles of suitable number and capacity
 5. One (1) Restroom with water closet, and lavatory with hot and cold water
 6. First quality mercury thermometer on outside which records the high and low temperature for the day
 7. The Lead contractor shall arrange for all electrical power hook-up/service (as well as water and sanitary, if required), and shall be responsible for all cost necessary to provide these services to the field office (including monthly utility costs). If electrical service is not readily available from the utility provider, a temporary generator shall be provided and maintained (including fuel) until such time power can be established.)
 8. Lead Contractor to install (4) 9'x20' parking spaces directly adjacent to the DGS Office location. Specific location of parking spaces to be coordinated with Constuction Project Manager.
 9. Sanitary holding tank (to accommodate item 5 above) with capacity for three persons for a week, plus one weekly meeting with 12 persons. Tank shall be protected from freezing. Tank shall be emtied on weekly basis, more often if needed. Contractor shall arrange and be responsible for all cost necessary to provide this service to the field office (including all pickup and dump charges). [Utilized if no utility connection available to accommodate the DGS office trailer restroom]
 10. Domestic water holding tank with same compacity as item 9 above (sized accordingly), to accommodate item 5 above. [Utilized if no utility connection available to accommodate the DGS office trailer restroom]
- C. Equipment: The Lead Contractor shall furnish, with the DGS Construction Project Coordinator Office, the following items in the quantity indicated and remove same from the premises when directed by the Department. The Lead Contractor shall maintain all items in good condition and furnish all supplies (i.e., toner, paper, bottled water, drinking cups, bathroom supplies) for the duration of the Contract. If any equipment fails, it shall be repaired or replaced by the Lead Contractor within twenty-four (24) hours of being notified by the Department.

The specified IT hardware/peripherals shall be compatible with the HP EliteBook 640 PC NoteBook and include all required battery chargers, data cables (including two HP Mini DisplayPort Cables), software, ect. to provide a fully integrated and functioning system.

1. 3 Desk(s) with swivel chair(s)
2. 0 Electronic calculator
3. 1 Plans rack(s), plan rack shall include required quantity of plan sticks to fully utilize the plan rack
4. 1 Plans table(s) with stools
5. 0 Four (4) drawer file cabinet(s)
6. 2 12" deep shelving units of thirty (30) lineal feet
7. 3 Six (6) foot table(s)
8. 16 Chair(s)
9. 1 Clothes tree or closet with rod
10. 1 Provide an all in one print/copy/scan/fax machine capable of producing 35 pages per minute double sided on 8-1/2"x11" and 11"x17". Machine shall be wireless capable and network capable and print/copy/scan/fax both in color and black and white
11. 3 Safety glasses
12. 1 Fire Extinguisher
13. 1 Large First-Aid Kit

14. 1 Water cooler, with hot and cold taps
16. 3 Trash cans

IT Hardware/Peripherals:

17. 4 Computer monitor(s) - basis of design - Hewlett Packard ProDisplay 32"
18. 2 Wireless Keyboard - basis of design - Hewlett Packard KU-1156
19. 2 Docking station with all associated cables for connection of all peripheral devices to support the HP EliteBook 640 G9 – Docking Station Basis of design - HP USB-C G5.
20. 2 Wireless Mouse - optical mouse with USB cord, dual button and scroll wheel – Basis of design - Hewlett Packard
21. 1 55" High Definition LED flat panel monitor with wall mount bracket and remote. Monitor shall be network/wireless capable, 120Hz, 1080P.
22. 1 Wireless connectivity to the 55" High-Definition LED flat panel monitor shall be accomplished with a wireless receiver and transmitter – Basis of design - Screen-Beam Mini2 wireless receiver (Catalog # SBWD60A01) and a Screen-Beam USB Transmitter 2 (Catalog # SBWD200TX02).
23. 1 4'x3' white marker board with (2) sets of markers of standard color.
24. 1 12 Month Wall Calendar - 20"x30" - Basis of design AT-A-GLANCE, Model #PM4-28-17.

Other Items:

25. 2 Plain white ANSI approved hardhats

D. The DGS Construction Project Coordinator Office shall be equipped by the Lead Contractor with telephone cabling and jacks to connect one (1) telephone voice line for use by DGS Personnel. The Lead Contractor shall provide up to four (4) modular telephone jacks (RJ-11 connectors) in the main office area in locations indicated on the approved office plan accepted by the Department for use with the Contractor provided phones. The Lead Contractor will install telephone cable to connect each jack to the demarcation point where the local telephone company provides service (utility pole, telephone room or other access point). The Lead Contractor shall place orders to the local telephone company to activate line service and pay for the service and monthly charges.

1. The Lead Contractor shall provide three (3) data/phone jacks in locations indicated on the approved office plan accepted by the Department for use with the Department's computer(s) and Contractor provided phones. The Lead Contractor shall provide a Broadband Internet service and pay all connections/disconnection and monthly fees. The Lead Contractor shall further provide Wi-Fi access utilizing WPA2 security. Options include cable modem, DSL, Satellite or similar service (dial up is not acceptable). The wireless access point should be positioned to provide sufficient coverage in the DGS Construction Project Coordinator's Office space. The contractor shall provide usernames/passwords for authorized wireless users as determined by the DGS Construction Project Coordinator.
2. It shall be the Lead Contractor's responsibility to ascertain the means in which the Broadband Internet source will be provided. Internet download and upload speeds of 500Mbps shall be provided at all times. The Internet source must be coordinated with the DGS Construction Project Coordinator to assure compatibility with the Department's hardware/software requirements. Wireless access point shall be made fully operational and maintained by the Contractor. At the Department's sole discretion 4G/5G LTE wireless hotspot internet service may be acceptable.

1.23 CLIENT AGENCY TRAILER (PHMC)

- A. The Lead Contractor shall prepare a drawing of the Client Agency for the Department's approval. An electronic copy in .pdf format of the sketch plan is to be submitted through e-Builder to the Department within 7 calendar days of Effective Date of Contract or issuance of Letter of Intent whichever occurs first.
- B. The Lead Contractor shall furnish, within five (5) days of the Department's approval of the Lead Contractor's drawing, a suitably finished 11'-9" x 60'-0" mobile office including the necessary extension or provisioning of utilities and service lines required for its proper operation. Refer to Drawing Sheet G.2 for the proposed location of the Client Agency Trailer. The Lead Contractor shall clean this office at least bi-weekly, maintain and pay all utility and service bills (except power and data (refer to 1.23.C.5 below), for the duration of the Project, through the completion of all punch list items (unless directed otherwise by the Department). The Lead Contractor shall disconnect all utilities and remove the office from the premises when directed by the Department. The office shall be suitably partitioned as outlined below and shall include:
 1. Heating and Air-Conditioning
 2. Screened and locking windows provided with adequate window blinds
 3. Locking doors, complete with entrance steps and up to four (4) sets of keys.
 4. Three (3) lockable interior offices
 5. Lighting and electrical/data receptacles of suitable number and capacity. The Lead Contractor shall provide a temporary power and data connection between the Client Agency Trailer and the adjacent existing Maintenance Building. Refer to sheet G.2 for the location of the existing Maintenance Building and the existing electrical/data room within the Maintenance Building.
 6. One (1) Restroom with water closet, and lavatory with hot and cold water. No public water or sanitary hook up is available to accommodate the Client Agency trailer. The Client Agency trailer shall be equipped with a 100-gallon water tank to supply the toilet and sink and a 100-gallon waste tank. Holding tanks shall be protected from freezing. The waste tank is required to be pumped on a weekly schedule, and the water tank is filled on the same schedule. The waste is required to be taken off-site and properly disposed of at a wastewater treatment facility. Contractor shall arrange and be responsible for all cost necessary to provide this service to the Client Agency Trailer (including all maintenance, service, and dump charges).
 7. Trailer: Acceptable Product: MO6412 Basic Mobile Office by Willscot or approved equal.

1.24 SANITARY FACILITIES

- C. The following conditions shall pertain:
 1. Sanitary facilities will, within the limitations of the existing museum building, be provided by the Client Agency at no cost. The Lead Contractor shall provide all supplies and maintain the facilities in a clean and sanitary manner at all times.
 2. The existing facilities within the museum building available for the Contractor's use will be assigned by the Department at the Initial Job Conference.

1.25 SMOKING POLICY

- A. Smoking and use of smokeless-tobacco, chewing tobacco, snuff, Vape machines and similar paraphernalia are strictly prohibited in all buildings.

1.26 CONCRETE AND EARTHWORK

- A. All Contractors shall perform concrete work and earthwork required for their work, and shall comply with applicable Division 2, 3, 31, 32, and 33 sections. If any specification section

contains language conflicting with requirements of applicable Division 2, 3, 31, 32, and 33 sections, the most stringent requirements shall prevail.

1.27 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

- A. Structural-related testing and inspections required to be performed by the Contractor(s) are listed in Section 014000 – Quality Control Testing Services. If Quality Control testing or inspections required appear in Section 014000 and in a technical section, the most stringent requirements shall prevail. If Quality Control testing or inspections required appear in a technical section and not in Section 014000, they shall be required as if specified in Section 014000. Conditions pertaining to Quality Control testing and inspections may appear in the technical sections. All testing herein is to be by the Contractor. Testing by the Department, Quality Assurance Testing, is for the purpose of checking the results of the Contractor's Quality Control Testing. Testing is to be by the Contractor, unless specifically stated to be "by the Department" or required by Section 014010 – Quality Assurance Testing and Inspection Services.
- B. Non-structural testing is in the technical specifications.

1.28 CADD FILE WAIVER

- A. The Professional will make graphic portions of the bid drawings available for use by the Contractor by uploading files to e-Builder.
- B. Electronic files shall be uploaded only after all construction contracts have been executed.
- C. The files are provided as a convenience to the Contractor, for use in preparing shop drawings and/or coordination drawings related to the construction of this Project only. These files and the information contained within are the property of the Department, and may not be reproduced or used in any format except in conjunction with this Project.
- D. The Contractor acknowledges that the information provided in these files is not a substitution or replacement for the Contract Documents and does not become a Contract Document. The Contractor acknowledges that neither the Professional nor the Department warrant or make any representation that the information contained in these files reflect the Contract Documents in their entirety. The Contractor assumes full responsibility in the use of these files and acknowledges that all addenda, clarifications and changes to the drawings executed as a part of the Contract Documents may or may not be incorporated in these electronic files.
- E. The Contractor acknowledges that the furnishing of these files in no way relieves the Contractor from the responsibility for the preparation of shop drawings or other schedules as set forth in the Contract between the Contractor and the Department.
- F. The electronic documents shall be stripped of the Professional's name and address, and any professional licenses and signatures indicated on the contract documents. Use of these electronic documents is solely at the Contractor's risk, and shall in no way alter the Contractor's Contract for Construction.
- G. Disclaimer: The Professional and Department make no representation regarding fitness for any particular purpose, or suitability for use with any software or hardware, and shall not be responsible or liable for errors, defects, inexactitudes, or anomalies in the data, information, or documents (including drawings and specifications) caused by the Professional's or its Consultant's computer software or hardware defects or errors; the Professional's or its Consultant's electronic or disk transmittal of data, information or documents; or the Professional's or its Consultant's reformatting or automated conversion of data, information or documents electronically or disk transmitted from the Professional's Consultants to the Professional.

- H. By the Contractor's or their subcontractor's use of the electronic files (e.g., AutoCAD files), the Contractor and their subcontractor waive all claims against the Department the Professional, its employees, officers and Consultants for any and all damages, losses, or expenses the Contractor incurs from any defects or errors in the electronic documents. Furthermore, the Contractor shall indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the Department, the Professional, and its Consultants together with their respective employees and officers, from and against any claims, suits, demands, causes of action, losses, damages or expenses (including all attorney's fees and litigation expenses) attributed to errors or defects in data, information or documents, including drawings and specifications.

1.29 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically delegated to the Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated in the technical specification sections.
1. If criteria indicated in the technical sections are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to the Professional.
- B. Delegated Design Services Submittals: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional registered in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, for each product and system specifically assigned to the Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.30 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. General:
1. Refer to the General Conditions of the Construction Contract regarding the preparation of Coordination Drawings and the responsibilities of all Prime Contractors. Any conflicts between or questions regarding the requirements in this Section and the requirements in the General Conditions should be brought to the attention of the Professional.
 2. Refer to Technical Specification sections for specific Coordination Drawing requirements for mechanical and electrical installations. Other Technical Specifications sections may also identify requirements for Coordination Drawings.
 3. The Prime Contractors shall indicate the value of this effort as a line item on the Schedule of Values.
 4. Submission of Coordination Drawings shall be included as a milestone on the Construction Schedule. The General Contractor shall initiate this action and acquire the necessary dates from the other Prime Contractors as part of their overall scheduling responsibilities.
 5. Coordination drawings shall be completed within (60) calendar days of the Effective Date of the Contract.
 6. The Department's receipt of Coordination Drawings does not in any way constitute approval, or relieve the Prime Contractors of the responsibility to accurately coordinate and install their work.
- B. Coordination Procedures:
1. The HVAC Contractor shall have the lead role in this process and shall initiate Coordination Drawings by producing background drawings in electronic format. Electronic drawing files will be available in e-Builder to all Prime Contractors. These

background drawings shall include walls, partitions, structural elements, finished floor elevations, dimensions, ductwork, piping, conduit, system devices, associated equipment, etc.

2. Electronic drawings shall then be forwarded to the other Prime Contractors, one at a time, including the General Contractor, for inclusion, layout and interface of all relative equipment, material and penetrations associated with the Work.
3. Each Prime Contractor is responsible for the accuracy and completeness of all Coordination Drawings and shall review all other Prime Contractor's drawings so that there will be no interference and/or conflict with its portion of the work.
4. Upon completion of the preliminary Coordination Drawings, the HVAC Contractor shall schedule a coordination meeting with all Prime Contractors in order to resolve all interference issues. Altering structural elements, bearing elevations, established dimensions, partition locations and ceiling/bulkhead heights or any other aesthetic effect is prohibited without the consent of the Professional.
5. Upon resolution of all interference issues, the Coordination Drawings shall be revised as required, and upon acceptance by all Prime Contractors, the HVAC Contractor will upload the final Coordination Drawings to e-Builder.
 - a. Coordination Drawings shall contain a signature block for each Prime Contractor to provide signatures and dates indicating concurrence.
6. Coordination Drawings may be formulated and submitted in partial submittals to facilitate the construction schedule and sequence of work within the Project. This must be agreed to by all Prime Contractors and a priority of sequence must be established that has the concurrence of all parties, including the Department. Approval of partial sets of Coordination Drawings shall not relieve the Contractors of their responsibility for properly coordinating work appearing in subsequent submissions. Any revisions to subsequent work necessitated by such partial approvals shall be performed at no additional cost to the Department.

C. Coordination of Work:

1. Each Prime Contractor shall clearly show, and coordinate with the other Prime Contractors, the following:
 - a. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings with general construction work, and arrange in building structure during progress of the Work, to allow for and facilitate distribution line and equipment installation.
 - b. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices for ductwork, piping, and conduit, as well as sleeves, and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 - c. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC, Plumbing and Electrical items requiring access where concealed behind finished surfaces.
 - d. Coordinate electrical connections to equipment provided by all Contractors.
 - e. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large items of equipment requiring positioning before closing in the building.
2. Each Prime Contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other Prime Contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation for each part of the Work. Each Prime Contractor shall coordinate its operations with other operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installations, connection, and operation. All Prime Contractors shall:
 - a. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - b. Coordinate installation of all components with other Prime Contractors to ensure adequate accessibility/clearance for required maintenance and service.

- c. Make provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013100
SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION AND MILESTONES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections " General Conditions of the Construction Contract ", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Before beginning work, the Contractor will be required to prepare a schedule in consultation with the Department. The work must be carried out in full accordance with the schedule. The Contractor shall arrange to perform the work without any unnecessary interference with the Institution's operation.

1.3 CRITICAL MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor is cautioned that all necessary and required critical materials and equipment shall be ordered as quickly as possible, in order that the shipping will not delay the progress of the work or completion of the project.

1.4 CRITICAL ITEMS TO BE NOTED AS MILESTONES

- A. Refer to the General Conditions, Article 8 'Project Schedule', regarding the Administrative Sequence that accommodates the building occupant's artifact move management process. The Administrative Sequence precedes any Construction Work inside the Museum Building.

1.5 SEQUENCING OF CONSTRUCTION AND OTHER REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall include the following critical items as Milestones:
 - 1. Sequence One: (Administrative Sequence – No Construction Work inside the Museum) Generally accommodates the following:
 - a. Start and completion of artifact move management by the Owner to prepare the interior of Museum Building for construction activities. The owner's move management activities generally include the removal of artifacts from the Museum building along with consolidation and storage of artifacts and furniture planned to remain in the Museum building. Absolutely no construction will occur inside the Museum Building until this sequence is completed. Many artifacts will be removed from the Museum and stored off-site. Some larger scale artifacts and furnishings will be moved into consolidated areas within the Museum Building spaces and rooms and protected in preparation for construction activities. The protection methods for the artifacts and furnishings installed by the Owner will not be designed to be utilized by the contractor in any way, i.e., no standing on top of, storing on top of or relying on the protection methods and enclosures in any way in support of the construction work. Refer to the Drawing G.2 – Construction Sequencing & Owner Storage Plan for the designated protected storage areas that will be used by the Owner.
 - b. Administrative activities by the Contractor in preparation for the construction work including, but not limited to the administrative activities needed to initiate the project, shop drawing and submittal review and approvals, installation of construction trailers and other construction preparation activities outside of the Museum building will be permitted during this Sequence.

- c. The Administrative Sequence has a 90-day duration from the time of the Contract Execution. No construction work will take place inside the Museum building until the 90-day Administrative Sequence is completed.
2. Sequence Two: (Construction Sequence) Generally accommodates the following:
 - a. Completion of all construction work for the project.
 - b. The Construction Sequence has a 249-day duration from the time of completion of the Administrative Sequence.
 - c. **NOTE** – The owner will retain the use of the following Ground Floor areas; Lobby 002a, Reception 002, Shop 003, Office 008, and Meeting 004 for the first 30 days of Sequence Two. The owner will be removing items from these spaces during this 30-day period along with consolidation and storage of furniture planned to remain in these spaces. Refer to the Drawing G.2 – Construction Sequencing & Owner Storage Plan for illustration of this area.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 014010

QUALITY ASSURANCE TESTING AND INSPECTION SERVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 GENERAL

- A. All testing and inspecting specifically called for and/or described in this section of the specifications are referred to as Quality Assurance Services and are the responsibility of the Quality Assurance Agency. Except as hereinafter specified, Quality Assurance Services will be performed without expense to the Contractor. The Quality Assurance Agency is an independent testing and inspecting agency engaged by the Department through the Professional. Testing required because of changes in materials or proportions at the request of the Contractor shall be at the Contractor's expense. The Professional may engage more than one Quality Assurance Agency to perform services. Whenever the word "Contractor" is used it shall be interpreted to mean Prime Contractor or Contractors as applicable.
- B. Work Not Included: Quality Control Testing to be performed by the Contractor is specified in Section 014000.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 RESPONSIBILITIES AND DUTIES OF THE CONTRACTOR

- A. The use of Quality Assurance Services shall in no way relieve the Contractor of its responsibility to furnish materials and construction in full compliance with the plans and specifications or to perform Quality Control Testing where specified.
- B. To facilitate Quality Assurance Inspection or Testing, the Contractor shall:
 - 1. Secure and deliver to the project site, without cost, representative samples of materials it proposes to use and which are required to be tested under Paragraph 3.4, 'Tests and Inspections'.
 - 2. Furnish such casual labor as is necessary to obtain and handle samples at the project or at other sources of material.
 - 3. Provide means of safe access to work areas, provide conditions that allow testing and inspection to take place, provide materials for testing as requested, patch test sites when completed and furnish incidental labor and assistance necessary for inspectors of the Quality Assurance Agency to perform their tests and inspections.

3.2 AUTHORITY AND LIMITATIONS OF QUALITY ASSURANCE AGENCY

- A. Personnel representing the Quality Assurance Agency will not act as foremen nor perform other duties for the Contractor.
- B. Work will be checked as it progresses, but failure to detect any defective work or materials shall not in any way prevent later rejection when such defect is discovered, nor shall it obligate the Department or the Professional for final acceptance.

- C. The Quality Assurance Agency is not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, enlarge, or release any requirements of the specifications, nor to approve or accept any portion of the work.
- D. The Quality Assurance Agency shall report all test and inspection results to the Professional, the Department and the Contractor immediately after they are performed. Selection and frequency of tests shall be at the discretion of the Professional and the Department. All reports shall be uploaded to e-Builder within 24 hours of when the inspection occurs, test is conducted, test results obtained or similar service was conducted.
- E. Written reports of each inspection, test or similar service shall include but not be limited to:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address and telephone number of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and location of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making the inspection or test.
 - 6. Designation of the Work and test method.
 - 7. Identification of product and specification section.
 - 8. Complete inspection or test data.
 - 9. Test results and an interpretation of test results.
 - 10. Ambient conditions at the time of sample taking and testing.
 - 11. Comments or professional opinion as to whether inspected or tested work complies with Contract Document requirements.
 - 12. Name and signature of Quality Control Agency inspector.
- F. When it appears that any material furnished or work performed by the Contractor fails to fulfill contract requirements, the Quality Assurance Agency shall report such deficiency to the Professional, the Department and the Contractor.

3.3 CONTRACTOR'S FAILURE TO MEET CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Department and the Professional reserve the right to reject any items which do not meet the requirements of the plans and specifications and will require the contractor to replace these items and bear all expenses in connection with such replacements.
- B. The Contractor shall pay all costs incurred in providing additional testing and/or analysis (including engineering fees) required because of deficient test results or construction not in compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents.

3.4 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Tests and inspections listed below may, at the discretion of the Professional and the Department, be performed by an independent Quality Assurance Agency engaged by the Department through the Professional, without expense to the Contractor. The Department reserves the right to change this list at any time.

SECTION 1

<u>REQ'D BY¹</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION OF TEST OR INSPECTION</u>	<u>REFERENCED STANDARD</u>	<u>IBC REFER- ENCE²</u>

<u>REQ'D BY¹</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION OF TEST OR INSPECTION</u>	<u>REFERENCED STANDARD</u>	<u>IBC REFER-ENCE²</u>
	CONCRETE		
IBC	1. Inspection of reinforcing steel, and placement	ACI 318: 3.5, 7.1-7.7	1913.4
IBC	2. Inspection of anchors installed in hardened concrete	ACI 318: 3.8.6, 8.1.3, 21.2.8	1912.1
IBC	3. Verifying use of required design mix	ACI 318: Ch. 4, 5.2-5.4	1904.22, 1913.2, 1913.3
IBC	4. At the time fresh concrete is sampled to fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, determine the temperature of the concrete	ASTM C172, C31; ACI 318: 5.6, 5.8	
IBC	5. Inspection of concrete placement for proper application techniques	ACI 318: 5.9, 5.10	1913.6, 1913.7, 1913.8
IBC	6. Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques	ACI 318; 5.11-5.13	1913.9
DGS	Review Contractors' design mixes, Certificates of Compliance and material test reports		
DGS	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens ²	ASTM C39	
	MASONRY		
DGS	Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry, Annex A7 Compressive Strength ⁶	ASTM C780	
DGS	Method of Sampling and Testing Grout ⁶	ASTM C1019	
	Level 1 Special Inspection		
IBC	1. Compliance with required inspection provisions of the construction documents and the approved submittals shall be verified.	Art. 1.5 ⁵	
	STEEL CONSTRUCTION		

REQ'D BY¹	DESCRIPTION OF TEST OR INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD	IBC REFER-ENCE²
IBC	1. Material verification of high-strength bolts, nuts, and washers: a. Identification markings to conform to ASTM standards spec in the approved CDs. b. Manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance required	AISC 360, Section A3.3 and applicable ASTM material standards	
IBC	2. Inspection of high-strength bolting: a. Snug-tight joints b.	AISC 360, Section M2.5	1704.3.3
IBC	3. Material verification of structural steel and cold-formed steel deck: a. For structural steel, identification markings to conform to AISC 360 b. For other steel, identification markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the approved CDs c. Manufacturer certified test reports	AISC 360, Section M5.5 Applicable ASTM material standards	
IBC	4. Material verification of weld filler materials: a. Identification markings to conform to AWS specification in the approved CDs b. Manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance required	AISC 360, Sect A3.5 and applicable AWS A5 documents	
IBC	5. Inspection of welding: a. Structural steel 1) Complete and partial penetration groove welds 2) Multi-Pass fillet welds 3) Single-pass fillet welds > 5/16" 4) Plug and slot welds 5) Single-pass fillet welds < 5/16" 6) Floor and deck welds 1)	AWS D1.1	1704.3.1
IBC	6. Inspection of steel frame joint details for compliance with approved CDs: a. Details such as bracing and stiffening b. Member locations c. Application of joint details at each connection		1704.3.2

<u>REQ'D BY¹</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION OF TEST OR INSPECTION</u>	<u>REFERENCED STANDARD</u>	<u>IBC REFER-ENCE²</u>
	EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS		
IBC	Professional to determine requirements.		1704.14
	GENERAL OVERVIEW OF QC TESTING		
DGS	Review of Contractor QC Testing and Reports		

SECTION 2

<u>REQD BY¹</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION OF TEST OR INSPECTION</u>	<u>REFERENCED STANDARD</u>	<u>IBC REFER-ENCE²</u>
	ENGINEERING SERVICES		
DGS	Review of Contractor QC Test Reports.		
DGS			
DGS	On-site Engineering Consultation ⁷		
DGS	Office Engineering Consultation ⁷		

Footnotes:

1. "DGS" are tests required by DGS and "IBC" are test required by Chapter 17 of the 2009 International Building Code.
2. IBC 2009.
3. Not used.
4. Refers to reference ACI 530/ASCE 5/TMS 402.
5. Refers to reference ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
6. Concrete, mortar or grout molds are to be made by QA Agent under Special Inspection hours.
7. Principal(s) shall be Registered Professional Engineer(s). The Engineer making decisions and recommendations shall be a Registered Pennsylvania Professional Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 015000
TEMPORARY UTILITIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections “General Conditions of the Construction Contract”, “Special Conditions”, and “Division 1 - General Requirements” form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 TEMPORARY SERVICES DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. The designated Contractor shall install, operate, protect and maintain the temporary services, as hereinafter specified, during the construction of the entire Project. Temporary utilities cost shall be provided by the Client Agency unless otherwise noted.
- B. Temporary connections to new and/or existing permanent service lines shall be made at the appropriate locations as determined by the designated Contractor, and coordinated with the Department, in conjunction with the Client Agency (as applicable). When the temporary service lines are no longer required, they shall be removed by the Contractor. Any part or parts of the permanent service lines, grounds and building, disturbed and damaged by the installation and/or removal of the temporary service lines, shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor responsible for the temporary installation.
- C. If the Contractor fails to carry out its responsibility in supplying temporary services as set forth in this Contract, it is responsible for such failure, and the Department may take such action as it deems proper for the protection and conduct of the work, and shall deduct the cost involved from the amount due the Contractor. Only those temporary utilities required for construction need to be extended to the work area(s).
- D. Temporary utilities for Prime Contractors’ office trailers shall be arranged and paid for by each responsible Prime Contractor. The Lead Contractor shall arrange, provide, install, all temporary utilities required for the DGS Construction Project Manager’s office/ trailer.
- E. Temporary Water: To be provided by the Client Agency at no cost to the contractor, lead contractor will be required to meter the water.

1.3 TEMPORARY HEAT

- A. The temporary heat requirements on this Project are related to temporary heat required for enclosed buildings.
- D. After the building, buildings or portions thereof are enclosed, and temporary heat is required for proper construction, the HVAC Contractor, shall provide equipment and heating personnel for the temporary heat. The HVAC Contractor may, with the Department’s and Client Agency’s approval, utilize the permanent system or portions thereof, or may install temporary hot water radiation or convectors or a combination of both. The HVAC Contractor shall operate hot water generating equipment for supply to permanent or temporary building heating facilities. The HVAC Contractor may install, operate, protect and maintain a temporary heating system through connections to existing hot water lines.
- E. Temporary heating system, as hereinafter noted, shall be of sufficient capacity to heat the interior of the building to 60°F when outside temperature is 0°F. The interior temperature must be 60°F or above at all times. This service shall be continued until the entire Project is completed, except as hereinafter noted.

- F. Where electricians are required to install, operate supervise or maintain equipment used in the provisions of temporary heat, the payment of the services of such material and personnel shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor respectively. It will be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to coordinate with the HVAC Contractor for temporary heat.
- G. The Lead Contractor shall provide all fuel and electricity for the temporary heat in conjunction with the operation of heating equipment for enclosed buildings, provided by the Client Agency as noted above.
- H. The Lead Contractor shall remove normal soot, smudges, and other deposits from walls, ceilings and exposed surfaces which are the result of the use of any temporary heating equipment, including the use of the permanent heating system for temporary heating purposes. Finish work shall not start until all such surfaces are properly cleaned. Soot, etc. caused by equipment malfunction shall be removed by the responsible Contractor. Each Prime Contractor shall correct/replace any of their respective work that is identified by the Department or Professional as not meeting the project specifications as a result of the failure of any Prime Contractor to maintain or provide appropriate temporary heat, cooling, dehumidification, or ventilation in accordance with the contract requirements or the manufactures requirements. Each Prime Contractor will follow the requirements of the General Conditions regarding any disputes due to another Prime Contractor's failure to provide or maintain proper temporary heating, cooling, dehumidification, or ventilation of the conditioned space. Each Prime Contractor shall correct/replace any of their respective work that does not meet Contract requirements due to use of temporary heat.
- I. All permanent heating equipment used to supply temporary heat shall be completely cleaned and reconditioned by the HVAC Contractor, in the presence of the Department personnel, prior to Final Acceptance. Cleaning of permanent HVAC ducts utilized for temporary heat shall be required. The HVAC Contractor should filter the return air at grilles, and wherever necessary to prevent dust accumulation. All permanent heating equipment, such as radiator trap seats and diaphragms, valve sets and discs, strainer internals or any other equipment found to be damaged due to being used for temporary heat shall be replaced. All replacements must be inspected by the Professional and accepted by the Department personnel. The HVAC Contractor shall pay for all replacement parts and labor.
- J. The cost of temporary heat shall be made a part of the lump sum bid submitted by each Contractor, as applicable. The cost of temporary heat shall be shown on the Contract Schedule of Values, to include the number of calendar days, cost per twenty-four (24) hour day and extended price. Any adjustment to the number of days of temporary heat, used or not used, may be based on this unit price. Each Contractor shall include 180 calendar days of temporary heat, in its bid.
- K. Temporary Ventilation and Temperature Control: The Lead Contractor shall provide electronic daily temperature/humidity readings equipment and log the conditions throughout the building to assure the proper and adequate temperature/humidity levels are recorded and maintained. The Lead Contractor shall provide the appropriate temporary ventilation, dehumidification, humidification or cooling equipment to assure the interior humidity/temperature levels are provided to meet all building finish requirements in accordance with the manufacture requirements.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION LIGHT AND POWER

- A. Each Contractor will be allowed to utilize building power to accommodate construction. Each Contractor will be required to extend existing lighting/power to meet construction requirements. All work must comply with NEC and OSHA. Connection to existing source shall be as determined by the Department.

1.5 WELDING

- A. Any Contractor using electrical power for welding on the site shall use self-contained engine generating units.
- B. Each Contractor shall provide necessary exhaust/ventilation/filtration to prevent accumulation of welding fumes and smoke generated by welding their operations.
- C. Each Contractor shall have all precautions and protection in place while welding to assure no sparks cause fire or smoke damage to all surrounding areas; during and after all welding activities.

1.6 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Each Contractor shall provide UL listed, NFPA approved fire extinguishers, ten (10) lb. minimum, at the construction site during operations, suitable for all types of fires in accordance with OSHA.

1.7 INTERRUPTION OF SERVICES

- A. Each Prime Contractor shall have all needed equipment and material to complete planned work at the site, prior to shutting down any system.
- B. No additional compensation or time will be given to the Contractor, if work must be performed on State or National Holidays or on weekends or on overtime. Contractors are to follow all requirements in Article 6.21 and 6.22 of the General Conditions and submit the "Utility Shutdown Checklist" form from eBuilder Forms Module for approval.

1.8 SNOW/ICE REMOVAL

- A. The Lead Contractor shall be responsible to provide snow removal and anti-skid material into to site and at the project site and indicated laydown areas (including construction trailer), unless directed otherwise.
- B. All related work shall be performed to provide proper and safe access throughout the site subsequent to each related work day. Any delay and potential related costs generated by failure to meet this requirement shall be the responsibility of the Lead Contractor.

1.9 DEWATERING

- A. Each Prime Contractor shall provide adequate attention, equipment and manpower to the project to assure the work area is dewatered as required to eliminate ponding, excessive water, depressions, etc. as affected by and for their work activities. Such action shall occur no later than 24 hours after a rain or water producing event. This effort shall be sustained for the time period necessary to bring the affected area back into conformance.

1.10 HOISTING FACILITIES

- A. Each Prime Contractor must provide hoisting facilities for its own work. All hoisting facilities must comply with the safety regulations of the Department of Labor and Industry.
- B. Boom lifts or scaffolding used by the Contractors are required to be electric powered. Gas/natural gas powered equipment are not allowed on project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 016200

HISTORICAL AND MUSEUM COMMISSION PROJECTS - SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections “General Conditions of the Construction Contract”, “Special Conditions”, and “Division 1 - General Requirements” form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.3 WORK IN AND AROUND HISTORICAL SITE AND HISTORICAL BUILDINGS

- A. The Project site is an operating museum that accommodates tours of groups as well as individual visitors. In addition, The Project site and its various buildings may be recognized as one of the most highly visible and historically significant landmarks in the state, and they gain part of their cultural importance from the open spaces, the grounds, and the buildings. The Contractor will be expected to exercise a special degree of care and skill, and it must be sensitive to the problems associated with historical buildings, particularly those containing a public use. The Contractor is entrusted with a property, in some cases an irreplaceable landmark, the value of which is highly regarded by the citizens of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania. Also, the Contractor shall ensure that its operations and the conduct of its employees are appropriate to the type of work done in a museum environment.
- B. The Contractor shall comply with the Secretary of the Interior’s Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties, as applicable.
- C. The Contractor shall provide at least 48 hours notice prior to any excavation on the site. The Commission Archaeologist shall have the right to stop the work for a period of time, not to exceed 5 business days, to perform mitigation archaeology at no additional expense. See item 1.10.
- D. Contractor shall notify DGS within 24 hours when any personnel from the level of Foreman and up are removed from this project

1.4 REFERENCE

- A. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Historical Preservation Projects, by reference, shall become part of this specification. <https://www.nps.gov/tps/standards/four-treatments/standguide/index.htm>
- B. "Commission" refers to the Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission.

1.5 DAMAGE REPAIR

- A. Repair, at no cost to the Commission or the Department, any areas of existing buildings, contents, landscaping, paving or other site features damaged during the work, to the satisfaction of the Commission's Project Manager and the Department. These buildings contain important historical collections and/or finishes. If damage occurs to these collections and/or finishes as a result of the work, the Contractor shall hire a Conservator, from a list supplied by the Commission, to assess the damage and recommend conservation measures required, at no expense to the Commission or the Department. Upon acceptance by the Commission and the Department of the Conservator's Assessment Report, the Contractor shall arrange for the Conservator to perform those conservation measures on the damaged objects and/or finishes at no additional cost to the Commission or Department.

1.6 SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

- A. The Contractor shall review his procedures for systems installation prior to beginning any work at the site or in specific building areas to the approval of the Department and the Commission representative.

1.7 SALVAGE

- A. No existing material shall be disposed of without the approval of the Commission's Project Manager. Do not reuse materials scheduled to be removed from the site, except as specifically identified or allowed by the Drawings and Specifications, or as directed by the Commission's Project Manager. Store materials designated by the Commission's Project Manager for salvage by the Commission at a location on site designated by the Commission's Project Manager.

1.8 PRECAUTIONS FOR FURNISHINGS

- A. The Contractor is advised that all furnishings contained in museum or historic buildings, such as furniture, collections, artifacts, draperies, exhibit materials, fixtures, etc., shall not be moved, relocated or otherwise affected by the Contractor or its workmen. These procedures shall be effected and/or completed by the professional staff of the Commission. The Contractor shall provide its plan and schedule of specific work areas at least five (5) days prior to the actual start of work. It shall be the Commission's responsibility to effect the moving or relocation of the subject items in the defined areas to allow the Contractor's procedure of work. Where removal of furnishings and/or other items noted herein is considered impracticable or a hardship, they shall remain in place or be confined to a specific area which would not impede the Contractor's work. Refer to Drawing Sheet G.1 – Construction Sequencing and Owner Storage Plans for location of Owner's designated storage areas. The designated areas will be prepared by the Owner including locating furniture and artifacts within these areas and covering or enclosing the furniture and artifacts in protective enclosures. Coverings and protective enclosures shall not be used in any way to accommodate the construction work, such as stacking materials on top of or placing scaffolding or standing on top of protective enclosures. The Contractor shall inform its workers of their responsibility for observing and maintaining the complete protection of the stored material.

1.9 FIRE SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- A. The entire job site is considered a non-smoking area and smoking and smoking paraphernalia are not permitted. The Contractors shall strictly prohibit all workers from smoking on the job site.
- B. Buildings not already containing an existing heat source that utilizes combustion, which are considered by the Commission to be historic, shall utilize electric resistance units supplied by the Contractor as a temporary heat source.
- C. Cutting with torches, welding equipment, or other heat generating equipment, tools, will not be permitted, unless specifically approved by the Commission's Project Manager. If such work is approved, a fire watch and fire extinguisher, with a worker trained in its operation, shall be present during the entire time of any "hot" work.

1.10 WORK PRIOR TO EXCAVATION

- A. If the Project documents show areas to be excavated in the proposed construction project, prior to the start of work, the Contractor shall be advised as to those specific areas determined to be "archaeologically sensitive", requiring archaeological monitoring by the Commission. Subject to

further instruction from the commission's archaeological representative (Commission's Representative), the Contractor will generally be required to complete the excavation of these archaeologically sensitive areas in accordance with the following special procedures of contract excavations.

- B. All topsoil to be excavated shall be removed in four (4) inch layers, to a depth of twelve (12) inches.
 - 1. Each four (4) inch layer shall be removed over an extensive area of the excavation determined by the Commission's representative to allow the representative to evaluate the existence of archaeological remains and review for artifact remains present in each layer. The Commission's Representative will authorize excavation of the subsequent four (4) inch layer when the review and evaluations are completed to its satisfaction.
 - 2. Each subsequent four (4) inch layer shall be removed accordingly until the final depth of twelve (12) inches is achieved.
 - 3. The completed excavation to the twelve (12) inch depth shall be reviewed by the Commission's Representative, whose approval is necessary before additional excavation is begun.
- C. During removal, stockpile good topsoil at locations where directed for use in future finish grading or specified under "Lawn Work".
- D. Additional excavation below the twelve (12) inch level may be accomplished by standard methods, except in those areas designated as critical for archaeological finds. Those areas designated as critical by the Commission for possible archaeological remains shall be carefully excavated in four (4) inch layers, or less, to a depth where an evaluation of the subsurface remains can be made.

1.11 PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. In addition to the photographic requirements stated in the General Conditions, the following photographic requirements for the Commission shall be part of the work. Submit the required number of photographs per work day to document the following:
 - 1. The existing conditions before work begins. For exterior work, submit a minimum of one (1) photograph of each Elevation.
 - 2. Items uncovered, or exposed, particularly if they are unusual or of potential historical significance.
 - 3. The progress of the Project.
 - 4. Mechanics performing the work.
 - 5. Items as they are being closed up.
 - 6. The completed Project. For exterior work, submit a minimum of one photograph of each elevation.
- B. Provide digital photographs, two (2) color prints of each, matte finish, approximately 4" x 6" size, professionally printed on high quality photo paper.
 - 1. Identify photographs with date, time, direction, and Project Name/Number on the back of each print.
 - 2. Place all prints in archival sleeves, comparable to "Vue-All Photo Saver", product number 6028 (available at most photo stores). Place the dates on the sleeves with a permanent marker.
 - 3. Submit a photo key for each set of photographs. The key should describe each view, the direction of the view, and the names of any individuals in the view.
 - 4. Submit the two (2) sets of photo prints, two (2) copies of the photo key, and two (2) digital disks of photos to the PHMC Project Manager in a three-ring binder upon completion of the Project.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 91 13
GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 – General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 INTRODUCTION

- A. Pennsylvania Department of General Services (PADGS) is committed to commissioning systems required for the reliable, safe, and secure operation of the PA Military Museum under Building Commissioning Association (BCA) requirements. This process will verify that systems are complete and functioning properly upon project completion and that the facilities maintenance staff has appropriate system documentation and training.
- B. Commissioning consists of systematically documenting that specified components and systems have been installed and started up properly and then functionally tested to verify that systems are complete and functioning properly upon project completion and that the Client Agency's staff has appropriate system documentation and training. In addition, Client Agency-personnel training will be verified, and final project Operation & Maintenance (O&M) documents will be reviewed for completeness.

1.3 PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Various sections of the project specifications require equipment start-up, testing, and adjusting services. Requirements for start-up, testing, and adjusting services specified in the Division 07, Division 23, and Division 26 series sections of these specifications are intended to be provided in coordination with the commissioning services and are not intended to duplicate services. The Contractor shall coordinate the work required by individual specification sections with the commissioning services requirements specified herein.
- B. Where individual testing, adjusting, or related services are required in the project specifications and not specifically required by this commissioning requirements specification, the specified services shall be provided and copies of documentation, as required by those specifications, shall be attached to the related sections of the completed project final report, and indexed for future reference.
- C. Where Client Agency training or educational services are required and specified in the Division 07, Division 23, and Division 26 series sections of the specification, these

services are intended to be provided in addition to the training and educational services specified herein.

1.4 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Owner's Project Requirements (OPR) developed by the Commissioning Authority (CxA) and Basis of Design (BoD) documentation prepared by the Client Agency and Design Professional contains requirements that apply to this Section.

1.5 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of commissioning without regard to systems, subsystems, and equipment being commissioned.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 010000 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
 - 2. Section 070800 COMMISSIONING OF BUILDING ENVELOPE.
 - 3. Section 230800 COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.
 - 4. Section 260800 COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. BOD: Basis of Design – a dynamic document that provides the explanation of the ideas, concepts and criteria that are considered to be very important to the Client Agency. It is initially the outcome of the programming and conceptual design phases. Also called Design Intent Document.
- B. Commissioning – Commissioning is a comprehensive and systematic process to verify that the building systems perform as designed to meet the Client Agency's requirements. Commissioning during the construction, acceptance, and warranty phases is intended to achieve the following specific objectives:
 - 1. Verify and document that equipment is installed and started per manufacturer's recommendations, industry accepted minimum standards, and the Contract Documents.
 - 2. Verify and document that equipment and systems receive complete operational checkout by installing contractors.
 - 3. Verify and document equipment startup and system performance.

4. Verify the completeness of operations and maintenance materials.
5. Ensure that the Client Agency's operating personnel are adequately trained on the operation and maintenance of building equipment.

The commissioning process does not take away from or reduce the responsibility of the system designers or installing contractors to provide a finished and fully functioning product.

- C. Commissioning Plan – a dynamic document that describes how the commissioning process will be applied to this project. It is an overall plan that provides the structure, schedule, and coordination for the commissioning process.
- D. CxA: Commissioning Authority – the designated person, company, or entity responsible for the commissioning process. The CxA is designated by the Client Agency.
- E. Deficiency – a condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents, does not perform properly, can't be maintained properly, or is not complying with the design intent.
- F. FPT: Functional Performance Test – test of the dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods. Functional testing is the dynamic testing of systems (rather than just components) under full operation (e.g., the chiller pump is tested interactively with the chiller functions to see if the pump ramps up and down to maintain the differential pressure setpoint). Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm, power failure, etc. The systems are run through all the control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the sequences state. Traditional air or water test and balancing (TAB) is not functional testing, in the commissioning sense of the word. TAB's primary work is setting up the system flows and pressures as specified, while functional testing is verifying that which has already been set up. The Commissioning Agent develops the functional test procedures in a sequential written form, coordinates, oversees and documents the actual testing, which is usually performed by the installing contractor or vendor. Functional Performance Tests are performed after System Readiness Checklists and startups are complete.
- G. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements – A dynamic document outlining the Client Agency's requirements relative to Building Envelope, Mechanical, & Electrical Systems.
- H. SRC: System Readiness Checklist – a list of items to inspect and elementary component tests to conduct to verify proper installation of equipment, provided by the Commissioning Agent to the contractor. System Readiness Checklists are primarily static inspections and procedures to prepare the equipment or system for initial operation (e.g., belt tension, oil levels OK, labels affixed, gages in place, sensors calibrated, etc.). However, some System Readiness Checklist items entail simple

testing of the function of a component, a piece of equipment or system (such as measuring the voltage imbalance on a three-phase pump motor of a chiller system). The term "System Readiness" refers to before functional testing. System Readiness Checklists augment and are combined with the manufacturer's start-up checklist and the General Contractor's Quality Control checklists.

- I. Seasonal Performance Tests – Functional Performance Test that are deferred until the system(s) will experience conditions closer to their design conditions.
- J. Systems, Subsystems, and Equipment – Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- K. TAB – Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing.
- L. Warranty Period – warranty period for entire project, including equipment components. Warranty begins at Substantial Completion and extends for at least one year, unless specifically noted otherwise in the Contract Documents and accepted submittals.

1.7 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

- A. The following systems will be commissioned as part of this project:

Commissioned Systems			
System	Equipment/Sub-Systems	Total Quantity	Test Sample
HVAC Systems (Division 23)			
Direct Digital Control Systems	Direct-Digital Control Systems Operators' Workstations	Included	See Note (1)
	Head-End Equipment	Included	See Note (1)
	Networking Equipment	Included	See Note (1)
	Operating Sequences	Included	See Note (1)
	Alarms and Trending	Included	See Note (1)
	Point Verification	Included	See Note (1)
	Graphics	Included	See Note (1)
	Interface with other systems (Fire Alarm, Power Monitoring, Lighting Control, Security, etc)	Included	See Note (1)
Central Plant Systems	DDC Control Panels	Included	See Note (1)
	Gas-Fired Condensing Boilers	1	100%
	Heat Exchanger	1	100%
	Chemical Treatment	1	100%
	Expansion Tank	1	100%
	Hydronic Pumps	4	100%
HVAC Air Distribution	Associated Variable Frequency Drives and Controls	Included	100%
	Closed Loop Rooftop Water Source Heat Pump Units	2	100%
	Energy Recovery Fresh Air Handling Unit	1	100%
	Air Terminal Units	10	100%
	Electric Humidifiers	8	100%

Commissioned Systems			
System	Equipment/Sub-Systems	Total Quantity	Test Sample
	Closed Loop Water-Source Heat Pumps	10	100%
	Hydronic Preheat/Reheat Coils	7	100%
	Associated Controls and Alarming	Included	Included
Heating/Cooling/Terminal Units Systems	Closed Loop Water to Water Heat Pumps	1	100%
	Water to Water Heat Exchangers	2	100%
	Pumps	4	20%
	Associated Controls and Alarming	Included	Included
Electrical Systems (Division 26)			
Normal Power Distribution	Panelboards	1	100%
Lighting Controls	Interior Lighting Control	1	100%
Building Envelope (Division 07)			
Building Envelope Systems	Air barrier continuity/performance	1	100%
	Fenestration	1	100%
	Insulation	Included	See Note (2)
	Weather Resistive Barrier	Included	See Note (2)
	Vapor Management/Condensation Control	1	100%
	Roof	1	100%
	Exterior Walls	Included	See Note (2)
	Glazing	1	100%
Table Notes			
Note (1)	Building Automation System control panels, sensors, actuators, valves and other components will be tested in conjunction with the equipment controlled.		
Note (2)	Weather-resistive barrier, insulation and exterior walls will be tested concurrently with qualitative testing of building air barrier.		

Note: Actual quantities may vary and can be adjusted based on the final Construction Documents.

1.8 COMMISSIONING TEAM

A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s):

1. Commissioning Representatives: Individuals, each having authority to act on behalf of the entity he or she represents, explicitly organized to implement the commissioning process through coordinated actions. The commissioning team shall consist of, but not be limited to, representatives of Contractor, including Project superintendent and subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists deemed appropriate by the Client Agency and CxA.

B. Members Appointed by the Client Agency:

1. CxA: The designated person, company, or entity that plans, schedules, and coordinates the commissioning team to implement the commissioning process. The Client Agency will engage the CxA under a separate contract.
2. Representatives of the facility user and operation and maintenance personnel.
3. Design professionals.

1.9 CLIENT AGENCY'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Review the OPR provided by the CxA. This document will be used for reviewing the construction documents, developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, operation and maintenance training plan, and testing plans and checklists.
- B. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Coordination meetings.
 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 3. Testing meetings.
 4. Witness and assist in systems functional testing.
 5. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- C. Provide the BOD documents, prepared by the Design Professional and approved by the Client Agency, to the CxA and for use in developing the OPR and reviewing the construction documents, developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance training plan.

1.10 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide utility services required for the commissioning process.
- B. The General Contractor shall assign a person to manage commissioning activities of the, subcontractors, installers and vendors.
- C. Each installing Contractor and Subcontractor shall assign representatives with expertise and authority to act on behalf of the Contractor / Subcontractor and schedule them to participate in and perform commissioning team activities including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Participate in construction-phase coordination meetings.
 2. Participate in maintenance orientation and inspection.
 3. Provide a list of submittals to the CxA.

4. Provide construction submittals, shop drawings, startup reports, test reports and other construction documentation requested by the CxA.
5. Participate in procedures meetings for testing.
6. Participate in final review at acceptance meeting.
7. Provide schedule for operation and maintenance data submittals, equipment startup, and testing to CxA for incorporation into the commissioning plan. Update schedule on a weekly basis throughout the construction period.
8. Prior to startup, inspect, check and verify that equipment installation is complete, and systems are operational according to the Contract Documents, including calibration of instrumentation and controls through the completion of system readiness checklists and submission of trend data from the control system in tabular and graphical form. When deficient or incomplete work is discovered, ensure corrective action is taken and re-check until equipment or system is ready for startup.
9. Perform verification checks and startup on equipment and systems as specified. Indicate delineation of control between packaged controls and building automation system, listing BAS monitor points and BAS adjustable control points.
10. Provide written sequences of operation for packaged controlled equipment. Equipment manufacturers' stock sequences may be included, when accompanied by additional narrative to reflect Project conditions.
11. Provide equipment, materials, and labor to assist Commissioning Authority in performing functional performance tests on equipment and systems as specified. This would require technicians who are familiar with the construction and operation of installed systems and who shall participate in functional testing of installed systems, subsystems, and equipment to verify testing and balancing, and equipment and system performance. This may include deferred functional performance testing after substantial completion as necessary to demonstrate the functionality of a system.
12. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
13. Participate in training sessions for the Client Agency's operation and maintenance personnel.
14. Gather and submit operation and maintenance data for systems, subsystems, and equipment to the CxA, as specified in Division 01.
15. Provide operation and maintenance information, system training information, and record drawings to Commissioning Authority for review verification and organization, prior to distribution.

16. Review and approve final commissioning documentation.

1.11 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Organize and lead the commissioning team.
- B. Identify commissioning team member responsibilities, by name, firm, and trade specialty, for performance of each commissioning task.
- C. Collaborate with the General contractor, and with subcontractors to develop test and inspection procedures.
- D. Include scheduled commissioning activities coordinated with overall Project schedule.
- E. Identify the submittals requested for review from the list of submittals provided by the Contractor.
- F. Review and comment on selected submittals from each Contractor for compliance with the OPR, BOD, Contract Documents, and construction-phase commissioning plan. Review and comment on performance expectations of systems and equipment and interfaces between systems relating to the OPR and BOD.
- G. Convene commissioning team meetings for the purpose of coordination, communication, and conflict resolution; discuss progress of the commissioning processes. Responsibilities include arranging for facilities, preparing agenda and attendance lists, and notifying participants. The CxA shall prepare and distribute minutes to commissioning team members and attendees within five workdays of the commissioning meeting.
- H. Review minutes and attend selected regular project meetings as needed to resolve issues and concerns and coordinate the commissioning process.
- I. At the beginning of the construction phase, conduct an initial construction-phase coordination meeting for the purpose of reviewing the commissioning activities and establishing tentative schedules for operation and maintenance submittals; operation and maintenance training sessions; TAB Work; and Project completion.
- J. Observe and inspect construction and report progress and deficiencies. In addition to compliance with the OPR, BOD, and Contract Documents. Inspect systems and equipment installation for adequate accessibility for maintenance and component replacement or repair.
- K. Prepare Project-specific system readiness checklists and functional performance tests.
- L. Review the TAB report for compliance with the OPR, BOD, and Contract Documents. Spot-check TAB readings to verify accuracy of the TAB report.
- M. Schedule, direct, witness, and document select tests, inspections, and systems startup. This may include deferred functional performance testing after substantial completion as necessary to demonstrate the functionality of a system.

- N. Compile relevant test data, inspection reports, and certificates and include them in the systems manual and commissioning report.
- O. Verify date of acceptance and startup for each item of equipment for start of warranty periods.
- P. Review and comment on operation and maintenance documentation and systems manual outline for compliance with the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. Operation and maintenance documentation requirements are specified in Division 01.
- Q. Review operation and maintenance training program developed by the General contractor and Subcontractors. Verify training plans provide qualified instructors to conduct operation and maintenance training. CxA to verify videotaping is completed and professionally edited by the Contractor. Electronic copy to be included in E-Builder and each Cx Report. Operation and maintenance training is specified in Division 01.
- R. Prepare commissioning reports.
- S. Return to the site within 10 months into the 12 months warranty period and review with facility staff the current building operation and the condition of outstanding issues related to the original and seasonal commissioning. Also interview facility staff and identify problems or concerns they have operated the building as originally intended. Make suggestions for improvements and for recording these changes in the O&M manuals. Identify areas that may come under warranty or under the original construction contract. Assist facility staff in developing reports, documents and requests for services to remedy outstanding problems. CxA warranty visit to occur simultaneously with Seasonal Sensitive Functional Performance Testing.
- T. Assemble the final commissioning documentation, including the Final Commissioning Report and Addendum to the Final Commissioning Report.

1.12 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. OPR: A written document, prepared by the CxA in collaboration with the Client Agency and the design team, details the functional requirements of Project and expectations of how it will be used and operated. This document includes Project and design goals, measurable performance criteria, budgets, schedules, success criteria, and supporting information.
- B. BoD Document: A document, prepared by design team, that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.
- C. Commissioning Plan: A document, prepared by CxA, that outlines the schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process, and shall include, but is not limited to the following:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports. Identification of the relationship of these documents to

other functions and a detailed description of submittals that are required to support the commissioning processes.

2. Identification of systems and equipment to be commissioned.
 3. Description of schedules for testing procedures along with identification of parties involved in performing and verifying tests.
 4. Description of responsibilities of commissioning team members.
 5. Description of requirements for operation and maintenance training, including required training materials.
 6. Description of expected performance for systems, subsystems, equipment, and controls.
 7. Schedule for commissioning activities with specific dates coordinated with overall construction schedule.
 8. Identification of installed systems, subsystems, and equipment, including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 9. Process and schedule for completing prestart and startup checklists for systems, subsystems, and equipment to be verified and tested.
 10. Step-by-step procedures for testing systems, subsystems, and equipment with descriptions for methods of verifying relevant data, recording the results obtained, and listing parties involved in performing and verifying tests.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: The CxA shall prepare Systems Readiness Checklists that describe the minimum conditions necessary prior to testing. System Readiness Checklists shall be filled out by the General contractor, Subcontractor(s), and Installer(s), certifying that systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing. The CxA will spot check System Readiness Checklists to verify accuracy and readiness for testing.
- E. Functional Test Procedures: CxA shall develop Functional Test Procedures for each system to be commissioned, including subsystems, or equipment and interfaces or interlocks with other systems. Functional Test Procedures will include a separate entry, with space for comments, for each item to be tested. Preliminary Functional Test Procedures will be provided to the Client Agency, Design Professional, General contractor and Subcontractor for review and comment. Include test procedures for each mode of operation and provide space to indicate whether the mode under test responded as required. CxA shall document the Functional Performance Tests to document the testing performed by the contractor and directed by the CxA. Provide space for testing personnel to sign off on each test. Each test, regardless of system, subsystem, or equipment being tested, shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1. Name and identification code of tested item.

2. Time and date of test.
 3. Indication of whether the record is for a first test or retest following correction of a problem or issue.
 4. Dated signatures of the person performing test and of the witness, if applicable.
 5. Individuals present for test.
 6. Deficiencies.
- F. Field Reports: CxA shall submit reports documenting onsite activities after each visit to the project site. Field Reports typically contain information regarding issues, meeting discussions, general construction observations, and the status of testing activities. Pictures shall be included as necessary to properly convey information discussed in the Field Report.
- G. Issues Log: CxA shall prepare and maintain an issues log that describes design, installation, and performance issues that are at variance with the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. Identify and track issues as they are encountered, documenting the status of unresolved and resolved issues.
1. Creating an Issues Log Entry:
 - a. Identify the issue with unique numeric or alphanumeric identifier by which the issue may be tracked.
 - b. Assign a descriptive title of the issue.
 - c. Identify date and time of the issue.
 - d. Identify system, subsystem, and equipment to which the issue applies.
 - e. Include information that may be helpful in diagnosing or evaluating the issue.
 - f. Identify commissioning team member responsible for corrective action.
 - g. Identify person documenting the issue.
 2. Documenting Issue Resolution:
 - a. Log date correction is completed, or the issue is resolved.
 - b. Describe corrective action or resolution taken. Include description of diagnostic steps taken to determine root cause of the issue, if any.
 - c. Identify changes to the Contract Documents that may require action.
 - d. State that correction was completed, and system, subsystem, and equipment is ready for retest, if applicable.

- e. Identify person(s) documenting the issue resolution.
- H. Final Commissioning Report: CxA shall document results of the commissioning process including unresolved issues and performance of systems, subsystems, and equipment. The commissioning report shall indicate whether systems, subsystems, and equipment have been completed and are performing according to the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. The commissioning report shall include, but is not limited to, the following:
- 1. OPR and BoD documentation.
 - 2. Commissioning plan.
 - 3. Testing plans and reports.
 - 4. Issues log.
 - 5. Completed commissioning checklists.
 - 6. Listing of deferred test(s) not performed and a schedule for their completion.
- I. Addendum to Final Commissioning Report: CxA shall prepare an Addendum to the Final Commissioning Report near the end of the Warranty Period. The Addendum shall indicate whether systems, subsystems, and equipment are complete and continue to perform according to the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. The Addendum to the Final Commissioning Report shall include, but is not limited to, the following:
- 1. Documentation of deferred test(s) results.
 - 2. Completed Functional Test Procedures for deferred test(s).
 - 3. Updated status of unresolved issues.
 - 4. Documentation that unresolved system performance issues have been resolved.
 - 5. Updated Issues Log.
 - 6. Documentation of the Warranty Period site visit and activities.
 - 7. Listing of potential Warranty Claims to be corrected by the General contractor and Subcontractors.
- J. Systems Manual: CxA shall gather required information and compile systems manual. Systems manual shall include, but is not limited to, the following:
- 1. OPR and BoD, including system narratives, schematics, and changes made throughout the Project.
 - 2. System design, operations and sequence information as well as select operations and maintenance data.
 - 3. Preventative maintenance and scheduling information

4. Systems Manual shall include all information from all commissioned systems.
5. Listing of potential Warranty Claims to be corrected by the General contractor and Subcontractors.

1.13 SUBMITTALS

- A. Preliminary Construction Commissioning Plan Submittal: CxA shall submit a draft Construction Commissioning Plan to the General contractor the Subcontractors, the Client Agency, and the Design Professional. All reviewing parties shall provide review comments to the CxA for preparation of the final construction-phase commissioning plan.
- B. Construction Commissioning Plan Final Submittal: CxA shall an electronic copy of final commissioning plan to the General Contractor, the Subcontractors, the Client Agency and the Design Professional. The final submittal must address previous review comments.
- C. Duration Schedule for Commissioning Activities: CxA shall submit a duration schedule to show the duration, predecessors, and successors for commissioning activities. This duration schedule will be provided to the General Contractor to include commissioning activities in the project construction schedule. This will allow commissioning activities to be smoothly integrated into the overall construction process.
- D. Field Reports: CxA shall submit reports documenting onsite activities after each visit to the project site.
- E. Commissioning Issues Log: CxA shall submit Commissioning Issues Log documenting deficiencies during the commissioning process upon each update of the Commissioning Issues Log. The Commissioning Team shall document responses and updates in the Commissioning Issues Log and submit to the CxA for review.
- F. Commissioning Review Log: CxA shall submit Commissioning Review Log(s) documenting comments found during the review of project documents during the commissioning process upon each update of the Commissioning Review Log(s). The Commissioning Team shall document responses in the Commissioning Review Log(s) and submit to the CxA for review.
- G. Functional Performance Tests: CxA shall submit preliminary functional test procedures and forms to the General contractor, Subcontractors, Client Agency and Design Professional for review and comment. The General Contractor, Subcontractors, Client Agency and Design Professional shall return review comments to the CxA. CxA shall incorporate review comments into the Final Functional Performance Tests to be used in system testing. CxA shall submit completed Functional Performance Tests with the Commissioning Report.
- H. System Readiness Checklists: CxA shall submit System Readiness Checklists to be completed by the General contractor and Subcontractors. CxA shall submit completed System Readiness Checklists with the Commissioning Report.

- I. Preliminary Commissioning Report Submittal: CxA shall submit an electronic copy of the preliminary commissioning report. Review comments will be returned to the CxA for preparation of final submittal.
- J. Final Commissioning Report Submittal: CxA shall submit an electronic copy of the final commissioning report to the Client Agency. The final submittal must address previous review comments and shall include a copy of the preliminary commissioning report review comments along with a response to each item.

1.14 COMMISSIONING PROCESS

- A. The CxA shall be responsible for the overall management of the commissioning process as well as the specific scheduling of all procedures.
- B. Prior to the start of building envelope, mechanical or electrical system installation, the Contractor shall designate specific individuals as commissioning representatives (CR) for each Subcontractor to be associated with commissioning work. The commissioning representatives shall participate in the commissioning process as team members providing commissioning testing services, equipment operation, adjustments, and corrections if necessary. All CR's shall be selected as individuals having sufficient authority to direct their respective staff to provide the services required, accept, and provide minor changes to the work on behalf of the sub-contractors or various organizations involved, and to speak on behalf of their organizations in all commissioning related contractual matters.

1.15 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: Factory-authorized service representatives, experienced in training, operation, and maintenance procedures for installed systems, subsystems, and equipment shall be provided as necessary to perform testing and training activities.
- B. Test Equipment Calibration: Comply with test equipment manufacturer's calibration procedures and intervals. Recalibrate test instruments immediately whenever instruments have been repaired following damage or dropping. Affix calibration tags to test instruments. Instruments shall have been calibrated within twelve months prior to use.

1.16 COORDINATION

- A. Management: The CxA shall direct and coordinate the commissioning activities and the commissioning reports to the Client Agency. All members shall work together to fulfill their contracted responsibilities and meet the objectives of the contract documents.
- B. Scheduling: The CxA shall work with the General Contractor, Subcontractors and the Client Agency to schedule the commissioning activities. The CxA shall provide sufficient notice to the General contractor, Subcontractors and the Client Agency for scheduling commissioning activities. The Contractors shall integrate all commissioning

activities into the master schedule. All parties will address scheduling problems and make necessary notifications in a timely manner to expedite the commissioning process.

- C. Initial Schedule of Commissioning Events: The CxA shall provide the initial schedule of primary commissioning events at the commissioning scoping meeting. As construction progresses more detailed schedules shall be developed by the CxA.
- D. Coordinating Meetings: CxA shall conduct periodic coordination meetings of the commissioning team to review progress on the commissioning process, to discuss scheduling conflicts, and to discuss upcoming commissioning activities.

This would include review startup reports, pretest inspection results, testing procedures, testing personnel and instrumentation requirements, and manufacturers' authorized service representative services for each system, subsystem, equipment, and component to be tested.

- E. Testing Coordination: CxA shall coordinate sequence of testing activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- F. Manufacturers' Field Services: CxA shall coordinate with the General contractor and Subcontractors for support of equipment's manufacturers' field services during functional testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.2 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required functional performance testing shall be provided by the Contractor for the equipment being tested.
- B. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. All equipment shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended intervals and when dropped or damaged. All equipment shall be calibrated within 12 months of use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.2 START-UP, SYSTEM READINESS CHECKLISTS AND INITIAL CHECKOUT

- A. The following procedures shall apply to all equipment and systems to be commissioned, according to Section 1, Systems to Be Commissioned.

1. System Readiness Checklists are important to ensure that the equipment and systems are hooked up and operational. These ensure that functional performance testing (in-depth system checkout) may proceed without unnecessary delays. Each piece of equipment shall receive a full System Readiness Checklist checkout. No sampling strategies are used. The System Readiness Checklist for a given system must be successfully completed prior to formal functional performance testing of equipment or subsystems of the given system.
 - a. The CxA shall develop System Readiness Checklists and procedures after final approval of equipment submittals. These checklists indicate required procedures to be executed as part of startup and initial checkout of the systems and the party responsible for their execution.
 - b. The General contractor shall determine which Subcontractor is responsible for executing and documenting each of the line item tasks and notes that trade on the form. Each form may have more than one trade responsible for its execution.
2. Start-up and Initial Checkout Plan: The Contractor shall develop detailed start-up plans for all equipment. The primary role of the Contractor in this process is to ensure that there is written documentation that each of the manufacturer-recommended procedures have been completed. Parties responsible for System Readiness Checklists and startup shall be identified in the commissioning scoping meeting and in the checklist forms.
 - a. The full start-up plan shall at a minimum consist of the following items:
 - 1) The System Readiness Checklists.
 - 2) The manufacturer's standard written start-up procedures copied from the installation manuals with check boxes by each procedure and a signature block added by hand at the end.
 - 3) The manufacturer's normally used field checkout sheets.
3. Sensor and Actuator Calibration
 - a. All field-installed temperature, relative humidity, air flow, water flow, CO2 and pressure sensors and gages, and all actuators (dampers and valves) on all equipment shall be calibrated using the methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - b. All procedures used shall be fully documented on the System Readiness Checklists or other suitable forms, clearly referencing the procedures followed and written documentation of initial, intermediate, and final results.
4. Execution of System Readiness Checklists and Startup
 - a. Four weeks prior to startup, the Contractor shall schedule startup and checkout with the Client Agency and CxA. The performance of the System

Readiness Checklists, startup and checkout shall be directed and executed by the Contractor.

- b. The Contractor shall execute startup and provide the CxA with completed start-up and System Readiness Checklists and initial tests.

3.3 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. Objectives and Scope: The objective of functional performance testing is to demonstrate that each system is operating according to the documented design intent and Contract Documents. Successful Completion of Functional Testing is a Prerequisite to Substantial Completion. Additionally, during the testing process, areas of deficient performance are identified and corrected, improving the operation, and functioning of the systems. In general, each system shall be operated through all modes of operation (seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part-and full-load, fire alarm and emergency power) where there is a specified system response. The Contractor shall verify each sequence in the sequences of operation. Proper responses to such modes and conditions as power failure, freeze condition, low oil pressure, no flow, equipment failure, etc. shall also be tested.
- B. Development of Functional Performance Tests: The CxA shall develop specific Functional Performance Tests to verify and document proper operation of each piece of equipment and system. The Contractor shall assist the CxA in developing the procedures review (answering questions about equipment, operation, sequences, etc.). Prior to execution, the CxA shall provide a copy of the test procedures to the Contractor who shall review and execute the tests for feasibility, safety, equipment, and warranty protection.
- C. Test Methods: Functional performance testing and verification shall be achieved by manual testing (persons manipulate the equipment and observe performance) and/or by monitoring the performance and analyzing the results using the control system's trend log capabilities or by stand-alone data loggers. The CxA shall determine which method is most appropriate for tests that do not have a method specified.
 - 1. Simulated Conditions: Simulating conditions (not by an overwritten value) shall be allowed as determined by the CxA, though timing the testing to experience actual conditions is encouraged wherever practical.
 - 2. Overwritten Values: Overwriting sensor values to simulate a condition, such as overwriting the outside air temperature reading in a control system to be something other than it really is, shall be allowed as determined by the CxA, but shall be used with caution and avoided when possible. Such testing methods often can only test a part of a system, as the interactions and responses of other systems will be erroneous or not applicable. Simulating a condition is preferable. e.g., for the above case, by heating the outside air sensor with a hair blower rather than overwriting the value or by altering the appropriate setpoint to see the desired response. Before simulating conditions or overwriting values, sensors, transducers, and devices shall have been calibrated.

3. Simulated Signals: Using a signal generator which creates a simulated signal to test and calibrate transducers and DDC constants is generally recommended over using the sensor to act as the signal generator via simulated conditions or overwritten values.
4. Altering Setpoints: Rather than overwriting sensor values, and when simulating conditions is difficult, altering setpoints to test a sequence is acceptable. For example, to see the AC compressor lockout work at an outside air temperature below 12 °C, when the outside air temperature is above 12 °C, temporarily change the lockout setpoint to be 2 °C above the current outside air temperature.
5. Indirect Indicators: Relying on indirect indicators for responses or performance shall be allowed only after visually and directly verifying and documenting, over the range of the tested parameters, that the indirect readings through the control system represent actual conditions and responses. Much of this verification shall be completed during system readiness testing.
6. Setup: Each function and test shall be performed under conditions that simulate actual conditions as close as is practically possible. The Contractor shall provide all necessary materials, system modifications, etc. to produce the necessary flows, pressures, temperatures, etc. necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, the Contractor shall return all affected building equipment and systems, due to these temporary modifications, to their pre-test condition.
7. Sampling: No sampling is allowed in completing System Readiness Checklists. Sampling is allowed for functional test procedures execution as described in the Commissioning Plan. The CxA shall determine the sampling rate. If at any point, frequent failures are occurring and testing is becoming more troubleshooting than verification, the CxA may stop the testing and require the Contractor to perform and document a checkout of the remaining units, prior to continuing with functionally testing the remaining units. Costs associated with testing expanded samples and/or all equipment or systems of the specified type are the responsibility of the Contractor.
8. Coordination and Scheduling: The Contractor shall provide sufficient notice to the CxA and Client Agency regarding the completion schedule for the System Readiness Checklists and startup of all equipment and systems. The CxA shall schedule functional tests through the Contractor and Client Agency. The CxA shall direct, witness and document the functional testing of equipment and systems. The Contractor shall execute the tests.
9. Testing Pre-Requisites: In general, functional testing shall be conducted after system readiness testing and startup has been satisfactorily completed. The control system shall be sufficiently tested and approved by the CxA and the Client Agency before it is used for TAB or to verify performance of other components or systems. The air balancing and water balancing shall be completed and debugged before functional testing of air-related or water-related equipment or systems. Testing shall proceed from components to subsystems to systems. When the proper performance of all interacting individual systems has

been achieved, the interface or coordinated responses between systems shall be checked.

10. Problem Solving: The CxA shall recommend solutions to problems found, however the burden of responsibility to solve, correct and retest problems is with the Contractor.

3.4 DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVAL OF TESTS

- A. Documentation: The CxA shall witness and document the results of all Functional Performance Tests using the specific procedural forms developed by the CxA for that purpose. Prior to testing, the CxA shall provide these forms to the Contractor for review.
- B. Non-Conformance: The CxA shall record the results of the Functional Performance Tests on the procedure or test form. All deficiencies or non-conformance issues shall be noted and reported to the Cx Team on a standard non-compliance form.
 1. Corrections of minor deficiencies identified may be made during the tests at the discretion of the CxA. In such cases the deficiency and resolution shall be documented on the procedure form.
 2. Every effort shall be made to expedite the testing process and minimize unnecessary delays, while not compromising the integrity of the procedures. However, the CxA will not be pressured into overlooking deficient work or loosening acceptance criteria to satisfy scheduling or cost issues, unless there is an overriding reason to do so by direction from the Client Agency.
 3. As tests progress and a deficiency is identified, the CxA shall discuss the issue with the Contractor.
 4. When there is no dispute on the deficiency and the Contractor accepts responsibility to correct it:
 - a. The CxA shall document the deficiency. The Contractor shall correct the deficiency provide correction details and shall notify the CxA of the correction.
 - b. The Contractor shall reschedule the test and the test shall be repeated at the discretion of the Client Agency. There will be cost associated at the responsibility of the Contractors.
 5. If there is a dispute about a deficiency, regarding whether it is a deficiency or who is responsible:
 - a. The deficiency shall be documented with the Contractor's response and a copy given to the Client Agency and to the Design Team.

- b. Resolutions shall be made at the lowest management level possible. Other parties are brought into the discussions as needed. Final interpretive and acceptance authority is with the Client Agency.
 - c. The CxA shall document the resolution process.
 - d. Once the interpretation and resolution have been decided, the Contractor shall correct the deficiency, provide documentation of the correction, and notify the CxA. The Contractor shall reschedule the test and the test shall be repeated until satisfactory performance is achieved at the discretion of the Client Agency. There will be cost associated at the responsibility of the Contractors.
- C. Cost of Retesting: The costs incurred by the CxA and other participants for retesting a functional test or portions of a functional test shall be solely the responsibility of the Contractor. Any required retesting by the Contractor shall not be considered a justified reason for a claim of delay or for a time extension by the Contractor.
- D. Failure Due to Manufacturer Defect: If 10%, or three, whichever is greater, of identical pieces (size alone does not constitute a difference) of equipment fail to perform to the Contract Documents (mechanically or substantively) due to manufacturing defect, not allowing it to meet its submitted performance spec, all identical units may be considered unacceptable by the Client Agency. In such case, the Contractor shall provide the Client Agency with the following:
 - 1. Within one week of notification from the Client Agency, the Contractor or manufacturer's representative shall examine all other identical units making a record of the findings. The findings shall be provided to the Client Agency within two weeks of the original notice.
 - 2. Within two weeks of the original notification, the Contractor or manufacturer shall provide a signed and dated, written explanation of the problem, cause of failures, etc. and all proposed solutions which shall include full equipment submittals. The proposed solutions shall not significantly exceed the specification requirements of the original installation.
 - 3. The Client Agency shall determine whether a replacement of all identical units or a repair is acceptable.
 - 4. Two examples of the proposed solution shall be installed by the Contractor and the Client Agency shall be allowed to test the installations for up to one week, upon which the Client Agency will decide whether to accept the solution.
 - 5. Upon acceptance, the Contractor and/or manufacturer shall replace or repair all identical items, at their expense and extend the warranty accordingly, if the original equipment warranty had begun. The replacement/repair work shall proceed with reasonable speed beginning within one week from when parts can be obtained.
- E. Approval: The CxA shall note each satisfactorily demonstrated function on the test form.

3.5 DEFERRED TESTING

- A. Unforeseen Deferred Tests: If any test cannot be completed due to the building structure, required occupancy condition or other deficiency, execution of checklists and functional testing may be delayed upon approval of the Client Agency. These tests shall be conducted in the same manner as the seasonal tests as soon as possible. Services of necessary parties shall be negotiated.
- B. Seasonal Testing: During the warranty period, seasonal testing (tests delayed until weather conditions are closer to the system's design) specified in Division 23 sections of the specifications shall be completed as part of this contract. The CxA shall coordinate this activity. Tests shall be executed, documented and deficiencies corrected by the Contractor, with facilities staff and the CxA witnessing. Any final adjustments to the functional testing data due to the testing shall be made.

3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE TRAINING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Training Preparation: Before operation and maintenance training, CxA shall discuss requirements in a Cx meeting that includes the Client Agency's operation and maintenance personnel, General contractor, and Subcontractors. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01, perform the following:
 - 1. Review the OPR and BoD.
 - 2. Review installed systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 3. Review instructor qualifications.
 - 4. Review instructional methods and procedures.
 - 5. Review training module outlines and contents.
 - 6. Review course materials (including operation and maintenance manuals).
 - 7. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 - 8. Review and finalize training schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 - 9. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.
- B. Training Modules: Contractor's shall develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system, subsystem, and equipment as specified in Division 01.

3.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Submission of Operations and Maintenance Data: Submit Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Data specifically applicable to this contract and a complete and concise depiction of the provided equipment, product, or system. Organize and present information in sufficient detail to clearly explain O&M requirements at the system, equipment, component, and subassembly level. Include an index preceding each submittal. Submit in accordance with this section and Division 01.
1. Package Quality: Documents must be fully legible. Poor quality copies and material with hole-punches obliterating the text or drawings will not be accepted. Documents shall be written in English language.
 2. Package Content: Data package content shall be as shown in the Contract Documents. Comply with the data package requirements specified in the individual technical specification sections, including the content of the packages, and addressing each product, component, and system designated for data package submission.
 3. Changes to Submittals: Manufacturer-originated changes or revisions to submitted data shall be furnished by the Contractor if a component of an item is so affected after acceptance of the O&M Data. Changes, additions, or revisions required by the Contracting Officer for final acceptance of submitted data, shall be submitted by the Contractor within 30 calendar days of the notification of this change requirement.
- B. CxA Review and Approval: Prior to substantial completion, the CxA shall review the O&M manual data, documentation and redlined as-builds for equipment and systems that were commissioned to verify compliance with the O&M documentation requirements of the specifications. The CxA shall communicate deficiencies in the manuals to the Client Agency. Upon a successful review of the corrections, the CxA shall recommend approval and acceptance of these sections of the O&M manuals to the Client Agency. The CxA shall also review each equipment warranty and verify that all requirements to keep the warranty valid are clearly stated. This work does not supersede the normal review requirement of the O&M manual data as indicated elsewhere in the specifications.

3.8 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE ACCEPTANCE

- A. The Client Agency will take responsibility for operations and maintenance of the equipment associated with the mechanical and electrical systems at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 019113

SECTION 024119
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
 - 2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
 - 3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

1.2 MATERIALS CLIENT OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Client Agency that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Client Agency.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Client Agency.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of selective demolition activities with starting and ending dates for each activity.
- D. Predemolition photographs.
- E. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Client Agency will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Client Agency's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Client Agency as far as practical.
 - 1. During the Administrative Sequence, the Owner will remove from the museum and/or store artifacts within the museum building in protected areas and/or protective enclosures as illustrated on Drawing G.2.
 - 2. Before construction work and selective demolition activities, the Contractor will consolidate and store within the existing rooms as illustrated on Drawing G.2 the following items:
 - a. All loose furnishings in rooms where construction activities are scheduled to occur and as indicated on Drawing G.2.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Client Agency before start of the Work.
 - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Client Agency. Hazardous materials will be removed by Client Agency under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.
- G. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Client Agency's operations.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Client Agency will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.

- e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Client Agency.
- f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to the existing facility. Building security will need to be maintained at all times during the construction work through either the use of existing doors with lockable hardware or portable doors with lockable hardware during door replacement construction work.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 - 1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 - 2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
 - 3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
 - 4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 4 hours after flame-cutting operations.
 - 5. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 - 6. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities. Site and facility security needs to be maintained at all times during the construction work to ensure the owner's access to the site and facility and needed protections for the public.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Client Agency.

4. Transport items to Client Agency's storage area as designated by Client Agency representative.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition, cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

SECTION 033053

MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94 and ACI 301.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ACI 301.
- B. Comply with ACI 117.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I/II.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.
4. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595/C 595M, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag cement.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

C. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.

D. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

E. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.

2.4 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

A. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches long.

B. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: fibrillated polypropylene macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 2 inches long.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth or cotton mats.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Normal-Weight Concrete:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3500 psi at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
 - 3. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, slag cement, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
 - 4. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 5. Air Content: Maintain within range permitted by ACI 301. Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floor slabs to exceed 3 percent.
- C. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of 1.5 lb/cu. yd..
- D. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of 4 lb/cu. yd..

2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.
- B. When air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, construct, erect, brace, and maintain formwork according to ACI 301.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- B. Consolidate concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.

3.6 FINISHING UNFORMED SURFACES

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Screed surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on surface.
 - 1. Do not further disturb surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- C. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded cementitious floor finishes unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Float Finish: Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, fluid-applied or direct-to-deck-applied membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
- E. Trowel Finish: Apply a hard trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system.
- F. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a partial trowel finish, stopping after second troweling, to surfaces indicated and to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset methods. Immediately after second troweling, and when concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
- G. Slip-Resistive Broom Finish: Apply a slip-resistive finish to surfaces indicated and to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.

3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure formed and unformed concrete for at least seven days by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests: Perform according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard 6-inch by 12-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample plus one set to be held in reserve for future break if necessary (five total).
7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days. The fifth sample shall be held in reserve for later testing if required
 - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Owner's Representative, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
14. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 033053

SECTION 040120

MAINTENANCE OF UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. This Section specifies requirements for the following Scope of Work:
 - 1. Removal and reinstallation and or replacement of existing brick masonry veneer to facilitate throughwall flashing installation.
 - 2. Remove and replace areas of damaged / deteriorated masonry veneer.
 - 3. Repoint brick masonry veneer.
 - 4. Clean masonry, including removal of plant growth.

1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Technical requirements for related Unit Price work are defined in this section. Refer to Division 01 Section 010250 - Unit Prices in Lump Sum Contracts, for quantities to be carried in the Base Bid and provided on the Bid Form.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.
- B. Medium-Pressure Spray: 400 to 800 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Work Plan: Indicating sequence of work, temporary scaffolding and staging locations, proposed method for temporary wall shoring.
- C. Letter Certifying that tradesmen have five or more years of experience.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Restoration Specialist Qualifications: Provide experienced personnel with a minimum of 5 years of experience to perform the specified work. Provide experienced personnel with a minimum of 5 years of experience to perform the specified work. Personnel shall have

completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience installing standard unit masonry is not sufficient experience for masonry restoration work.

1. At Contractor's option, work may be divided between two specialist firms: one for cleaning work and one for repair work.
2. Field Supervision: Restoration specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that clay masonry restoration and cleaning work is in progress.
3. Restoration Worker Qualifications: Persons who are experienced in restoration work of types they will be performing. When masonry units are being patched, assign at least one worker among those performing patching work who is trained and certified by manufacturer of patching compound to apply its products.

B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of restoration and cleaning to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution and for fabrication and installation.

1. Masonry Repair: Prepare sample areas for each type of masonry material indicated to have repair work performed. If not otherwise indicated, size each mockup not smaller than 2 adjacent whole units or approximately 48-inches in least dimension. Erect sample areas in existing walls unless otherwise indicated, to demonstrate quality of materials, workmanship, and blending with existing work. Include the following as a minimum:
 - a. Replacement:
 - 1) Four brick units replaced.
 - b. Patching: Three small holes at least 1-inch in diameter for each type of masonry material indicated to be patched, so as to leave no evidence of repair.
2. Repointing: Rake out joints in 2 separate areas, each approximately 36-inches high by 48-inches wide.
3. Cleaning: Clean an area approximately 25 sq. ft.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- D. Prepare, install, and cure all materials in accordance with these Specifications, Brick Institute of America (B.I.A.) Technical Notes, and Manufacturer's Printed Instructions.
- E. Provide brick or concrete masonry units as required to replace units damaged during removal and replacement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Face Brick: Salvage existing face brick to be reused in the completion of the masonry restoration work. Provide face brick if salvage brick is not sufficient to complete the masonry restoration work, including specially molded, ground, cut, or sawed shapes where required to complete masonry restoration work.
 - 1. Provide units with physical properties, colors, color variation within units, surface texture, size, and shape to match existing brickwork meeting ASTM C 216, Grade SW, Type FBS.
 - a. For existing brickwork that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide brick that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than brick that matches an individual color within that range.
- B. Building Brick: Provide building brick complying with ASTM C 62, Grade SW where in contact with earth, Grade SW, MW, or NW for concealed backup; and of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, white or gray or both where required for color matching of exposed mortar.
 - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Color: Provide natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 2. For pointing mortar, provide sand with rounded edges.
 - 3. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides, compounded for mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
- E. Water: Potable.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Throughwall Flashing: Refer to Division 07 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal."
- B. Weep Vents: Polypropylene honeycomb type venting weep hole material, clear or grey to match mortar, standard size for head joint. Quadro Vent by Hohmann and Barnard or approved substitute.

- C. Brick Ties: Dovetail style 12 gage, Type 304 stainless steel clip factory assembled to a 3/16-inch diameter wire tie of appropriate length approved to accommodate field conditions. Ties intended for individual masonry anchorage, not slot inserted (as for dovetail slots in new construction).
- D. Cavity Drainage Material: Free draining polymer strand mesh, dovetail shape with horizontal breaks at 7-inches and 10-inches high, width of cavity. Mortar Net by Mortar Net USA, Ltd. Or equal.

2.4 CLEANING MATERIALS

- A. Water: Potable.
- B. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of 140 to 160 deg F.
- C. Heavy duty cleaner: MASONRE-G, by Cathedral Stone Products, Inc.
- D. Nonacidic Liquid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly alkaline liquid cleaner formulated for removing mold, mildew, and other organic soiling from ordinary building materials, including polished stone, brick, aluminum, plastics, and wood.

2.5 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
 - 1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
 - 1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not exceed a pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10 by weight.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mortar Type: Provide mortar materials in the following proportions or as indicated below:
 - 1. Pointing and Rebuilding Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building being restored, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from masonry restoration work.

3.2 BRICK REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. At locations indicated, remove brick veneer that can be salvaged for reuse. Remove brick that is damaged, spalled, cracked or deteriorated. Carefully demolish or remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size salvaged or new units.
- B. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible to allow salvaged or new masonry to be "toothed" in.
 - 1. Remove mortar and loose particles from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
 - 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
- C. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
- D. Support masonry, specifically at location of new throughwall flashing installation, in accordance with approved drawings but in no case more than 4-feet on center. Protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition.
- E. Notify Owner of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- F. Clean bricks that have been salvaged for reuse and bricks surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for replacement.
- G. Replace removed damaged brick with other removed brick in good quality, where possible, or with new brick matching existing brick, including size. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
- H. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
 - 1. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
 - 2. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
- I. Lay replacement brick with completely filled bed and head joints. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 g/30 sq. in. per min. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
 - 1. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.

- J. Provide open head joints, spaced at 24-inches on center in brick masonry courses located directly above any throughwall flashings. Provide polypropylene full height venting matrix within open head joint.
- K. Clean masonry veneer with water and a stiff bristle brush.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install embedded flashings and weeps in masonry at locations scheduled for new throughwall flashings locations. Install in accordance with this section and Division 07 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal."
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare back-up wall surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. At ends of lintels, shelf angles, heads, and sills, extend flashing 6-inches beyond opening or turn ends up not less than 2-inches to form watertight end dams.
 - 3. Secure metal flashing to back-up wall with fasteners at 1-inches on center for stud walls and 24-inches on center for masonry walls. Provide metal termination bar where indicated. Provide 4-inch minimum butyl sealant filled section laps. Strip in top edge of metal flashing and metal flashing section joints with flexible flashing. Stop flexible flashing 1/2-inch back from outside face of wall.

3.4 CLEANING MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from top to bottom of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water will not wash over cleaned, dry surfaces.
- B. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
 - 1. Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used. Do not use plastic-bristle brushes if natural-fiber brushes will resist chemical cleaner being used.
 - 2. Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at spray tip. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage masonry.
 - 3. Equip units with pressure gages.
 - 4. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with cone-shaped spray tip.
 - 5. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray tip that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
 - 6. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between 140 and 160 deg F at flow rates indicated.

- C. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without streaking or damaging masonry surfaces.
- D. Water-Spray Application Method: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least 6-inches from surface of masonry and apply water in horizontal back and forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- E. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces to comply with chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding 50 psi. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
 - 1. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.

3.5 PRELIMINARY CLEANING

- A. Removing Plant Growth: Completely remove visible plant, moss, and shrub growth from masonry surfaces. Carefully remove plants, creepers, and vegetation by cutting at roots and allowing to dry as long as possible before removal. Remove loose soil and debris from open masonry joints to whatever depth they occur.
- B. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to cleaning methods being used. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.
 - 1. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of material from surface of masonry with a sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.

3.6 CLEANING MASONRY

- A. Detergent Cleaning:
 - 1. Wet masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Scrub masonry with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that masonry surface remains wet.
 - 3. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
 - 4. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
- B. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:
 - 1. Wet masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
 - 2. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush or low-pressure spray.

3. Scrub masonry with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that masonry surface remains wet.
4. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.

3.7 REPOINTING MASONRY

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
 1. All joints in areas indicated.
 2. Joints where mortar is missing or where they contain holes.
 3. Cracked joints where cracks can be penetrated at least 1/4-inch by a knife blade 0.027-inch thick.
 4. Cracked joints where cracks are 1/16-inch or more in width and of any depth.
 5. Joints where they sound hollow when tapped by metal object.
 6. Joints where they are worn back 1/4-inch or more from surface.
 7. Joints where they are deteriorated to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
 8. Joints where they have been filled with substances other than mortar.
 9. Joints indicated as sealant-filled joints.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of 2 times joint width, but not less than 1/2-inch or not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar.
 2. Remove mortar from masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
 3. Do not spall edges of masonry units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged masonry units as directed by Architect.
 - a. Cut out center of mortar bed joints using angle grinders with diamond-impregnated metal blades. Remove remaining mortar by hand with chisel and resilient mallet.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8-inch until a uniform depth

is formed. Fully compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

3. After low areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point all joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than 3/8-inch. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing masonry units have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
 4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours including weekends and holidays.
 - a. Acceptable curing methods include covering with wet burlap and plastic sheeting, periodic hand misting, and periodic mist spraying using system of pipes, mist heads, and timers.
 6. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

3.8 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, spray applied at low pressure.
1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.

END OF SECTION 040120

SECTION 053100

STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof deck.
 - 2. Pour stops and closures added to existing deck to be used as non-composite form deck.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Evaluation reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
 - 2. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
 - 3. Nucor Corp.
 - 4. Approved equal.

- B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating.
 - 2. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib.
 - 3. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0358 inch.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

- F. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

- G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

- H. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- C. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- D. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- E. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- F. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- G. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck at no additional cost to owner. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Provide comparative data showing mechanical fasteners meet or exceed design strength of welded fasteners indicated.
- H. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least one weld at each corner.
 - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld.
- I. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.2 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.

2. Weld Spacing: 3/4 layout per SDI, typical. Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches apart in the field of roof and 6 inches apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches, and as follows:
 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 2. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch-long welds.
 - C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
 - D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least one weld at each corner.
 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld.
 - E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation and apply repair paint.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Load-bearing wall framing including built up columns in wall.
 - 2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
 - 3. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing exceeding height limitations of standard, nonstructural metal framing.
 - 4. Floor and roof joist framing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing and connections, provide signed and sealed calculations and drawings by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency and professional engineer responsible for delegated design.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product certificates.
- D. Product test reports.
- E. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Comprehensive engineering analysis of cold-formed metal framing and connections signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ClarkDietrich.
 - 2. MarinoWARE.
 - 3. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
 - 4. The Steel Network, Inc.
 - 5. Approved equal.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer licensed in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania to design cold-formed steel framing and connections.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Design Loads:
 - a. Exterior Wall Framing: Dead load of self-weight and imposed loading on bearing walls from roof and floor framing above.
 - b. Interior Wall Framing: Dead load of self-weight and imposed loading on bearing walls from roof and floor framing above.
 - c. Roof Joist Framing: Dead load of self-weight and materials attached plus live, snow, and wind loads indicated on drawings.
 - d. Infill Floor Joist Framing: Dead load of self-weight and materials attached plus live loads indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the unbraced wall height.
 - b. Interior Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the unbraced wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft..
 - c. Roof Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the horizontally projected span for live loads.

- d. Infill Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of $1/360$ of the horizontally projected span for live loads.
 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
 4. Design interior non-bearing wall framing to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of primary building structure of $L/360$ for floor framing and $L/240$ for roof framing.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100, AISI S200, and the following:
 1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
 2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
 3. Headers: AISI S212.
- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:
 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 2. Coating: G60, A60, AZ50, or GF30.

2.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 2. Minimum Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 3. Section Properties: As required by design.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 2. Minimum Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 3. Section Properties: As required by design.

2.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 - 2. Minimum Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
 - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
- D. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.

2.6 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-3/8 inches.
 - 3. Section Properties: As required by design.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
- D. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

2.7 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC58 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - 1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel framing to structure.
 - 2. Type: adhesive anchor.
 - 3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.
- C. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M or SSPC-Paint 20.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, and with a fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density, multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as framing members supported by shims.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required to obtain fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load-bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
- D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- F. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- G. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

3.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 - 1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks, with gap not exceeding 1/8 inch between the end of wall-framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.

- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
 - E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
 - F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure.
 - G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 - 2. Install tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
 - H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
 - I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
 - 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges, and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - 3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges; terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
 - K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION
- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.

- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 - 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - 3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
 - 1. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
- G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
 - 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
1. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
- G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.8 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000
METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports.
 - 2. Shelf angles.
- C. Products under this Section include the following:
 - 1. Loose steel lintels.
 - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
 - 3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Paint products.
 - 2. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces

2.2 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. W-Shapes and WT-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- C. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type as indicated.
- E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade C cold-formed steel tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements, E70XX minimum.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM-F3125, GRADE A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish, unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- D. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 4. Finish: Plain typical, except hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C for use with galvanized members.
- E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563hex carbon steel, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 3. Finish: Plain typical, except hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C for use with galvanized members.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete".

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended.
- D. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- E. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.

2.7 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

2.8 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.9 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
- B. Shop prime steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with primers specified unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 08 00

COMMISSIONING OF BUILDING ENVELOPE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections “General Conditions of the Construction Contract”, “Special Conditions”, and “Division 1 – General Requirements” form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies the technical requirements for the application of the Commissioning Process as described in Section 019113 that will verify Thermal and Moisture Protection systems and the Air and Vapor Barrier systems (Building Enclosure) achieve the Owner’s Project Requirements and are compliant with the Basis of Design.
- B. The air barrier shall be contiguous and connected across all surfaces of the enclosed air barrier envelope. Infrared thermography and air barrier leakage tests shall be performed to demonstrate that air barrier materials are properly installed and joined; that windows, doors, and glazing systems are sufficiently air tight; and that the overall air barrier envelope is sealed. The quality of construction of the air barrier systems, including the joining and sealing of the air barrier materials and accessories, shall be sufficient to limit leakage under pressure to the maximum leakage functional requirements outlined in this specification.
- C. Passing air and water leakage and thermography testing to demonstrate that the building envelope is properly sealed and insulated will result in system acceptance. The testing and reporting shall be performed in accordance with the procedures outlined in this specification.

1.3 SCOPE

- A. The procedures and documentation requirements in this Section describe the application of the Commissioning Process for the Construction and Client Agency Occupancy phases of the Project, for Thermal and Moisture Protection, Air infiltration/exfiltration, and diffusive vapor control (Building Enclosure) to support the Commissioning Process activities described in Section 019113.
 - 1. Requirements to fully support the Building Enclosure Commissioning (BECx) Process activities include, but are not limited to:
 - a. Installation Contractors will attend the Pre-Installation Meeting to discuss the system for which they are responsible.

- b. Installation Contractors will complete System Readiness Checklists (SRC) for quality control on systems for which they are responsible, and submit completed SRCs to the CM, with their completed manufacturer's forms.
- c. Installation Contractors will provide the CxA, through the Construction Manager, notification a minimum of 5 work days in advance of their intention to perform or have performed the Functional Performance Testing for each system or piece of equipment for which they are responsible.
- d. Installation Contractor, under the direction of the Construction Manager (CM), with the Commissioning Agent (CxA) observing and documenting the results, will execute the Functional Performance Testing procedures for the various systems associated with the requirements for thermal and moisture protection, air infiltration/exfiltration, and diffusive vapor control.
- e. Installation Contractor will complete system quality control and testing processes and document results either on their internal record documents, on product manufacturer's provided forms, or on another agreed-upon form.

1.4 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. This Section is supplemental to Section 019113 – GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.
- B. This Section describes specific details required to properly implement the Commissioning Process for Thermal and Moisture Protection systems and Air and Vapor Barrier systems (Building Enclosure). This includes documentation, test procedures, and other requirements in the following Sections:
 - 1. Section 072100 Thermal Insulation
 - 2. Section 072119 Foamed-in-Place Insulation
 - 3. Section 072200 Roof and Deck Insulation
 - 4. Section 075323 Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing
 - 5. Section 075324 EPDM Roofing Repair
 - 6. Section 076000 Flashing and Sheet Metal
 - 7. Section 077100 Roof Specialties
 - 8. Section 079200 Joint Sealants
 - 9. Section 084113 Aluminum-Framed Storefronts

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

1. ASTM D4541 (2009; E 2010) Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers
2. ASTM D6677-07(2012) Standard Test Method for Evaluating Adhesion by Knife
3. ASTM E1105 (2000; R 2008) Standard Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls, by Uniform or Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference
4. ASTM E1186 (2003; R 2009) Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems
5. ASTM E1827 (2011) Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Buildings Using an Orifice Blower Door
6. ASTM E779 (2010) Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
7. ASTM E783 (2002; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors

B. AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

1. AAMA 501.2-09 Quality Assurance and Diagnostic Water Leakage Field Check of Installed Storefronts, Curtain Walls and Sloped Glazing Systems
2. AAMA 503-08 Voluntary Specification for Field Testing of Newly Installed Storefronts, Curtain Walls, and Sloped Glazing Systems

1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air Barrier Accessory: Products designated to maintain air tightness between air barrier materials, air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, to fasten them to the structure of the building, or both (e.g., sealants, tapes, backer rods, transition membranes, fasteners, strapping, primers).
- B. Air Barrier Assembly: The combination of air barrier materials and air barrier accessories that are designated and designed within the environmental separator to act as a continuous barrier to the movement of air through the environmental separator.
- C. Air Barrier Component: Pre-manufactured elements such as windows, doors and service elements that are installed in the environmental separator.
- D. Air Barrier Material: A building material that is designed and constructed to provide the primary resistance to airflow through an air barrier assembly.
- E. Air Barrier System: The combination of air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, connected by air barrier accessories that are designed to provide a continuous barrier to the movement of air through an environmental separator. This includes the roof, wall, and floor assemblies, and the wall and roof components, and

may include interior walls or partitions. There may be more than one air barrier system in a single building.

- F. Air Leakage Rate: The rate of airflow (CFM) driven through a unit surface area (sq.ft.) of an assembly or system by unit static pressure difference (in.w.g or Pa) across the assembly. (e.g. CFM/sq.ft. @ 0.30 in.w.g, or CFM/sq.ft. @ 75 Pa)
- G. Air Permeance: The rate of airflow (CFM) through a unit area (sq.ft.) of a material driven by unit static pressure difference (in.w.g. or Pa) across the material.
- H. Environmental Separator: The parts of a building that separate the controlled interior environment from the uncontrolled exterior environment, or that separate spaces within a building that have dissimilar environments.
- I. Test Zone: The portion of or volume within a building enclosed by an air barrier system which is to be tested for air leakage. The test zones are indicated.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Attend pre-construction conference between the Building Enclosure Commissioning Authority (BECxA) and the sub-contractors involved in the construction of or penetration of the air barrier system to discuss where each sub-contractor begins and ends, the sequence of installation, and each sub-contractor's responsibility to ensure airtight joints, junctures, penetrations and transitions between materials, products, and assemblies of products specified in the different sections to be installed by the different sub-contractors.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates

- 1. Thermography Test Firm: Two copies 60 days prior to thermography testing.
- 2. Air Barrier Leakage Test Firm: Two copies 60 days prior to leakage testing.

B. Test Reports

- 1. Thermography Test Procedures: Two copies 30 day prior to thermographic testing / examination.
- 2. Building Air Barrier Leakage Test Procedures: Two copies of detailed test procedures indicating the test apparatus, the test methods and procedures, and the analysis methods to be employed for the Building Air Barrier Leakage Test 30 prior to leakage testing.
- 3. Thermographic Test Report: Two copies of interim reports 10 days after completion. Four copies of the final report 14 days after completion.
- 4. Air Barrier Leakage Test Report: Two copies of interim reports 10 days after completion. Four copies of the final report 14 days after completion.

1.9 AIR BARRIER SYSTEM SURFACE AREA AND FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. The building air barrier systems shall meet the following leakage functional requirements. The allowable maximum leakage rate shall be 0.10 CFM/SF at a pressure of 0.30 in.w.g.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Qualifications

1. Thermography Test Firm: Minimum 2 years experience in thermographic testing and analysis, with a minimum of 3 successful projects of similar type and scope in the previous 3 years, using the specified testing standard, and employing qualified test technicians under the supervision of a Level III Certified Infrared Thermographer.
2. Air Barrier Leakage Test Firm: Minimum 2 years experience in air tightness testing and analysis, with a minimum of 3 successful projects of similar type and scope in the previous 3 years, using the specified testing standard, and employing qualified test technicians.

1.11 CONSTRUCTION PHASE

- A. Test procedures and data forms applicable to the Thermal and Moisture Protection systems and the Air and Vapor Barrier systems (Building Enclosure), to verify the Owner's Project Requirement and Basis of Design include but may not be limited to:

1. System Readiness Checklists (SRC);
 - a. Water Management Systems, including through-wall flashings
 - b. Diffusive Vapor Control / Vapor Retarders
 - c. Windows and Glazing Systems
 - d. Roofing Systems
 - e. Joint Sealant
2. Functional Performance Tests (FPT):
 - a. Air Barrier Systems
 - b. Water Management Systems, including through-wall flashings
 - c. Windows and Glazing Systems
 - d. Roofing Systems
 - e. Joint Sealant

B. Coordination requirements

1. The Contractor shall perform the specified system inspections and tests as required by the Specifications and Code Authorities.
2. The Contractor will utilize System Readiness Checklists (SRCs), for each system to be commissioned. Completed SRCs for each system will be submitted by the Installation Contractor to the Construction Manager along with the proposed schedule for Functional Performance Testing.
3. Unless specified otherwise, the contractor will provide a minimum five (5) work day notice to the Commissioning Agent (CxA) before execution of a specified test(s). Witnessing of testing will be at the discretion of the CxA, Client Agency and/or Design Professional.
4. Upon successful completion of Contractor Testing, the Contractor will submit a completed test report to the CM. The test report will contain the results of the test and be documented on either the Contractor's internal standard test report form or the Manufacturer's test report form.
5. A copy of Contractor's completed Test Report forms with the associated SRC for the equipment or system will be provided by the CM to the CxA. The CxA will review the Test Report and the System Readiness Checklists to verify the system's readiness for Functional Performance Testing.
6. Final scheduling for the execution of all FPTs is to be coordinated through the CM's Commissioning Coordinator and incorporated in the Master Schedule.
7. Construction Manager will coordinate with the Client Agency's Project Manager appropriate involvement of the Client Agency's Representative in execution of FPTs.

C. Test needs and schedule

1. Test Needs –Installing contractor is to provide basic tools and equipment necessary to access systems to be tested and/or to make minor adjustment to control devises so that the test procedure can continue without delay, i.e. ladders, pliers, screwdrivers, equipment specific tools.
2. Schedule – related Commissioning Activities should be coordinated and integrated into the Projects Master Schedule.

D. Commissioning Team Meetings:

1. Commissioning Kick-off Meeting – Prior to the initiation of commissioning process activities the Commissioning Firm will conduct a Commissioning Kick-off Meeting.
 - a. The purpose of this meeting is to review the BECx Process with installation contractors, discuss project-specific detailing and trade sequencing, review installation contractor personnel requirements for commissioning and to answer questions about the BECx Process.

- b. The Commissioning Kick-off Meeting will be conducted just prior to initial installation of building enclosure components.
 2. Periodic Commissioning Progress Meetings will be facilitated by the CxA and will usually be a part of the periodic Construction Progress Meeting. Meetings will be held as needed to provide a general update on progress made in the commissioning process to the Commissioning Team and to provide a 2 to 3 week “look-ahead” for final scheduling of commissioning activities.
- E. Construction Issues Log: The reporting mechanism for deficiencies identified during document reviews, field observations, and/or Functional Performance Testing. Deficiencies will be documented in the Construction Issues Log maintained by the Cx Team. Each Issue will contain enough information about the nature of the deficiency, its location, the specification or drawing reference to allow the appropriate installation provider to correct the deficiency in a timely manner and provide feedback as to when the deficiency has been corrected.
- F. Final Commissioning Report: Installation Contractors are to provide through the CM, to the CxA, copies of performance verification test reports, manufacturers’ testing reports and completed SRCs for all systems and equipment commissioned for inclusion in the Final Cx Report.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Document the entire installation process on daily job site reports. These reports include information on the Installer, substrates, substrate preparation, products used, ambient and substrate temperature, the location of the air barrier installation, the results of the quality control procedures, and testing results.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING

- A. Conduct the following qualitative and quantitative tests and inspections in the presence of the Client Agency during installation of the air barrier system.
 1. Qualitative Testing and Inspection (As Applicable):
 - a. Provide a Daily Report of Observations with a copy to the Client Agency.
 - b. Ensure continuity of the air barrier system throughout the building enclosure and that all gaps are covered, the covering is structurally sound, and all penetrations are sealed allowing for no infiltration or exfiltration through the air barrier system.
 - c. Ensure structural support of the air barrier system to withstand design air pressures.

- d. Ensure surfaces receiving air barrier materials are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions and mortar droppings, with mortar joints struck flush or as required by the manufacturer of the air barrier material.
 - e. Ensure site conditions for application temperature, and dryness of substrates are within guidelines.
 - f. Ensure substrate surfaces are properly primed.
 - g. Ensure laps in materials are made with minimum required overlaps, shingled in the correct direction, and fully sealed with no gaps.
 - h. Ensure that full and tenacious adhesion of air barrier and water management materials is achieved through proper installation methods.
 - i. Measure application thickness of liquid applied materials to manufacturer's specifications for the specific substrate.
 - j. Ensure proper connection between assemblies (membrane and sealants) for cleaning, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity and continuity of seal.
2. Quantitative Tests:
- a. Provide written test reports of all tests performed with a copy to Client Agency.
 - b. Determine bond strength of coatings to substrate in accordance with ASTM D4541.

3.3 THERMOGRAPHY TEST

- A. Upon completion of construction, and completion of quality control measures for the air barrier system and the thermal envelope, infrared thermography tests shall be conducted.
- B. Field Conditions: Perform testing under conditions stipulated in test standards, in instrument manufacturer's instructions, and in this Section. Perform testing on dry building surfaces after sunset and prior to sunrise under the following environmental conditions:
 - 1. Wind speed: Not greater than 15 mph.
 - 2. Outside Air Temperature: Either a minimum of 18 degrees F above building interior temperature or a minimum of 18 degrees F below building interior temperature, for a minimum of 4 hours prior to test, and not varying more than 30 percent during the test.
 - 3. Indoor Air Temperature: At constant temperature varying not more than 4 degrees F.

4. Direct Solar Exposure of Surfaces: No direct solar radiation on inspected surfaces during and for minimum 4 hours prior to inspection for frame construction, 8 hours for masonry veneer construction, at acceptable outside air temperature.

C. Thermography Test Procedures: The building envelope shall be tested using Infrared Thermography technology. The thermography testing shall be completed in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C1060 and ISO 6781. Perform a complete thermographic inspection consisting of full exterior and interior inspection of the complete thermal envelope and air barrier system.

1. The Client Agency shall be given the opportunity to witness the testing.
2. Conduct testing in conjunction with Building Air Barrier Leakage Testing. Perform infrared thermography immediately proper to and during Building Air Barrier Leakage Testing so that air leaks are detected.
3. If the building air barrier leakage test is failed, Thermographic testing shall be repeated just before and during subsequent air barrier leakage tests until the leakage test is successful.
4. Address the cause and required corrective action for all anomalous thermal images resulting from the examination.
5. Submit detailed test procedures indicating the test apparatus, the test methods and procedures, and the analysis methods to be employed for the Thermography Test.

D. Thermographic Test Report: Include thermographs in color and a color temperature scale to define the temperature indicated by the various colors. Identify the high temperature reading, the outdoor air temperature, the building indoor air temperature, and the wind speed and direction.

1. Note areas of the envelope that the inspection cannot cover due to limited or no access.
2. Note any areas of compromise in the building envelope, and note all actions required and taken to correct those areas.
3. Final thermography test report shall demonstrate that the problem areas have been corrected. Submit the complete test and analysis.

3.4 AIR BARRIER LEAKAGE TEST

- A. Upon completion of construction, and quality control measures for the air barrier system, building air barrier leakage tests shall be conducted.
- B. Building Air Barrier Leakage Test Procedures: Perform the air leakage test in accordance with ASTM E779 with the following additions and exceptions:

1. The test consists of measuring the flow rates required to establish a minimum of 12 positive and 12 negative building pressures. The lowest test pressure shall be 0.10 in.w.g or 25 Pa; the highest test pressure shall be 0.30 in.w.g or 75 Pa; and there must be at least 0.10 in.w.g or 25 Pa difference between the lowest and highest test pressures.
 2. Measure the test pressure in a representative location such that pressures in the extremities of the enclosure can be shown to not exceed 10 percent of the measured test pressure. At least 12 bias pressure readings must be taken across the envelope and averaged over at least 20 seconds each before and after the flow rate measurements. None of the bias pressure readings must exceed 30 percent of the minimum test pressure when testing in both directions.
 3. Where it can be shown that it is impossible to test in both directions, then the building may be tested in the positive direction only, provided the bias pressure does not exceed 10 percent of the minimum test pressure.]
 4. The mean value of the air leakage flow rate calculated from measured data at 75 Pa 0.3 in.w.g shall not exceed the air barrier functional requirements specified and the upper confidence limit as defined by ASTM E779. Reference measurements at standard conditions of 14.696 psi and 68 degrees F.
 5. Conduct the test with ventilation fans and exhaust fans turned off and the outdoor air intake dampers and exhaust dampers closed. Provide a responsible HVAC technician with the authority to place the HVAC system in the correct mode for the pressure test. The test technician shall have unhindered access to mechanical rooms, air handlers, exhaust fans, and outdoor air and exhaust dampers.
 6. Ensure that all windows in the test enclosure are kept closed. Prohibit entry and exit through doors in the test enclosure during the test. Discard data collected while the pressures and flows are affected by a door opening and closing. The openings of roll-up or roll-back type overhead doors shall be masked with plastic and sealed. Internal doors within the air barrier test enclosure shall be open; this includes access doors to attics enclosed by the air barrier system. Perform a diagnostic evaluation in accordance with ASTM E1186, whether the building achieves the air barrier system functional requirement or not. Use the diagnostic evaluation to assist in identifying and eliminating air leakage so the system meets the functional requirement upon retesting. Also, express the testing results in terms of the Equivalent Leakage Area (EqLA) at 0.30 in.w.g or 75 Pa. The EqLA is the equivalent area of a flat plate orifice that leaks the same amount as the building envelope at 0.30 in.w.g or 75 Pa.
- C. Fan Pressurization Test: Conduct the fan pressurization test to determine final compliance with the air barrier system functional requirement when all components of the air barrier system have been installed and inspected, and have passed any intermediate testing procedures. The test may be conducted before finishes that are not part of the air barrier system have been installed. For example, if suspended ceiling tile, interior gypsum board, or cladding systems are not part of the air barrier system, the test may be conducted before they are installed.

D. Air Barrier Leakage Test Report: Submit a certified written report of each inspection, test, or similar service. Written reports of each inspection and test or similar service shall include all the Report items described in ASTM E1827. Additionally, the report shall also include the following information:

1. Date of Issue
2. Project title and number
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections
5. Names of individuals making the inspection or test
6. Designation of the Work and test method
7. Identification of product and Specification Section
8. Complete inspection or test data
9. Test results and an interpretation of test results for each test zone
10. Name and signature of laboratory inspector
11. Recommendations on retesting
12. Comments or professional opinion on whether inspected or tested Work complies with Contract Document requirements

3.5 AIR BARRIER FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FAILURE

A. If the final air barrier test indicates that the leakage of the constructed air barrier system exceeds the maximum leakage specified, coordinate with the Designer of Record, the subcontractors, and the Government to immediately determine the cause of the failure, develop a method to change or repair the air barrier system. Then, develop and schedule a re-test of the air barrier system. Repeat until the air barrier system test is passed.

3.6 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. Upon completion of inspection, testing, or sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes, protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

END OF SECTION 070800

SECTION 072100
THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
 - 2. Molded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
 - 3. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
 - 4. Glass-fiber blanket.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Research reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards."
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type IV: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
 - b. Owens Corning.
 - c. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - d. Approved equal.
 - 2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.2 MOLDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Molded Polystyrene Board, Type IX: ASTM C 578, Type IX, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Atlas Molded Products, a division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. DiversiFoam Products.
 - c. Insulfoam; Carlisle Construction Materials Company.
 - d. Plymouth Foam, Inc.

2.3 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced: ASTM C 1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
 - 1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.4 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Polypropylene-Scrim-Kraft Faced: ASTM C 665, Type II (nonreflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Insulation Anchors, Spindles, and Standoffs: As recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.

- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
 - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 - 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
 - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
 - 7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
 - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction
 - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072119

FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Closed-cell spray polyurethane foam.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For spray-applied polyurethane foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSED-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM

- A. Closed-Cell Spray Polyurethane Foam: ASTM C 1029, Type II, minimum density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. and minimum aged R-value at 1-inch thickness of 6.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F.
 - 1. Basis Design: BASF Spraytile 178. Equal products by the following:
 - Henry Company
 - CertainTeed
 - Approved equal
 - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 3. Vapor transmission permeance: Product shall be a Class II vapor retarder and shall have a minimum perm rating of 1.39 perms/inch per ASTM E 96.

SECTION 072119

FOAMED-IN-PLACE INSULATION

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by insulation manufacturer where required for adhesion of insulation to substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrates are clean, dry, and free of substances that are harmful to insulation.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by insulation manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas to be insulated; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Spray insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated and fill voids.
- C. Apply in multiple passes to not exceed maximum thicknesses recommended by manufacturer. Do not spray into rising foam.
- D. Framed Construction: Install into cavities formed by framing members to achieve thickness indicated on Drawings.
- E. Cavity Walls: Install into cavities to thickness indicated on Drawings.
- F. Miscellaneous Voids: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.

END OF SECTION 072119

SECTION 072200

ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof and deck insulation, vapor retarder, and cover board on substrates ready to receive roofing membrane.
- C. Repairs and alteration work to existing roof insulation.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Non-Flooring Adhesives and Sealants VOC Limits
- B. Wood Cants, Blocking, and Edge Strips: Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Comply with references to extent specified in this section.
- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning (ASHRAE):
 - 1. Standard 90.1-13 - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- C. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - 1. C208-12 - Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board.
 - 2. C552-15 - Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation.
 - 3. C726-05 - Mineral Fiber Roof Insulation Board.
 - 4. C728-15 - Perlite Thermal Insulation Board.
 - 5. C1177/C1177M-13 - Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing.
 - 6. C1278/C1278M-07a(2015) - Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel.
 - 7. C1289-15 - Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board.
 - 8. C1396/C1396M-14a - Gypsum Board.
 - 9. D41/D41M-11 - Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing.
 - 10. D312-06 - Asphalt Used in Roofing.
 - 11. D1970/D1970M-15 - Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection.
 - 12. D2178/D2178M-15 - Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing.
 - 13. D2822/D2822M-11 - Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing.
 - 14. D4586/D4586M-07(2012)e1 - Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free.
 - 15. E84-15a - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

- 16. F1667-15 - Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples.
- D. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA):
 - 1. Manual-15 - The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems.
- E. U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA):
 - 1. USDA BioPreferred Program Catalog.
- F. UL LLC (UL):
 - 1. Listed - Online Certifications Directory.
- G. U.S. Department of Commerce National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST):
 - 1. DOC PS 1-09 - Structural Plywood.
 - 2. DOC PS 2-04 - Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Procedures: as indicated in Division 1 of the Project Manual.
- B. Submittal Drawings:
 - 1. Show size, configuration, and installation details.
 - a. Nailers, cants, and terminations.
 - b. Layout of insulation showing slopes, tapers, penetrations, and edge conditions.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature and Data:
 - 1. Description of each product.
- D. Samples:
 - 1. Roof insulation, each type.
 - 2. Fasteners, each type.
- E. Sustainable Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Recycled Content: Identify post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content percentage by weight.
 - 2. Biobased Content:
 - a. Show type and quantity for each product.
 - 3. Low Pollutant-Emitting Materials:
 - a. Show volatile organic compound types and quantities.
 - b. Certify each contain no added urea formaldehyde.
- F. Qualifications: Substantiate qualifications meet specifications.
 - 1. Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Same installer as Division 07 roofing section installer.

1.6 DELIVERY

- A. Comply with recommendations of NRCA Manual.
- B. Deliver products in manufacturer's original sealed packaging.

- C. Mark packaging, legibly. Indicate manufacturer's name or brand, type, and manufacture date.
- D. Before installation, return or dispose of products within distorted, damaged, or opened packaging.

1.7 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with recommendations of NRCA Manual.
- B. Store products indoors in dry, weathertight facility.
- C. Protect products from damage during handling and construction operations.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environment:
 - 1. Install products when existing and forecasted weather permit installation according to manufacturer's instructions.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Construction Warranty: One (1) year for material and labor unless required otherwise by The Department.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Warrant substrate board, vapor retarder, insulation, and cover board against material and manufacturing defects as part of Division 07 roofing system warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Insulation Thermal Performance:
 - 1. Overall Average R-Value: RSI-57 (R-33), minimum.
 - 2. Any Location R-Value: RSI-17 (R-10), minimum.
- B. Fire and Wind Uplift Resistance: Provide roof insulation complying with requirements specified in Division 07 roofing section.
- C. Insulation on Decking: UL labeled indicating compliance with one of the following:
 - 1. UL Listed.
 - 2. Insulation Surface Burning Characteristics: When tested according to ASTM E84.
 - a. Flame Spread Rating: 75 maximum.
 - b. Smoke Developed Rating: 150 maximum.

2.2 PRODUCTS - GENERAL

- A. Provide each product from one manufacturer.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - Atlas Roofing
 - GAF
 - Johns Manville
 - Approved equal.
- C. Sustainable Construction Requirements:
 - 1. Insulation Recycled Content:

- a. Rigid Foam: 9 percent total recycled content, minimum.
- 2. Low Pollutant-Emitting Materials: Comply with VOC limits specified:
 - a. Non-flooring adhesives and sealants.
 - b. Composite wood and agrifiber.
- 3. Bio-Based Materials: Where applicable, provide products designated by USDA and meeting or exceeding USDA recommendations for bio-based content, and products meeting Rapidly Renewable Materials and certified sustainable wood content definitions; refer to www.biopreferred.gov.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Primer: ASTM D41/D41M.
- B. Asphalt: ASTM D312, Type III or IV for vapor retarders and insulation.
- C. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to adhere roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- D. Bead-Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to adhere roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- E. Full-Spread Applied Urethane Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to adhere roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- F. Roof Cement: Asbestos free, ASTM D2822/D2822M, Type I or Type II; or, ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I or Type II.

2.4 ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

- A. Roof and Deck Insulation, General: Preformed roof insulation boards approved by roofing manufacturer.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, faced with glass fiber reinforced cellulosic felt facers on both major surfaces of the core foam.
- C. Tapered Roof Insulation System:
 - 1. Fabricate of polyisocyanurate. Use only one insulation material for tapered sections. Use only factory-tapered insulation.
 - 2. Cut to provide high and low points with crickets and slopes as shown.
 - 3. Minimum thickness of tapered sections; 38 mm (1-1/2 inch).
 - 4. Minimum slope 1/48 (1/4 inch per 12 inches).

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Glass (Felt): ASTM D2178/D2178M, Type VI, heavy duty ply sheet.
- B. Cants and Tapered Edge Strips:

1. Wood Cant Strips: Refer to Section 06 10 00, ROUGH CARPENTRY.
 2. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
 3. Tapered Edge Strips: 1/12 (1 inch per 12 inches), from 0 mm (0 inches), 300 mm to 450 mm (12 inches to 18 inches) wide.
 - a. Cellulosic Fiberboard: ASTM C208.
 - b. Mineral Fiberboard: ASTM C726.
 - c. Perlite Board: ASTM C728.
- C. Vapor Retarder: Match existing
1. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D2178/D2178M, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.
 2. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D1970/D1970M, minimum 1.0 mm (40 mils) thick membrane of HDPE film fully coated with asphalt adhesive, or 0.76 to 1.0 mm (30 to 40 mils) thick membrane of butyl rubber based adhesive backed by a layer of high density cross-laminated polyethylene; maximum permeance rating of 6 ng/Pa/s/sq. m (0.1 perms).
- D. Cover Board: Match existing
1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Gypsum Roof Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, (1/2 inch) thick, factory primed.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant carbon steel fasteners and galvalume-coated steel or plastic round plates for fastening substrate board and insulation to roof deck.
- B. Nails: ASTM F1667; type to suit application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Comply with requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Examine and verify substrate suitability for product installation.
- B. Protect existing construction and completed work from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.
 1. When manufacturer's instructions deviate from specifications, submit proposed resolution for Professional consideration.
- B. Comply with requirements of UL for insulated steel roof deck.
- C. Attach substrate board and other products to meet requirements of Division 07 roofing section.

3.4 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel decking to resist uplift pressures according requirements for specified roofing system.

1. Locate the long dimension edge joints solidly bearing on top of decking ribs.

3.5 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

A. Vapor Retarder Installation, General:

1. Install continuous vapor retarder on roof decks where existing system to be replaced and/or infilled contained a vapor retarder as part of the existing assembly. Install in the same layer location and manner as the existing system being removed and/or infilled.
2. At vertical surfaces, turn up vapor retarder to top of insulation or base flashing.
3. Seal penetrations through vapor retarder with roof cement to prevent moisture entry from below.

B. Cast in Place Concrete Decks, Except Insulating Concrete:

1. Prime deck as specified.
2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt mopped down to deck.

C. Precast Concrete Unit Decks Without Concrete Topping:

1. Prime deck as specified.
2. Apply two plies of asphalt saturated felt.
3. Mop to deck, keeping bitumen 100 mm (4 inches) away from joints of precast units. Bridge joints with felt. Mop between plies as specified.

3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation, General:

1. Use same insulation as existing for roof repair and alterations unless specified otherwise.

B. Insulation Thickness:

1. Thickness of roof insulation shown on drawings is nominal. Provide thickness required to comply with specified thermal performance.
2. Insulation on Metal Decks: Provide insulation in minimum thickness recommended by insulation manufacturer to span deck flutes. Support edges of insulation on metal deck ribs.
3. When actual insulation thickness differs from drawings, coordinate alignment and location of roof drains, flashing, gravel stops, fascias and similar items.
4. Where tapered insulation is used, maintain insulation thickness at high points and roof edges shown on drawings.
 - a. Low Point Thickness: Minimum 38 mm (1-1/2 inches).
5. Use minimum two layers of insulation when required thickness is 68 mm (2.7 inch) or greater.

C. Lay insulating units with close joints, in regular courses and with end joints staggered.

1. Stagger joints between layers minimum 150 mm (6 inches).

D. Lay units with long dimension perpendicular to the rolled (longitudinal) direction of the roofing felt.

E. Seal cut edges at penetrations and at edges against blocking as shown on drawings.

F. Cut to fit tightly against blocking or penetrations.

- G. Cover all insulation installed on the same day; comply with temporary protection requirements of Division 07 roofing section.
- H. Installation Method:
 - 1. Mechanically Fastened Insulation:
 - a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in Division 07 roofing section.
 - b. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressures specified in Division 07 roofing section.

3.7 COVER BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with staggered end joints.
- B. Offset cover board joints from insulation joints 150 mm (6 inches), minimum.
- C. Secure cover boards according to "Mechanically Fastened Insulation" requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072413

POLYMER-BASED EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. EIFS-clad barrier-wall assemblies that are field applied over substrate.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each EIFS component, trim, and accessory.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer certificates.
- B. Product certificates.
- C. Product test reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by AWCI International as qualified to install Class PB EIFS using trained workers.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of EIFS that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - 1. Dryvit Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Finestone; BASF Corp.
 - 3. Parex USA, Inc.
 - 4. Approved equal.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with ASTM E 2568 and with the following:
 - 1. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior.
 - 2. Impact Performance: ASTM E 2568, High impact resistance unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 EIFS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- B. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate.
- C. Molded, (Expanded) Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM E 2430/E 2430M.
 - 1. Foam Buildouts: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
- D. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multi-end strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. according to ASTM E 2098/E 2098M.
 - 1. Reinforcing Mesh for EIFS, General: Not less than weight required to comply with impact-performance level specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- E. Base Coat: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture.
- F. Water-Resistant Base Coat: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation.

- G. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- H. Finish Coat: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating.
 - 1. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- I. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784 and ASTM C 1063.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EIFS INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1397, ASTM E 2511, and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate.
- B. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Apply and lap to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, and terminations. Prime substrates with flashing primer if required and install flashing.
- C. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at windowsills, and elsewhere as indicated. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
- D. Board Insulation: Adhesively attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397.
 - 1. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than [1/32 inch] [1/16 inch] from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch. Prevent airborne dispersal and immediately collect insulation raspings or sandings.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS lamina.
- E. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated and where required by EIFS manufacturer.
- F. Water-Resistant Base Coat: Apply full-thickness coverage to exposed insulation and to exposed surfaces of sloped shapes window sills and to other surfaces indicated on Drawings.
- G. Base Coat: Apply full coverage to exposed insulation and foam buildouts with not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- H. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed reinforcing mesh in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are invisible.
- I. Double-Layer Reinforcing-Mesh Application: Where indicated or required, apply second base coat and second layer of reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

- J. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip-reinforcing mesh around openings, extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip-reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch-wide, strip-reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.
- K. Foam Buildouts: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
- L. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application, except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
- M. Finish Coat: Apply full-thickness coverage over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
- N. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. EIFS Tests and Inspections: According to ASTM E 2568.
- D. EIFS will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 072413

SECTION 075323

ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adhered ethylene-propylene-diene-terpolymer (EPDM) roofing system.
 - 2. Substrate board.
 - 3. Roof insulation.
 - 4. Cover board.
 - 5. Walkways.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
 - 1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
 - 2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 - 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
 - 4. Tapered insulation, thickness, and slopes.
- C. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Roof membrane and flashings of color required.
 - 2. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
 - 3. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.
- D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer Certificates:

1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.

B. Product Test Reports: For components of roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.

C. Research reports.

D. Field Test Reports:

1. Concrete internal relative humidity test reports.
2. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
- B. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746, ASTM D 4272, or the Resistance to Foot Traffic Test in FM Approvals 4470.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
- D. FM Approvals' RoofNav Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system, and shall be listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals Certification markings.
 - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90 .
 - 2. Hail-Resistance Rating: SH.
- E. ENERGY STAR Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low slope roof products.
- F. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- G. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-TERPOLYMER (EPDM) ROOFING

- A. EPDM Sheet: ASTM D 4637/D 4637M, Type I, nonreinforced, EPDM sheet with factory-applied seam tape.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Syntec Systems.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - c. Versico Roofing Systems; Carlisle Construction Materials.
 - d. Approved equal.
 - 2. Thickness: 60 mils nominal.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: Black.

2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
 - 1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil-thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Protection Sheet: Epichlorohydrin or neoprene nonreinforced flexible sheet, 55 to 60 mils thick, recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil.
- D. Slip Sheet: ASTM D 2178/D 2178M, Type IV; glass fiber; asphalt-impregnated felt.
- E. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- F. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- G. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.
- H. Modified Asphaltic Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- I. Water-Based, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard water-based, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- J. Low-Rise, Urethane, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roof system manufacturer's standard spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- K. Seaming Material: Single-component, butyl splicing adhesive and splice cleaner, width as recommended by manufacturer.
- L. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing.
- M. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
- N. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- O. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- P. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, molded pipe boot flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
 - 1. Provide white flashing accessories for white EPDM membrane roofing.

2.4 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

- B. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
 - 1. Modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive.
 - 2. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 - 3. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
- C. Cover Board: ASTM C 1325, fiber-mat-reinforced cementitious board, 7/16-inch thick.
- D. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric; water permeable and resistant to UV degradation; type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

2.5 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312/D 312M, Type III or Type IV, SEBS modified.
- B. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41/D 41M.

2.6 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches
 - 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture, and that minimum concrete internal relative humidity is not more than 75 percent, or as recommended by roofing system manufacturer when tested according to ASTM F 2170.
 - a. Test Frequency: One test probe per each 1000 sq. ft. , or portion thereof, of roof deck, with not less than three test probes.
 - b. Submit test reports within 24 hours of performing tests.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.

- a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- B. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

3.4 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - 1. At steel roof decks, install substrate board at right angle to flutes of deck.
 - a. Locate end joints over crests of steel roof deck.
 - 2. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 3. Cut substrate board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - 4. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 - 5. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 6. Loosely lay substrate board over roof deck.

3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
 - 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.

- a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
 - b. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
 - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - h. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - i. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation and substrate board using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
 - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' RoofNav for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 - 2) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
- a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
 - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - f. Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - g. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - h. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - i. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - j. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
 - 2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

D. Installation Over Concrete Decks:

- 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.

- a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
 - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - g. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - h. Adhere base layer of insulation to vapor retarder according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - 1) Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft., and allow primer to dry.
 - 2) Set insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
 - 3) Set insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 4) Set insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
- a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
 - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water is unrestricted.
 - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
 - 2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
 - 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
 - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - 3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - 4. Loosely lay cover board over substrate.
 - 5. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
 - a. Set cover board in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
 - b. Set cover board in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - c. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Install slip sheet over cover board and immediately beneath roofing.

3.7 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll membrane roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel and Owner's testing and inspection agency.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- F. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Apply a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt to substrate at temperature and rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roofing. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- G. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.
- H. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.

- I. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- J. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
 - 3. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by roofing system manufacturer.
- K. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- L. Factory-Applied Seam Tape Installation: Clean and prime surface to receive tape.
 - 1. Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 2. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- M. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.
- N. Adhere protection sheet over roof membrane at locations indicated.

3.8 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.9 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.

- b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - c. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - d. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
 - e. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - f. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - g. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
 2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
 3. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Install roof paver walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
 - b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - c. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - d. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
 - e. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - f. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - g. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
 2. Provide 3 inches of space between adjacent roof pavers.

3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 075324

ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING REPAIR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. This Section specifies requirements for the following Scope of Work:
 - 1. Provide roof repairs as indicated on Drawings.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Certifications: Provide documentation for requirements outlined in Paragraph 1.4, Quality Assurance.
- C. Sample roof membrane manufacturer's warranty.
- D. Contractor's letter certifying a minimum of 5-years commercial roofing experience to include 3 projects of similar size and scope to this project completed in the last 5-years. Provide a list of project references, including names and phone numbers.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Approval:
 - 1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's warranty.
 - 2. Source Limitations: To greatest extent possible, obtain auxiliary materials for roofing system from roofing membrane manufacturer. Provide letter of acceptance from manufacturer for auxiliary materials from other sources.
 - 3. System Approval: Provide statement from manufacturer that specified roof system meets requirements for requested warranty.
 - 4. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Architect.
- B. Do not deliver to site or install material or system that has not been approved. Remove materials installed without prior approval upon Owner's request.
- C. Restrict traffic on completed roof areas. Coordinate work to prevent trafficking by working toward roof edges and access ways. Should access to completed roof areas be necessary, provide protection for trafficked areas in accordance with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls".

- D. Minimum quality standards: Comply with applicable NRCA/ARMA publications.
- E. Project construction will be monitored and evaluated by the Owner or Owner's Representative for compliance with the Contract Documents.

1.4 GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES

- A. The existing roof system's warranty shall be maintained for the repair work indicated. Contractor is responsible for coordinating work with the manufacturer holding the warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT PERFORMANCE

- A. Fire resistance: Listed by Underwriters' Laboratories as Class A roof system.
- B. Wind uplift resistance: Meets attachment requirements for FM Global 1-90.

2.2 EPDM ROOFING MEMBRANE

- A. EPDM Roofing Membrane: ASTM D 4637, Type II, reinforced uniform, flexible sheet made from EPDM, and as follows:
 - 1. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
 - 2. Exposed Face Color: Black.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sheet Flashing: 60 mils thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- B. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard bonding adhesive.
- C. Seaming Material:
 - 1. Field splice: Manufacturer's standard synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 6-inch-wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.
 - 2. Flashing splice: Single-component splicing adhesive and splice cleaner.
- D. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
- E. Miscellaneous Accessories:
 - 1. Lap Sealant
 - 2. Water Cutoff Mastic
 - 3. Metal Termination Bars
 - 4. Preformed Inside and Outside Corner Sheet Flashings

5. T-Joint Covers
6. In-Seam Sealants
7. Other items required for complete installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Install insulation substrate in accordance with Division 07 Section "Roof and Deck Insulation." Ensure that substrate is well supported and provides smooth surface without abrupt changes.
- B. Do not deliver to site or install material or system that has not been approved. Remove materials installed without prior approval upon Owner's request.
- C. Restrict traffic on completed roof areas. Coordinate work to prevent trafficking by working toward roof edges and access ways. Should access to completed roof areas be necessary, provide protection for trafficked areas in accordance with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- D. Do not apply primer or adhesive during inclement weather, when temperature is below 40 degrees F, or when materials are above or below specified application temperatures.
- E. Do not place EPDM in contact with incompatible materials, such as asphalt roof cement, oil, creosote, or penta-based materials.

3.2 MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roofing membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- B. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align roofing membranes and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Mechanically fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
- E. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roofing membranes according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing membrane terminations.
- F. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roofing membranes according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing membrane terminations.

- G. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not meet requirements.
- H. In-Splice Attachment: Secure one edge of roofing membrane using fastening plates or battens centered within membrane splice and mechanically fasten roofing membrane to roof deck. Field-splice seam.
- I. Through-Membrane Attachment: Secure roofing membrane using fastening plates or battens and mechanically fasten roofing membrane to roof deck. Cover battens and fasteners with continuous strip.

3.3 MEMBRANE FLASHING

- A. Install flashing concurrently with roof membrane to maintain a weathertight installation as work progresses.
- B. Use approved elastomeric flashing membrane for inside and outside corners and membrane flashing details requiring moldable flashing. Use cured .060-inch EPDM membrane for stripping metal flanges and flashings on parapet walls wherever possible.
- C. Use bonding adhesive on substrates other than EPDM, and splicing cement on EPDM and metal mating surfaces. Extend membrane flashings at least 6-inches beyond flanges. Use 6-inch "rubber-to-rubber" splices.
- D. Use butyl tape seams and reinforced perimeter fastening details to the greatest extent possible to minimize adhesive splicing of seams. When splicing vertical seams, apply splicing cement to both mating surfaces for a width of 6-inches minimum. Roll in splice using a hand roller.
- E. Inside and outside corners and other changes in direction of flashing sheets shall not be butt-type splices at the point of direction change. Wrap flashing sheets 2-inches around change in direction. Form inside vertical corners using triangular fold techniques (pig ears). Do not cut the flashing sheet at the corner. Outside vertical corners, such as around curb units, shall extend a minimum of 2-inches around the corner for each flashing sheet.
- F. Apply lap sealant on edges of adhesive spliced seams membrane seams.
- G. Provide premanufactured pipe boots at vent pipe locations. Secure top of boot with stainless steel band clamp.

END OF SECTION 075323

SECTION 076000

FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. This Section specifies requirements for the following Scope of Work:
 - 1. Provide perimeter and penetration sheet metal flashings and components at locations indicated on the drawings and as required to properly terminate the roof system.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each item specified in Part 2 of this Section.
 - 2. Color charts for coated metals.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts, profiles, shapes, seams, dimensions, and details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring sheet metal flashing and trim.
- C. Samples: For each type of sheet metal; 2 samples, 6-inches by 6-inches.
- D. Certifications: Perimeter sheet metal assembly must be in compliance with IBC requirements, specifically ANSI/SPRI ES-1 protocol.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the industry standards and codes indicated in Division 01 Section "Summary of Work" and those indicated in this Section.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
- C. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with NRCA "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual, Fifth Edition." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation. Include seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
 - 1. Parapet Cap
 - 2. Sill Flashing

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 or H01, cold-rolled copper sheet.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3004, temper not less than H14; provide with manufacturer's strippable plastic film. Required finish:
 - 1. Mill Finish: Standard one-side bright.
 - 2. High-Performance Organic Finish: Thermocured system containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (Kynar/Hylar) resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2604; color as selected by Owner from standard colors.
 - 3. Clear Anodic Finish: Class I, AA-M12C22A41, complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Color Anodic Finish: Class I, AA-M12C22A42, complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: To match window assembly.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240, Type 304, No. 2D finish.
- D. Galvanized (Zinc-Coated) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90 coating designation; structural quality, mill phosphatized for field painting.
- E. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper-bearing lead sheet.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation.
- B. Self-Adhering Membrane: High temperature self-adhering, SBS modified bitumen membrane with poly-surface and release-paper backing, minimum 40-mil thickness, designed for a minimum melting temperature of 220 deg F such as Ice & Water Shield HT by W.R. Grace, Lastobond Shield HT by Soprema, Metshield by MetFab, or accepted substitute.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.
- D. Exposed elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A. Use an elastomeric silicone polymer sealant.
- E. Concealed sealant for metal-to-metal connections: ASTM C 1311, single-component, butyl (polyisobutylene) rubber sealant, heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

- F. Flux: muriatic acid based with zinc.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, 50% block tin and 50% pig lead; manufactured for use with stainless steel or copper.
- H. Termination Bar: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8-inch thick with sealant edge. Holes shall be predrilled at 6-inches on center.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Sheet metal to wood blocking connections (concealed securement): No. 12 annular threaded Series 300 stainless steel nails minimum 1-1/2-inches long.
- B. Sheet metal to wood blocking connections and mechanical unit securement (exposed securement): Self-drilling, self-tapping, Number 10, stainless steel hex-washer-head screws, 1-1/2-inch long, with metal-capped EPDM washers.
- C. Sheet metal to masonry wall connections: 1/4-inch diameter, concrete/masonry screws of sufficient length to penetrate substrate 1-1/2-inch minimum. Provide metal capped EPDM washers at exposed locations.
- D. Sheet metal fascia to wood connections: 1-inch long, #10, Series 300 stainless steel pan head screws.

2.4 FABRICATION – GENERAL

- A. General: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with IBC and recommendations in SMACNA and NRCA that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 1. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- C. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA recommendations.
- D. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions in Work cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1-inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- E. Provide concealed fasteners and expansion provisions where possible on exposed-to-view sheet metal flashing and trim, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal, and in thickness not less than that of metal being secured.

2.5 FABRICATION SCHEDULE

- A. PVD Coated Aluminum (.040-inch)
 - 1. Parapet Caps
- B. Aluminum (.050-inch)
 - 1. Cleats
- C. Expanded Aluminum (.050 inch) with 50% free area minimum
 - 1. Perforated Cleat
- D. Stainless Steel (26 gauge)
 - 1. Throughwall Counterflashing / Receiver
- E. Anodic Coated Aluminum (0.040-inch)
 - 1. Sill Flashing

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that substrate and anchorage materials to receive sheet metal flashings are properly secured and aligned, without gaps, lumps, or offsets that may distort metal.
- B. Install underlayment at roof edges, parapets, curbs, and similar transitions, and as shown on Drawings.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with these specifications and applicable industry standards to include the IBC, NRCA, and SMACNA, whichever is more stringent.
- B. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.
- D. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
- E. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and butyl sealant.

- F. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
- G. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10-feet, with no joints allowed within 18-inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1-inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- H. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4-inches for nails and not less than 3/4-inch for wood screws.
- I. Non-moving seams and joints on non-solderable metal shall be interlocked, filled with sealant, and riveted, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Use elastomeric sealant for exposed conditions. Use butyl sealant for hidden conditions.
- K. Provide sheet metal closure components at transitions to rising walls and similar changes in plane for edge metal, parapet caps, expansion joint covers, and other termination flashings. Fully crimp and seal closures to continuous blind nailed cleats.
- L. Soldered Joints: Comply with SMACNA and CDA requirements. Use conduction soldering methods.
 - 1. Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Smooth irregularities and round edges. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to width of 1-1/2-inches except where pre-tinned surface would show in finished Work.
 - 2. Apply flux to surfaces to receive solder. Remove oxides and other impurities from joint.
 - 3. Position and immobilize parts to be soldered. Heat parts above fluid temperature of solder. Draw solder into joint, creating 1-inch wide lap. Allow to cool before moving parts.
 - 4. Remove flux and acid by cleaning with neutralizing agent.
- M. Fabricate sheet metal components to the dimensions and shapes shown on the Drawings.

3.3 METAL COMPONENT INSTALLATION

- A. Cleats
 - 1. Form cleats with 3/4-inch kicks, bent out at maximum angle of 45 degrees to the vertical surface. Height of cleat shall be 3-3/4-inches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Secure continuous cleats to wood blocking with fasteners spaced at 6-inches on center.
 - 3. Provide 1/4-inch gap between cleat sections. Offset from joints in cover metal being secured.
- B. Parapet Caps
 - 1. Provide self-adhering membrane over parapet.
 - 2. Fabricate parapet cap to dimensions and shapes shown on Drawings and to fit snugly over parapet and membrane flashings.
 - 3. Secure continuous cleat at interior and exterior face.

4. Provide 1-1/4-inch high standing seams. Hook cap on cleats and crimp. Provide butyl mastic in each standing seam. Fold seams over to form standing seam and fold corners. Provide shop fabricated end and corner sections minimum 18-inches long.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove scrap metal, burrs, fasteners, and related debris from roof daily. Take precautions to prevent damage to roof membrane and flashings.

END OF SECTION 076000

SECTION 077100
ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copings.
 - 2. Roof-edge specialties.
 - 3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
 - 4. Reglets and counterflashings.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer offering products meeting requirements that are FM Approvals listed for specified class and SPRI ES-1 tested to specified design pressure.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install roof-edge specialties that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- B. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install roof-edge specialties tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings .
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous metal receiver with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover and secure single-ply roof membrane. Provide matching corner units.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ATAS International, Inc.
 - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Metal-Era, Inc.
 - d. Approved equal.
 - 2. Formed Aluminum Sheet Fascia Covers: Aluminum sheet, 0.050 inch thick.

- a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 - 4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
 - 5. Receiver: Extruded aluminum, 0.080 inch thick.
 - 6. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats Overflow scuppers with perforated screens.

2.3 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
 - 1. Aluminum Sheet: 0.040 inch thick.
 - 2. Gutter Profile: As indicated according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 - 4. Gutter Supports: Gutter with finish matching the gutters.
 - 5. Gutter Accessories: Wire ball downspout strainer
- B. Downspouts: Plain rectangular complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch-wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof
 - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads, each with flanged back and stiffened top edge, and of dimensions and shape indicated, complete with outlet tube that nests into upper end of downspout , exterior flange trim and built-in overflow.
 - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- E. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.

2.5 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970/D 1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
 - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Coil-Coated Aluminum Sheet Finishes:
 - 1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 - 1. Apply continuously under roof-edge specialties.
 - 2. Coordinate application of self-adhering sheet underlayment under roof specialties with requirements for continuity with adjacent air barrier materials.

- B. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- C. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
 - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

3.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.4 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.
- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 12 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
 - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts at grade to direct water away from building.
 - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- D. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
- E. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch below scupper discharge.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 079200

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. This Section specifies requirements for the following Scope of Work:
 - 1. Provide sealant and backer materials at fenestration perimeters and where indicated on Drawings.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: All items specified in Part 2 of this Section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Utilize skilled and experienced specialty workers to install work. Experienced trade workers shall be utilized for each aspect of work.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates according to the method in ASTM C 1193 that is appropriate for the types of Project joints.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups incorporating sealant joints, as follows, to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution:
 - 1. Install a minimum 20 linear feet of each color and type of sealant and sealant configuration at all new sealant joint locations referenced in scope of work. Sealant installation shall conform to Contract Documents and once accepted shall become standard for subsequent work on project. Trial areas shall be determined by Owner or Engineer. Areas shall be repeated until acceptable results are obtained. Installation of test items shall be in conformance with Contract Documents and shall use only submitted materials. Evidence of improper or unsatisfactory performance shall be ground for rejection of submitted materials.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: See Division 01 Section "Summary of Work."

- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Acceptable Manufacturers:

- Dow Corning.
- Pecora
- GE Sealants
- Approved equal

2.2 SEALANTS

- A. Silicone sealant for use at exterior locations shall be one part silicone sealant specifically formulated for vertical concrete surfaces, conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T NT, M, G, A and O, such as D.C. 790 as manufactured by Dow Corning, or approved equal.
- B. Silicone sealant for use at exterior to metal framed openings (windows, doors, vents, etc.) joint locations shall be one part silicone sealant for general construction usage conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, M, G, A, such as D.C. 795, as manufactured by Dow Corning or approved equal.
- C. Sealant for concealed joints shall be one-part butyl sealant, conforming to ASTM C 1311.
- D. Sealant for hot pipe shall be one-part silicone, non-corrosive, with service temperature from -60° F to +400° F, minimum, such as "Dow Corning 999-A" or equal.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer shall be non-staining type as manufactured or recommended by sealant manufacturer for each substrate.
- B. Joint cleaner shall be non-corrosive and non-staining as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Cleaner shall be totally compatible with sealant for each substrate.
- C. Bond breaker tape shall be pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- D. Backer rod shall be continuous length, closed-cell polyethylene foam, as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Backer rod shall be compressible, resilient, non-waxing, non-extruding, and non-staining. Backer rod shall be of sufficient size to be compressed 30% of maximum joint width and shall be totally compatible with sealant, primer, and substrates. Backers shall conform to requirements of ASTM C 1330, ASTM D 1622, ASTM D 1623, and ASTM D 5249.

- E. Masking material shall be commercially available masking tape of appropriate width or other material recommended by sealant manufacturer. Self-adhesive masking materials shall be of low tack and completely strippable, leaving no adhesive residue behind when removed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants.
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant.
 - a. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.2 INSTALLATION – GENERAL

- A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- B. Install sealant backings to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability. Provide a 2:1 width to depth ratio unless otherwise indicated by the manufacturer.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Provide approximately 30% compression of backer materials.
- C. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.

3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping, taking care not to pull or stretch material, producing seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures where expansion of sealant requires acceleration to produce seal, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 2 tests for the first 100 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform 1 test for each 500 feet of joint length thereafter of 1 test per each floor per elevation.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113

HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "general conditions of the construction contract", "special conditions", and "division 1 - general requirements" form a part of this section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hollow-metal steel doors and frames and hollow metal windows.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 09 painting Sections for field-painting of hollow metal doors and frames.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, and finishes for each type of hollow metal door and frame specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: In addition to requirements below, provide a schedule of hollow metal doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings:
 - 1. Elevations of each door design.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles.
 - 4. Details and locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, accessories, joints, and connections.
 - 7. Details of conduit and preparations for electrified door hardware and controls.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Labels: Each fire-rated frame and door shall bear applied label of Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Warnock Hersey International (WHI), or other approved independent testing laboratory and inspection service. Approvals shall not be stamped directly into metal frames or doors.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
 - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished doors and frames.

- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
 - C. Store doors and frames under cover at Project site. Place units in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (100-mm-) high, wood blocking. Avoid using non-vented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber.
 - 1. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating hollow metal frames without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Ceco Door Products; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
 - 2. CURRIES Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
 - 3. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand Company.
 - 4. Approved equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Supports and Anchors: After fabricating, galvanize units to be built into exterior walls according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Provide items to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal door frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool with 6- to 12-lb/cu. ft. (96- to 192-kg/cu. m) density; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50 respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.3 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide flush panel doors, not less than 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick, of seamless hollow construction, unless otherwise indicated. Construct doors with smooth surfaces without visible joints or seams on exposed faces.
- B. Exterior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from minimum 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, metallic-coated steel sheet.
- C. Interior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from minimum 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated to comply with exterior door face sheet requirements.
- D. Core Construction: Fabricate doors with core indicated.
 - 1. Laminated Honeycomb Core: Resin-impregnated kraft paper with maximum 1-inch (25.4-mm) cells; fastened to face sheets with waterproof adhesive.
 - 2. Internal Reinforcement: Provide additional reinforcement inside hollow doors as required to achieve scheduled fire rating.
- E. Top and Bottom Channels: Minimum 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, steel channel spot welded, not more than 6 inches (152 mm) o.c., to face sheets.
 - 1. Tops and bottoms of doors reinforced with inverted horizontal channels, continuous across full width of door, of same material as face sheets so flanges of channels are even with bottom and top edges of face sheets.
- F. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as door face sheets to comply with the following minimum sizes:
 - 3. Hinges: Minimum 0.167 inch (4.2 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 6 inches (152 mm) longer than hinge, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
 - 4. Lock Face, Flush Bolts, Closers, and Concealed Holders: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.
 - 5. All Other Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.
- G. Hardware Enclosures: Provide enclosures and junction boxes within doors for electrically operated door hardware, interconnected with UL-approved, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) diameter conduit and connectors.
 - 1. Where indicated for installation of wiring, provide access plates to junction boxes, fabricated from same material and thickness as face sheet and fastened with at least 4 security fasteners spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) o.c.

2.4 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. General: Fabricate frames of construction indicated, with faces of corners mitered and contact edges closed tight.
 - 1. Frames for Doors: Fully welded and ground smooth.
- B. Exterior Frames: Formed from cold-rolled steel sheet and galvanized.
 - 1. Door Frames for Openings 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide or Less: Fabricated from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
 - 2. Door Frames for Openings More Than 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide: Fabricated from 0.093-inch- (2.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
- C. Interior Frames: Formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated to comply with exterior frame requirements.
 - 1. Door Frames for Openings 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide or Less: Fabricated from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
 - 2. Door Frames for Openings More Than 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide: Fabricated from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcement plates from same material as frames to comply with the following minimum sizes:

1. Hinges: Minimum 0.167 inch (4.2 mm) thick by 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 10 inches (254 mm) long, secured by not less than 6 spot welds.
 2. Strikes, Flush Bolts, and Closers: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.
 3. Surface-Mounted Hardware: Minimum 0.093 inch (2.3 mm) thick.
- E. Head Reinforcement: Minimum 0.093-inch- (2.3-mm-) thick, steel channel or angle stiffener.
- F. Jamb Anchors:
1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.
 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
- G. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick, and as follows:
4. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
 5. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (50-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.5 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, minimum 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide hospital stops at interior door frames, with angled closed end at 12-inches above the finished floor.
- C. Provide inverted-V blade louvers at indicated doors.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate hollow metal doors and frames to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow Metal Doors: Comply with ANSI A250.4, Level A.
 1. Single-Acting Doors: Bevel both vertical edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
 2. Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
 3. Edges: Door face sheets joined at vertical edges by continuous weld extending full height of door; with edges ground and polished, providing smooth, flush surfaces with no visible seams. Edges of both sections of Dutch doors shall be treated as though full panels, except that upper section bottom shall be solid, not a C-channel.
 4. At Dutch doors provide an integral steel shelf, 6-inches deep, at top of lower section. Shelf shall have reinforcement for deadbolt strike.
- C. Hollow Metal Frames: Weld joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
 1. Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible seams or joints. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding according to joint designs in HMMA 820.

- a. Provide false head member to receive lower ceiling where frames extend to finish ceilings of different heights.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
 - 4. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) in height.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 96 inches (2438 mm) in height.
 - 5) Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches (1066 mm) wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
 - 5. Head Reinforcement: For frames more than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, provide continuous head reinforcement for full width of opening, welded to back of frame at head.
 - 6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Provide plastic plugs to keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Hardware Preparation: Factory-prepare hollow metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping.
- 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-templated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 2. Locate door hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to HMMA 831, "Recommended Hardware Locations for Custom Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish hollow metal door and frames after assembly.
- B. Steel Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning"; remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel; comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Factory-Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Apply a smooth coat of even consistency to provide a uniform dry film thickness of not less than 0.7 mils (0.018 mm).
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated; and providing a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of hollow metal doors and frames.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory.
- B. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-templated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Provide doors of sizes, thicknesses, and designs indicated. Install hollow metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames for doors and other openings, of size and profile indicated.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - b. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - c. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - d. Check plumb, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - e. Apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with mortar, grout, and plaster containing anti-freezing agents.
 - 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors, if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
 - 4. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.

- b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances indicated below. Shim as necessary.
- 1. Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
 - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work including hollow metal doors or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
 - B. Clean grout and other bonding material off hollow metal doors and frames immediately after installation.
 - C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081416
FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
 - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
 - 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
 - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 4. Undercuts.
 - 5. Requirements for veneer matching.
 - 6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples: For factory-finished doors.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - VT Industries
 - Oshkosh Door Company
 - MAI Doors
 - Approved equal

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
 - 1. Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252.
 - 1. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 2. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 3. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- D. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.
- E. Particleboard-Core Doors:
 - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1.
 - 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 - 3. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
- F. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
 - 1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
 - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
 - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf.
- G. Mineral-Core Doors:
 - 1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 - 3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors

1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces
2. Species Select white birch.
3. Cut: Rotary cut.
4. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
5. Core: Glued wood stave.
6. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
7. Construction: Seven plies, either bonded or nonbonded construction.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.

B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.

2.5 FACTORY FINISHING

A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.

1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

B. Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish.

C. Transparent Finish:

1. Grade: Premium.
2. Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 5, conversion varnish.
3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Effect: Semifilled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 081613

FIBERGLASS REINFORCED DOOR AND FRAME SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors.
- B. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Door Frames.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 07900 Joint Sealers: Perimeter sealant and backup materials.
- B. Section 08700 Door Hardware
- C. Section 08800 Glazing

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM D 635 Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position.
- B. ASTM E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- C. ASTM D4385 – Standard Practice for Classifying Visual Defects in Pultruded Products.
- D. SDI 100 – Recommended Specifications for Steel Doors and Frames.
- E. SDI 117-13 – Manufacturing Tolerances for Steel Doors and Frames.
- F. Title 21 CFR 177.24230 Code of Federal Regulation of Component intended for use in Contact with Food.
- G. UL94 – Test method for flammability of plastic materials.
- H. ANSI A250.4 Physical Endurance - Cycle Swing Test

1.5 PERFORMANCE OPTIONS

- A. Door Opening Assemblies:
 - 1. FDA face resin as required per Title 21 CFR 177.24230.

2. Maximum Flame Spread 25 in accordance with ASTM E84, self-extinguishing in accordance with ASTM D635.
3. Manufacturer must pass ANSI A250.4 Cycle Swing Test- Performance required: Level A – 1 Million Cycles.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Submit Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and Handling Requirements and Recommendations.
 3. Installation methods and Instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings.
 1. Plans: Indicate location of each door opening assembly in project.
 2. Elevations: Dimensioned elevation of each type of door opening assembly in project; Indicate sizes and locations of door hardware, lites, louvers or other accessories as may be specified.
 3. Details: Installation details of each type of installation condition in project; Indicate installation details of glazing, if specified.
 4. Schedule: Indicate each door opening assembly in project; cross-reference to plans, elevations, and details.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, provide two color chips representing selected color and finish when requested in advance of production.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, provide two samples, minimum size 6" (152mm) square, representing actual product, color and patterns when requested in advance of production.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Personnel specializing in furnishing fiberglass doors and frames with a minimum documented experience of 25 years.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installation of Commercial grade Doors and Frames with a minimum of 3 years documented experience or factory instructed and certified in the installation of manufacturers product.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's unopened, undamaged packaging, with manufacturer's labels intact.
- B. Inspect and report damage to doors at time of delivery. Handle finish surfaces with clean, protective gloves. Protect material finishes at all times.
- C. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until time of installation. Use care in handling products, no sliding against rough surfaces.
- D. Store door assemblies vertically on end to prevent damage or bowing.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Fiberglass Doors and Fiberglass Door Frames have a lifetime guarantee against failure due to corrosion from the specific environment named at time of purchase. Additionally, fiberglass doors and fiberglass door frames are guaranteed for 10 years against failure due to materials and workmanship, including warp, separation or de-lamination, and expansion of the core.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Jamotuf, LLC, P.O. Box 70, Hagerstown, MD 21741-0070, PH. 800-532-3667 FAX 301-791-7339. Equal products by:

Cline Doors
Special – Lite
Approved equal

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Fiberglass Mat: Glass Fiber chopped strand and or Woven roving.
- B. Resins: Manufacturer's formulation for molding or fabricating units to meet specified requirements. Adhesive bonded stiles and rails are prohibited.
- C. Anchors: Manufacturer's standard Stainless Steel Anchors as required for opening condition and material of structure.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless Steel

2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Non-rated Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors:
 - 1. Thickness: 1-3/4 Inches (45mm)
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Core: Closed Cell Insulating Foam Non CFC and HCFC free, Fire Retardant Flame Spread of 25 or less and low smoke developed 185 or less per ASTM E84. Reinforced for Thru-bolting Hardware as necessary, prepared for Press Molding of Plates and Edges.
Option: Polypropylene Honeycomb Core where specifications, codes, or other customer preference is indicated.
Coated Kraft Paper Honeycomb cores are not permitted.
 - b. Door Plates: Molded in one continuous piece, resin reinforced with hand-laid glass fiber mats and or woven roving, nominal 1/8" (3mm) thick, unpainted, 25 mil molded gloss Gelcoat surface.
 - c. Door edges: Molded Fiberglass reinforced, machine tooled edge, Nominal 3/8 Inch (10 mm) thick molded to plates to create a seamless monolithic panel. Bonding Plates to Pultrusions or use of metallic edges are not permitted.
 - 3. Sizes: Indicated on Drawings.
- B. Door Frames:

1. Non-Rated Construction: Fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) structural pultrusion. Integrally molded pigmented semi-gloss finish in standard colors. Jamb to Header joints mitered and reinforced with no screws in Frame Face. Optional: Heat-Cured-Miters (HCM) Resin joined and reinforced Miters. Optional as required: 16 or 14 Gauge, Type 304 or 316 Stainless Steel frames. Face welded or Knockdown standard, fully welded as option.
2. Frame profile: 5-3/4 Inches (146mm) depth x 2 Inches (51mm) wide faces, double rabbeted with 5/8 Inch (16mm) high stop as standard. Profiles conforming to ASTM D4385, ASTM E84 Standard Flame spread of 25 or less, UL 94 V-0, or SDI 117-13 profile tolerances where applicable. Optional: 4" (102mm) profile depth or for custom depths consult factory.
3. Sizes: Indicated on Drawings.

C. Door Hardware: Specified in Section 08700.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors:
 1. Glass to Resin ratio to comply with industry standards for specific molding processes to provide maximum Corrosion Resistance and Strength.
 2. Mortise for Lockset and recess for Strike plate in Lock Stile.
 3. Embed Reinforcements for Hardware beneath molded edge as required.
- B. Fiberglass Frames:
 1. Reinforce and Mortise for Lock Strike in Lock jamb.
 2. Reinforce and Mortise for hinges, closers, and latches as indicated.

Part 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify openings are ready to receive work and that opening dimensions and clearances are as indicated on approved shop drawings. Do not begin installation until openings have been properly prepared.
- B. If opening preparation is the responsibility of others, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Acclimate Doors and Frames to site conditions for a minimum of 24 hours prior to installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install Door opening assemblies in accordance with approved shop drawings, SDI 100/ANSI A250.8-2003 guidelines, and manufacturer's printed installation instructions as applicable to Fiberglass doors with FRP or Metal Frames.
- B. Use Anchorage devices to securely fasten door assembly to wall construction without distortions or imposed stresses. Protect hardware fasteners from mortar at grouted frames.
- C. Coordinate installation of thermal insulation at shim spaces at frame perimeter.

- D. Installation of Door Hardware is as specified in Section 08 70 00.
- E. Install Door Hardware in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, utilizing thru-bolts to secure surface applied hardware.
- F. Site Tolerances: Maintain plumb, level and square tolerances specified in manufacturer's printed instructions or according to SDI 100 guideline.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors in accordance with door manufacturer's maintenance instructions swing open and shut without binding and to remain in place at any angle
Without being moved by gravitational influence.
- B. Adjust door hardware to operate correctly in accordance with hardware manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces of door opening assemblies and exposed door hardware in accordance with manufacturer's maintenance instructions.
- B. Remove shipping labels and visible identification markings.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect Door and Frame materials until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged materials before substantial completion.

3.7 SCHEDULE

- A. Schedules: Refer to Door Schedule indicated on drawings.
- END OF SECTION

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior storefront framing.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Warranties: Samples of manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront to include in maintenance manuals. Include ASTM C 1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Structural Loads:
1. Design Loads: 40 psf.
- C. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
 - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable units.
 3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
 - a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.
- D. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 8 lbf/sq. ft..

G. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test according to AAMA 501.1 as follows:

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 8 lbf/sq. ft..
2. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.

H. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
2. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 35 as determined according to NFRC 500.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design Products:

1. Trifab 451 Series by Kawneer
2. YES 600 by YKK
3. 1400 by Wausau
4. Approved equal.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing, doors, and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.3 FRAMING

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: Thermally broken.
2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
3. Glazing Plane: Front.
4. Finish: Color anodic finish.
5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.

B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

D. Materials:

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

- b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
- a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Structural Glazing Sealants: ASTM C 1184, chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer for use in storefront system indicated.
 - 1. Color: Black.
- E. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.
 - 1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system with integral sub sill.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- H. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.

SECTION 084113

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed storefronts.
 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of two tests as directed by Architect.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 087100
DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections " General Conditions of the Construction Contract ", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Work Included: Provide all hardware as shown and specified.
- C. Submit:
 - 1. Finish hardware schedule, submitted for approval, must be in the vertical format. Horizontal formats are not acceptable.
 - 2. Catalogue Cuts.
 - 3. Samples, if required by the architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. The catalogue numbers of the underlined manufacturers have been used in the following schedule to denote the type, weight, quality, and function of hardware required. Equivalent products of the manufacturers listed will be considered acceptable.

- | | | |
|----|-------------------|---|
| 1. | Butts | <u>McKinney Mfg. Co. (MK)</u> , Hager Hinge,
Stanley |
| 2. | Continuous Hinges | <u>Roton (RU)</u> , Pemko, Ives |
| 3. | Locksets | <u>Best 45H series (BE)</u> , Sargent 8200 Series |
| 4. | Cylinders | <u>Best (BE)</u> (No Substitution) |

The above item has been approved by the Department as a Proprietary Item. No other item will be accepted. Article 9, Paragraph 9.7, Substitution of Materials, of the General Conditions to the Construction, contract does not apply to the above item.

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------|--|
| 5. | Exit Devices
98 Series | <u>Sargent Mfg. Co 80 Series (SA)</u> , Von Duprin |
| 6. | Door Closers | <u>Sargent Mfg. Co. 281 Series (SA)</u> ,
LCN 4040XP Series |

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 7. | Wall Bumpers, | <u>Rockwood Mfg. Co. (RO)</u> , Hager
Hinge, Ives |
| 8. | Door Position Switches | <u>Securitron (SU)</u> , Von Duprin |
| 9. | Gasketing, Weatherstrip, Astragals
Thresholds, Door Bottoms | <u>Pemko Mfg. Co. (PE)</u> , National Guard
Products, Inc. |

2.2 Keys and Keying:

- A. All locksets and cylinders shall be keyed to the existing Best removeable core key system.
- B. All keying requirements to be coordinated and completed at factory to protect the integrity of the system. Field keying will not be permitted and will be considered as just cause for rejection of the supplier.
- C. Cylinders must be an integral part of the locks as manufactured by specified lock supplier. Substitution of foreign made cylinders or components will not be allowed and also will be case for rejection of the supplier.
- D. Keys shall be furnished as follows:
 - 1. Change keys three (3) each.
 - 2. Master keys five (5) each.
 - 3. Grand master keys five (5) each.
 - 4. Construction master keys five (5) each.
 - 5. Construction control keys three (3) each.
 - 6. Permanent control keys three (3) each.
- E. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
- F. Coordinate the keying of all locks with the owner or representative.
- G. Brass Construction cores shall be provided for all locks and cylinders during construction. Construction cores are to be returned to the supplier when the permanent cores are installed. All cores not returned shall be invoiced at \$40.00 each.

2.3 Finishes:

- A. Finish typically will be Satin Chrome (US26D), except as otherwise specified. Exposed portions of door closers will have a sprayed finish to match adjacent hardware. Exit Devices will be stainless steel (US32D).

2.4 Hardware Sets:

- A. The following schedule is included as a guide in determining the quality, type and function required for each opening is not to be construed as all inclusive. Quantities listed under each hardware set are per opening, whether for a single or double door.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Product Handling:

- A. The installer should use all means necessary to protect material of this section before, during and after installation, including protection of existing construction and the installed work of other trades.
- B. Deliver all products to the jobsite in manufacturer's unopened containers with label intact. The hardware supplier will have a qualified member in good standing with Door and Hardware Institute (DHI) and have people capable to handle the details of scheduling and delivery, and to assist with the proper installation of the hardware.

- 3.2 The hardware supplier will have a qualified member in good standing with Door and Hardware Institute (DHI) and have people capable to handle the details of scheduling and delivery, and to assist with the proper installation of the hardware.

- 3.3 Hardware should be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner, in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications so that it operates smoothly, quietly and properly. Inspect installed hardware and leave it in first class operating condition.

3.4 Quality Assurance:

- A. Qualifications of Supplier:

- 1. **All hardware schedules must be prepared in a vertical format. Horizontal schedules are unacceptable.**

- B. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies:

- 1. Commonwealth requirements: Hardware will meet or exceed the requirements of Pennsylvania's Department of Labor and Industry.

Hardware Set 1A

Doors: 012 – SINGLE DOOR

Each to Receive:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-95"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	RIM PANIC	8810 (EXIT ONLY)	US32D	SA
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPS (W/STOP ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-36"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-96"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU
1	EA	EXIT ALARM	REUSE EXISTING ALARM	RED	XX

Hardware Set 1B

Doors: 012 - PAIR

Each to Receive:

2	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-95"	ALUM	RT
2	EA	SVR PANIC	8710 (EXIT ONLY)	US32D	SA
2	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPS (W/STOP ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-72"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-72"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-96"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	ASTRAGAL SET	351C x 351CS-96"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU
2	EA	EXIT ALARM	REUSE EXISTING ALARM	RED	XX

Hardware Set 2

Doors: 015A

Each to Receive:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-81"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	RIM PANIC	LC-8804-ETL (STOREROOM FUNCTION)	US32D	SA
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	1E72	US26D	BE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPSH (W/STOP & HOLD OPEN ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-36"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-82"	ALUM	PE

1	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU
1	EA	EXIT ALARM	REUSE EXISTING ALARM	RED	XX

Hardware Set 3

Doors: 015B

Each to Receive:

2	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-105"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	SVR PANIC	LC-8713-ETL (CLASSROOM FUNCTION)	US32D	SA
1	EA	SVR PANIC	8710 (EXIT ONLY)	US32D	SA
1	EA	MORT CYLINDER	1E74	US26D	BE
2	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPSH (W/STOP & HOLD OPEN ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-96"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-96"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-106"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-48"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	ASTRAGAL SET	351C x 351CS-106"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU
2	EA	EXIT ALARM	REUSE EXISTING ALARM	RED	XX

Hardware Set 4

Doors: 021

Each to Receive:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-81"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	RIM PANIC	8810 (EXIT ONLY)	US32D	SA
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPS (W/STOP ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-82"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU

Hardware Set 5

Doors: 100A

Each to Receive:

2	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-83"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	SVR PANIC	8710 (EXIT ONLY)	US32D	SA
1	EA	SVR PANIC	LC-8706-ETL (STOREROOM FUNCTION)	US32D	SA
1	EA	MORT CYLINDER	1E74	US26D	BE
2	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPSH (W/STOP & HOLD OPEN ARM)	EN	SA

1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-72"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-72"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-84"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	ASTRAGAL SET	351C x 351CS-84"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU

Hardware Set 6

Doors: 103

Each to Receive:

1	EA	CONT. HINGE	780-224HD-83"	ALUM	RT
1	EA	DBL CYL LOCK	45H-7-G-15H	US32D	BE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-CPS (W/STOP ARM)	EN	SA
1	EA	THRESHOLD	271A-MSES25SS-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	HEAD GASKET	2891AS-36"	ALUM	PE
2	EA	JAMB GASKET	290APK-84"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	AUTO DR BOTTOM	420CPKL-36"	ALUM	PE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	MSS-1-G (SURFACE MOUNTED)	GRAY	SU

Hardware Set 7

Doors: 101A, 108

Each to Receive:

3	EA	HINGE	4-1/2" x 4-1/2" T4A3786-NRP	US26D	MK
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	45H-7-R-15H	US32D	BE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	281-P9	EN	SA
1	EA	WALL STOP	406	US32D	RO
1	EA	SET GASKET	S88D17	BROWN	PE

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. This Section specifies requirements for the following Scope of Work:
 - 1. Provide insulating glass units at window locations.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads in accordance with ASCE 7 and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
 - 1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300.
 - a. Design Wind Loads: As required by ASCE 7-inch minimum design loads for building and other structures "Section 6.0 "Wind Loads"., but in no case less than 40 psf.
 - b. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 1/4-inch.
 - c. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite 1/4-inch thick and a nominal 1/2-inch- wide interspace.
 - 2. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:
 - a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
 - c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Samples: 12-inch- square, for each type of glass product indicated, other than monolithic clear float glass.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing according to ASTM C 1087, samples of each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants:
- B. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
 - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the Insulating Glass Certification Council.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Saint-Gobain Glass Corp.
 - 2) Technoform Glass Insulation North America.
 - 3) Thermix; a brand of Ensinger USA.
 - 4) Approved equal.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.
- 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: +/- 1-inch.
 - 3. Sealing System: Dual seal.
 - 4. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 - 5. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Spacer Material: Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish or as selected by Owner.
 - b. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

2.3 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
- 1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
 - 2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
 - 3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
 - 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned gaskets of material indicated below; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
- 1. Neoprene.
 - 2. EPDM.
 - 3. Silicone.
 - 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

2.4 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Exterior and Interior Sealants: Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

2.5 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

2.8 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS

- A. Insulating-Glass (IG) Units:

1. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: 1-inch and +/- 1/4-inch.
2. Interspace Content: Air.
3. Outdoor Lite: Class 2 (tinted) float glass.
 - a. Tint Color: Grey or as selected by Owner.
 - b. Kind FT (fully tempered).
4. Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass.
 - a. Kind FT (fully tempered).
 - b. Low E coating on inboard surface of indoor lite or third surface of IG Unit. Bathrooms shall have an obscure finish on the Number 2 surface.
5. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: +/- .31
6. Summer Daytime U-Factor: +/- .30

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING

- A. General: Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
 1. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
 2. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
 3. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
 4. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
 5. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
 6. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

7. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Tape Glazing: Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
1. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
 2. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
 3. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
 4. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
 5. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.
- C. Gasket Glazing (Dry): Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
1. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
 2. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
 3. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.
- D. Sealant Glazing (Wet): Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
1. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
 2. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.
- 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

- B. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092116

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES ON METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Description of Work: Work of this section includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Gypsum board and accessories
 - 2. Metal studs and furring
 - 3. Metal suspension systems
 - 4. Gypsum board finishing
 - 5. Trim and accessories

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. See Section 09900 PAINTING AND FINISHING for gypsum board prime and finish coats.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions with project conditions and materials clearly identified or detailed for each required system.

1.4 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance Requirements: Fabricate and install systems as indicated but not less than that required to comply with ASTM C754 under the following conditions:
 - 1. Gypsum board partitions:
 - a. Standard systems: Maximum deflection of $l/240$ of partition height.
 - 2. Interior suspended ceilings and soffits: Maximum deflection of $l/360$ of distance between supports.
- B. Fire Resistance Ratings: Where fire resistance classifications are indicated, provide materials and application procedures identical to those listed by UL or tested according to ASTM E119 for type of construction shown.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Applicable requirements of ASTM C754 for installation of steel framing.

2. Install gypsum board in accordance with applicable requirements and recommendations of Gypsum Association GA 216, "Recommended Specifications for the Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board" except for more stringent requirements of manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Delivery:

1. Deliver material to site promptly without undue exposure to weather.
2. Deliver in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, fully identified with name, brand, type and grade.

B. Storage:

1. Store above ground in dry, ventilated space.
2. Protect materials from soiling, rusting and damage.
3. Store board to be directly applied to masonry walls at 70°F for 24 hours prior to installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Requirements:

1. Do not install gypsum board when ambient temperature is below 40°F.
2. For adhesive attachment of gypsum board, and for finishing of gypsum board, maintain ambient temperature above 55°F from one week prior to attachment or joint treatment, and until joint treatment is complete and dry.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Gypsum Board and Accessories: Listed products establish standard of quality and are manufactured by United States Gypsum Company (USG), Equal Products by:

National Gypsum Corporation
Georgia Pacific

- B. Steel Framing and Furring: Company acceptable to installer.

- C. Grid Suspension Assemblies: Listed products establish standard of quality and are manufactured by United States Gypsum Company (USG), Chicago, IL or approved equivalent.

2.2 BOARD MATERIALS

A. Gypsum Board:

1. ASTM C1396 (Section 5), regular type.
2. Edges: Tapered.
3. Acceptable products:
 - a. Typical partitions and ceilings: Equivalent to SHEETROCK® brand SW gypsum panels by USG.
 - b. Use gypsum board and joint compound with little or no VOCs and formaldehyde emissions. Gypsum board shall have a minimum of 5% Post-consumer and 20% Post-

industrial (nation-wide average for company) as defined by FTC (Federal Trade Commission) by USG.

- B. Ceiling Board:
 - 1. ASTM C1396 (Section 12), non-sag type.
 - 2. Thickness: ½ inch.
 - 3. Acceptable product: Equivalent to Interior Gypsum Ceiling Board by USG.

2.3 METAL FRAMING AND FURRING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Studs and Runners:
 - 1. ASTM C645, "C" shaped, gauge:
 - a. Provide 20 gauge studs, except as otherwise indicated or specified. Provide heavier gauge if required.
 - b. At door and borrowed light frames, provide (2) 20 gage minimum studs at each jamb.
 - c. Provide runner gauge as recommended by stud manufacturer.
 - 2. Depth of sections: As indicated.
 - 3. Corrosion protection: G40 hot-dipped galvanized coating per ASTM A525.
- B. Metal Furring Channels:
 - 1. Hat-shaped:
 - a. ASTM C645, 7/8 inch high, 25 gauge, with G40 hot-dipped galvanized coating per ASTM A525.
 - b. Acceptable products: DWC-25 for ½" and 5/8" gypsum board and DWC-20 by USG or approved equivalent.
 - 2. Z-shaped: ASTM C645, depths as indicated, 24 gauge minimum, with G40 hot-dipped galvanized coating per ASTM A525.

2.4 CEILING AND SOFFIT SUPPORT MATERIALS

- A. Hanger Anchorage Devices: Screws, clips, bolts or other devices compatible with indicated structural anchorage for ceiling hangers and whose suitability has been proven through standard construction practices or by certified test data.
- B. Hangers:
 - 1. Wire: ASTM A 641, soft, Class 1 galvanized.
 - 2. Rods and flats:
 - 1. Mild steel components.
 - 2. Finish: Galvanized or painted with rust-inhibitive paint for interior work.
- E. Framing System:
 - 1. Main runners:
 - 1. Cold-rolled, "C" shaped steel channels, 16 gauge minimum.
 - 2. Finish: Galvanized or painted with rust-inhibitive paint for other interior work.
 - 2. Cross furring: Hat-shaped steel furring channels, ASTM C645, 7/8 inch high, 25 gauge, galvanized.
 - 3. Furring anchorages: 16 gauge galvanized wire ties, manufacturer's standard wire-type clips, bolts, nails or screws recommended by furring manufacturer and complying with ASTM C754.

- F. Framing System:
1. Framing system for gypsum board panels consisting of cold-rolled steel members conforming to ASTM C635, with exposed surfaces finished in manufacturer's standard enamel paint finish.
 2. Components: Main tees, furring cross channels, furring cross tees, and cross tees.
 3. Accessories:
 - a. U-shaped channel molding.
 - b. Galvanized carbon steel (12 ga.) hanger wire.
 4. Acceptable product: Equivalent to Drywall Suspension System by USG.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Metal Trim for Gypsum Board:
1. Conform to profile and dimensions indicated.
 2. Material for interior work: Galvanized steel, 26 gauge minimum.
 3. Corner beads: Equivalent to Dur-A-Bead No. 103 by USG or approved equivalent.
 4. Casing beads (edge beads): Equivalent to 200A by USG or approved equivalent.
 5. Control joints:
 - a. Roll-formed zinc with perforated flanges.
 - b. Size: 1-3/4 inch wide, with 1/4 inch wide center channel.
 - c. Provide with removable tape strip over channel.
 - d. Acceptable product: Equivalent to No. 093 by USG.
- B. Backer Plates:
1. Steel, galvanized; 6 inches wide x 20 [16] gauge minimum x lengths to suit size of items to be attached; fastened to studs for attachment of surface mounted fittings and accessories.
 2. Elimination of backer plates or direct attachment of accessories or equipment to studs will not be allowed.
- C. Adhesives and Joint Treatment Materials:
1. Conform to requirements of ASTM C475.
 2. Joint compounds:
 - a. Drying-type (ready-mixed): Equivalent to SHEETROCK® brand taping joint compound and topping joint compound by USG or approved equivalent.
 - c. Reinforcing joint tape:
 1. ASTM C475, 2 inch nominal width.
- D. Gypsum Board Screws: Self-drilling, self-tapping steel screws.
1. For steel framing less than 0.03 inch thick: Comply with ASTM C1002.
 2. For steel framing from 0.033 inch thick to 0.112 inch thick: Comply with ASTM C954.
 3. Provide Type S or Type S-12 screws.
- E. Sound Attenuation Blankets:
1. Mineral fiber, conforming to ASTM C665, Type I.
 2. Surface burning characteristics per ASTM E84:
 - a. Flame spread: 15 or less.
 - b. Smoke developed: 0.
 3. Thicknesses: As indicated.

4. Acceptable product and manufacturer: Equivalent to Thermafiber LLC Sound Attenuation Fire Blankets SAFB (Fire Safety FS-15 Blankets).
- F. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide as required for complete installations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and adjoining construction and conditions under which work is to be installed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install in accordance with reference standards and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Tolerances:
1. Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 8'-0" variation from plumb or level in exposed lines of surface, except at joints between gypsum board units.
 2. Do not exceed 1/16 inch variation between planes of abutting edges or ends.
 3. Shim as required to comply with specified tolerances.
- C. Install framing to comply with ASTM C754 and with ASTM C840 requirements that apply to framing installation.
- D. Install supplementary framing, blocking and bracing at terminations in gypsum board assemblies to support fixtures, equipment, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings or similar construction.

3.3 METAL SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Runners:
1. Align and secure runner tracks accurately to partition layout at both floor and ceiling.
 2. Provide fasteners appropriate to substrate construction as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Metal Studs:
1. Position metal studs vertically in the runners, spaced as indicated.
 2. Place studs so that flanges face in same direction.
 3. Cut studs 1/2 inch short of full height to provide perimeter relief.
 4. Align and plumb partition framing accurately.
 5. Where partitions abut ceiling or deck construction or vertical structural elements, provide slip or cushion type joint between partition and structure as recommended by stud manufacturer to prevent transfer of structural loads or movements to partitions, and to provide lateral support.
 6. Provide horizontal bracing where necessary for lateral support.
 7. Backer plates and blocking:
 - a. Where handrails, grab bars, cabinets, wall-mounted door stops, or other wall-hung items are attached to partitions, install backer plates or wood blocking accurately positioned and firmly secured to metal studs, whether or not such backer plates or blocking are indicated on Drawings.

- b. Do not use wood blocking in fire-rated construction.
- C. Hat Channel Furring:
 - 1. Attach hat-shaped furring channels either vertically or horizontally with fasteners through alternate wing flanges (staggered).
 - 2. Space furring channels at 24 inches on center, unless otherwise indicated. Where furring is indicated to receive backer board, water resistant gypsum board with ceramic tile, or veneer plaster, space at 16 inches on center.
 - 3. Install furring channels within 4 inches of floor line and ceiling line.
- D. Ceiling and Soffit Support Systems:
 - 1. Secure hangers or rods to structural support by connecting directly to structure where possible; otherwise connect to inserts, clips or other anchorage devices or fasteners indicated.
 - 2. Space main runners, hangers and furring according to requirements of ASTM C754, except as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Where spacing of structural members, or width of ducts or other equipment, prevents regular spacing of hangers, provide supplemental hangers and suspension members and reinforce nearest affected hangers to span extra distance.
 - 4. Attach directly to structural elements only; do not attach to metal deck. Loop hangers and wire-tie directly or provide anchors or inserts.

3.4 BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Single Layer Gypsum Board on Metal Studs:
 - 1. Loosely butt gypsum board joints together and neatly fit.
 - 2. Do not place butt ends against tapered edges.
 - 3. Maximum allowable gap at end joints: 1/8 inch.
 - 4. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 - 5. Apply ceiling boards first where gypsum board ceilings and wall occur.
 - 6. Cut openings in gypsum board to fit electrical outlets, plumbing, light fixtures and piping snugly and small enough to be covered by plates and escutcheons. Cut both face and back paper.
 - 7. Screw board in place securely with screws spaced according to manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Single Layer Gypsum Board on Furring:
 - 1. Apply gypsum board with long dimension at right angles to furring channel.
 - 2. Center end joints over channel web; stagger end joints from those in adjacent rows of board.
 - 3. Fasten boards to furring channels with screws spaced according to manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Trim:
 - 1. Use same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to supports, unless otherwise recommended by trim manufacturer.
 - 2. Install metal corner beads at external corners.

3. Install metal casing bead trim whenever edge of gypsum board would otherwise be exposed or semi-exposed.
- B. Control Joints:
1. Install control joints at junction of gypsum board partitions with walls or partitions of other finish material.
 2. Install control joints within long runs of partitions, ceilings or soffits at approximately 30'-0" on center or as indicated.
 3. Where gypsum board is vertically continuous, as at stairwells, provide horizontal control joints at each floor level.
- C. Special Trim: Install as indicated on drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.6 FINISHING

- A. Provide levels of gypsum board finish for locations as follows, in accordance with Gypsum Association GA 214, "Recommended Specification: Levels of Gypsum Board Finish".
1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas and concealed areas, except provide higher level of finish as required to comply with fire resistance ratings and acoustical ratings.
- B. Interior Gypsum Board:
1. Taping (Level 1):
 - a. Use taping or all purpose [conventional weight, lightweight or midweight] compound.
 - b. Butter taping compound into inside corners and joints.
 - c. Center tape over joints and press down into fresh compound.
 - d. Remove excess compound.
 - e. Tape joints of gypsum board above suspended ceilings.
- G. Joint Compound:
1. After skim coat sets, apply finish coat of compound feathering 3 to 4 inches beyond tape edges.
 2. Feather coats onto adjoining surfaces so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.
 3. Allow joint compound to completely set before applying veneer plaster finish.
- H. Trim:
1. Use same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to supports, unless otherwise recommended by trim manufacturer.
 2. Install metal corner beads at external corners.
 3. Install metal casing bead trim whenever edge of gypsum base would otherwise be exposed or semi-exposed, and where gypsum base terminates against dissimilar material.
- I. Control Joints: Install where indicated and specified.
- J. Special Trim and Reveal Joints: Install as indicated on drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Correct damage and defects which may telegraph through finish work.

B. Leave work smooth and uniform.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092900

GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - d. National Gypsum Company.
 - e. or approved equal as determined by the professional.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - d. National Gypsum Company.
 - e. or approved equal as determined by the professional.
2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

- C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - d. National Gypsum Company.
 - e. or approved equal as determined by the professional.

2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - e. Expansion (control) joint.
 - f. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

- D. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Accumetric LLC.
 - b. Franklin International.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. Pecora Corporation.
 - e. or approved equal as determined by the professional.

- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072600 "Vapor Retarders."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.

- B. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

- C. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

- D. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

- E. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 2. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.

- F. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges

of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

3.2 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

B. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.3 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Bullnose Bead: Use at outside corners.
 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

3.4 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 2. Level 2: Not used.
 3. Level 3: Not used.
 4. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 096513

RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Resilient base.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE: VIF (thermoset-rubber or vinyl) type during demolition and forward sample of demolished base to Architect for record and new product selection

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 3. Mannington Mills, Inc.
 - 4. Approved equal.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Match existing
- C. Thickness: match existing

- D. Height: match existing
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed or preformed.
- H. Colors: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors to match existing

2.3 VINYL BASE: VIF (thermoset-rubber or vinyl) type during demolition and forward sample of demolished base to Architect for record and new product selection

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
 - 3. Mannington Mills, Inc.
 - 4. Or approved equal with salient characteristics as listed herein.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TV (vinyl, thermoplastic).
 - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 2. Style and Location:
 - a. Match existing
- C. Minimum Thickness: match existing
- D. Height: match existing
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed or preformed.
- H. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors to match existing.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.2 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
 - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
 - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099123

INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
 - 1. Steel and iron.
 - 2. Galvanized metal.
 - 3. Gypsum board.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- B. Samples: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. PPG Paints; PPG Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - 3. Valspar; a brand of The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 4. Approved equal.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 1. Ten percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 2. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
- B. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System MPI INT 4.2A:
 - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.
 - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
- B. Steel Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System, Alkyd Primer MPI INT 5.1Q:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
 - b. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.
- C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System MPI INT 5.3A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.
- D. Gypsum Board Substrates:
 - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, flat (MPI Gloss Level 1), MPI #53.
 - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 degrees), MPI #114.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 130121
FRP BUILDINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pre-engineered buildings.
- B. Electrical wiring and devices for pre-engineered structures.
- C. Heating equipment for pre-engineered structures.
- D. Ventilation equipment for pre-engineered structures.

1.3 REFERENCE SECTIONS

- A. Section 03300 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete building pad.
- B. Division 26: Electrical connections.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.
- B. ASTM D 256 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Pendulum Impact Resistance of Notched Specimens of Plastics.
- C. ASTM D 638 - Standard Test Methods for Tensile Properties of Plastics.
- D. ASTM D 732 - Standard Test Method for Shear Strength of Plastics by Punch Tool.
- E. ASTM D 790 - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.
- F. ASTM D 792 - Standard Test Method for Specific Gravity (Relative Density) and Density of Plastics by Displacement.
- G. ASTM D 1622 - Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics.
- H. ASTM D 2583 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics By means of a Barcol Impressor.
- I. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Provide manufacturer's standard details and catalog.
2. Data demonstrating compliance with referenced standards.
3. Provide installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings showing layout, dimensions, anchorages and accessories.

1.6 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design factory-fabricated, pre-engineered structures to withstand 125 mile per hour wind load and 30 PSF snow-load.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products on flat surface and protect from construction traffic, and damage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Provide products manufactured by Warminster Fiberglass Company, P. O. Box 188, Southampton, PA 18966; www.warminsterfiberglass.com Tel. (215)953-1260, Fax (215) 357-7893, or approved equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Molded composite: Exterior and interior resin-fiberglass laminate with foam core.
1. Laminate: Polyester resin and chopped strand fiberglass; minimum glass content of 25%.
 - a. Exterior surface: White gel coat with low luster finish, smooth and free from fiber pattern, roughness, or other irregularities.
 - b. Exterior laminate: 1/8 inch thick, minimum, chemically bonded to gel coat. Interior laminate to be 1/8 inch thick, minimum.
 - c. Interior laminate: White color, encapsulate core in place.
 - d. Laminate properties:
 - 1) Tensile strength (ASTM D 638): 11,000 PSI
 - 2) Flexural strength (ASTM D 790): 18,000 PSI
 - 3) Shear strength (ASTM D 732): 12,000 PSI
 - 4) Barcol hardness (ASTM D 2583): 40.
 - 5) Impact (ASTM D 256): 12 ft lbs/per inch.
 - 6) Density/specific gravity (ASTM D 792): 93.6 PCF/1.5.
 - 7) Surface burning characteristics (ASTM E 84):
 - a) Flame spread, less than 150; smoke density, less than 1000.

b) Surface burning characteristics (ATSM E 84): Class A flame spread 25

2. Core

a. Rigid closed cell, self extinguishing, polyisocyanurate foam with a density of 2.0 pounds per cubic foot.

1) 2 inch thick with a minimum insulating value of R 14.

b. Core Properties:

1) Thermal conductivity (ASTM C 518): 0.13 BTU Inch/ Hr.SF F.

2) Density/specific gravity (ASTM D 1622): 2.0 PCF/ .03.

3) Surface burning characteristics (ASTM E 84):

4) Flame spread, 35 smoke density, 240.

B. The manufacturer shall maintain a continuous quality control program and upon request shall furnish to the engineer certified test results of the physical properties.

2.3 PRE-ENGINEERED FIBERGLASS COMPOSITE BUILDINGS

A. Assembly:

1. Provide factory-assembled buildings.

B. Model: WFS 1010-14

C. Encapsulated aluminum extrusion 3 inches wide by 1 1/2 inches high by 0.125 inch thick with a 1 inch wide side flange shall be encapsulated into each corner of end panels (full height) and 4 inches wide by 2 1/2 inches high by 0.125 inch thick with a 1 inch wide side flange around the entire roof perimeter to maintain flatness, straightness, and structural integrity. Integral internal flanges on mating panels shall be provided for bolting the sides, ends and roof to the encapsulated aluminum extrusions.

1. Aluminum extrusions: Incorporate threaded inserts on 12-inch centers for internal bolting to mating panel flange during assembly.

2. Assemble panels with 3/8 inch diameter stainless steel bolts on 12-inch centers and a 1/4 inch thick by 3 inches wide urethane foam gasket for a weather tight seal at all joints. Assembly bolts shall not penetrate the exterior wall of the structure.

3. Structurally reinforce wall and roof panels with steel and aluminum extrusions to meet loading conditions.

a) Galvanized steel mounting channel reinforcement: 0.078 inch thick by 1 5/8 inch high by 1 5/8 inches wide. Mechanically attach to the interior surface with aluminum pop rivets on 12-inch centers, on all walls.

b) Steel reinforcement shall be encapsulated in walls at end and roof perimeter, to form a continuous, one-piece molded composite wall or roof panel

4. Provide wall panels with an integral 4 inches wide internal mounting flange pre-drilled on 12-inch centers with 5/8 inch diameter holes for attaching to concrete pad.

a) Concrete pad specified in Division 3

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchor bolts for attaching structure to concrete pad:
 - 1. Buildings: 1/2 inch diameter stainless steel expansion anchors.
- B. Exhaust fan with gravity shutter, and PVC shroud with insect screen.
 - 1. 10 inches diameter; 585 CFM
- C. PVC intake Louver: 12 inches square with fiberglass gravity shutter and insect screen.
- D. Lamp:
 - 1. Incandescent, vapor tight.
 - 2. Fluorescent, 48-inch 2-bulb fixture with acrylic lens.
- E. Fan and Lamp switch
 - 1. Interior or duplex switch.
 - 2. Exterior weatherproof duplex switch.
 - 3. Door actuated switch and selector switch- 3 position (manual/off/automatic)
- F. Heater:
 - 1. 1500 watt with thermostat and tip-over switch and heater mounting including mounting channel, outlet, and brackets.
- G. Duplex outlet.
- H. Duplex fuse box: 30 amp.
- I. Circuit breaker panel:
 - 1. 125 amp, MLO - including 4- 1 pole breakers (total spaces - 12).
- J. Electrical wiring in flexible, liquid tight, PVC conduit. Provide for:
 - 1. Fan and switch.
 - 2. Lamp and switch.
 - 3. Duplex outlet.
 - 4. Other appliances indicated.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Color: White

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that concrete is level and true to plane and of correct dimensions to receive structure. Correct any deficiencies before proceeding.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Layout anchor bolt pattern according to drawings. Drill holes of depth and diameter required by anchor bolt manufacturer.
- B. Install structure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Erect structures true to line and plumb, free of twist and warp.
- D. Install and test accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN

- A. Adjust components for proper operation.
- B. Leave project site clean and free of debris.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230130.51

HVAC AIR-DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ASCS: Air systems cleaning specialist.
- B. NADCA: National Air Duct Cleaners Association.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For an ASCS.
- B. Strategies and procedures plan.
- C. Cleanliness verification report.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASCS Qualifications: A certified member of NADCA.
 - 1. Certification: Employ an ASCS certified by NADCA on a full-time basis.
 - 2. Supervisor Qualifications: Certified as an ASCS by NADCA.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 181 and UL 181A for fibrous-glass ducts.
- C. Cleaning Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to HVAC air-distribution system cleaning including, but not limited to, review of the cleaning strategies and procedures plan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components to determine appropriate methods, tools, and equipment required for performance of the Work.
- B. Perform "Project Evaluation and Recommendation" according to NADCA ACR 2006.
- C. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with work only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a written plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures. At a minimum, include the following:
 - 1. Supervisor contact information.
 - 2. Work schedule including location, times, and impact on occupied areas.
 - 3. Methods and materials planned for each HVAC component type.
 - 4. Required support from other trades.
 - 5. Equipment and material storage requirements.
 - 6. Exhaust equipment setup locations.
- B. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
- C. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006.
- B. Remove visible surface contaminants and deposits from within the HVAC system.
- C. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
 - 1. Air devices for supply and return air.
 - 2. Air-terminal units.
 - 3. Ductwork:
 - a. Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes and reheat coils, to the air-handling unit.
 - b. Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
 - c. Exhaust-air ducts.

4. Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Interior surfaces of the unit casing.
 - b. Coil surfaces compartment.
 - c. Condensate drain pans.
 - d. Fans, fan blades, and fan housings.
5. Filters and filter housings.
- D. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
- E. Particulate Collection:
 1. For particulate collection equipment, include adequate filtration to contain debris removed. Locate equipment downwind and away from all air intakes and other points of entry into the building.
 2. HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for particles sized 0.3 micrometer or larger shall be used where the particulate collection equipment is exhausting inside the building,
- F. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
- G. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
- H. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
- I. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
- J. Clean visible surface contamination deposits according to NADCA ACR 2006 and the following:
 1. Clean air-handling units, airstream surfaces, components, condensate collectors, and drains.
 2. Ensure that a suitable operative drainage system is in place prior to beginning wash-down procedures.
 3. Clean evaporator coils, reheat coils, and other airstream components.
- K. Duct Systems:
 1. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.
 2. Mechanically clean duct systems specified to remove all visible contaminants so that the systems are capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
- L. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.

M. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.
 - a. Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
 - b. Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials such as duct and plenum liners.
2. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:
 - a. Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR 2006.
 - b. Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
 - c. Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

N. Coil Cleaning:

1. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
2. See NADCA ACR 2006, "Coil Surface Cleaning" Section. Type 1, or Type 1 and Type 2, cleaning methods shall be used to render the coil visibly clean and capable of passing Coil Cleaning Verification (see applicable NADCA ACR 2006).
3. Coil drain pans shall be subject to NADCA ACR 2006, "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification." Ensure that condensate drain pans are operational.
4. Electric-resistance coils shall be de-energized, locked out, and tagged before cleaning.
5. Cleaning methods shall not cause any appreciable damage to, cause displacement of, inhibit heat transfer, or cause erosion of the coil surface or fins, and shall comply with coil manufacturer's written recommendations when available.
6. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove any latent residues.

O. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings:

1. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings if active fungal growth is reasonably suspected or where unacceptable levels of fungal contamination have been verified. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings according to manufacturer's written recommendations and EPA registration listing after the removal of surface deposits and debris.
2. When used, antimicrobial treatments and coatings shall be applied after the system is rendered clean.
3. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings directly onto surfaces of interior ductwork.

4. Sanitizing agent products shall be registered by the EPA as specifically intended for use in HVAC systems and ductwork.

3.4 CLEANLINESS VERIFICATION

- A. Verify cleanliness according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Verification of HVAC System Cleanliness" Section.
- B. Verify HVAC system cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before applying any treatment or introducing any treatment-related substance to the HVAC system, including biocidal agents and coatings.
- C. Perform visual inspection for cleanliness. If no contaminants are evident through visual inspection, the HVAC system shall be considered clean. If visible contaminants are evident through visual inspection, those portions of the system where contaminants are visible shall be re-cleaned and subjected to re-inspection for cleanliness.
- D. Additional Verification:
 1. Perform surface comparison testing or NADCA vacuum test.
 2. Conduct NADCA vacuum gravimetric test analysis for nonporous surfaces.
- E. Verification of Coil Cleaning:
 1. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
 2. Coil will be considered clean if cleaning restored the coil static-pressure differential within 10 percent of 25 inches, the differential measured when the coil was first installed.
 3. Coil will be considered clean if the coil is free of foreign matter and chemical residue, based on a thorough visual inspection.
- F. Prepare a written cleanliness verification report. At a minimum, include the following:
 1. Written documentation of the success of the cleaning.
 2. Site inspection reports, initialed by supervisor, including notation on areas of inspection, as verified through visual inspection.
 3. Surface comparison test results if required.
 4. Gravimetric analysis (nonporous surfaces only).
 5. System areas found to be damaged.
- G. Photographic Documentation: Comply with requirements in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."

3.5 RESTORATION

- A. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
- B. Restore service openings capable of future reopening. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Include location of service openings in Project closeout report.

- C. Replace fibrous-glass materials that cannot be restored by cleaning or resurfacing. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- D. Replace damaged insulation according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- E. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.
- F. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.

END OF SECTION 230130.51

SECTION 230513

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230516

EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
 2. Alignment guides and anchors.
 3. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- C. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- D. Couplings: Five, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water or ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber gasket suitable for cold and hot water as required for glycol, and bolts and nuts.

2.3 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides AG-01:
 - 1. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:
 - 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
 - 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A183, steel hex head.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F844, steel, plain, flat washers.
 - 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C881/C881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230517

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated or galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:
 - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or Nitrile (Buna N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, Composite plastic or Stainless steel.
 - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Non-shrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves, PVC-pipe sleeves, Sleeve-seal fittings, Molded-PE or -PP sleeves or Molded-PVC sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518

ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230519

METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
 - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
 - 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
 - 4. Light-activated thermometers.
 - 5. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
 - 6. Thermowells.
 - 7. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 8. Gage attachments.
 - 9. Test plugs.
 - 10. Test-plug kits.
 - 11. Sight flow indicators.
 - 12. Flowmeters.
 - 13. Thermal-energy meters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 5. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.3 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Liquid-filled type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.

5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball or Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) in each mechanical space containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- B. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.7 FLOWMETERS

A. Venturi Flowmeters:

1. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
3. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for water.
 - b. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
 - e. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - f. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or welded.
 - g. Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
4. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
5. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
7. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor.
8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid, one-third of pipe diameter or to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- K. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- L. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- M. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- O. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- P. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- Q. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- R. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- S. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- T. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler and heat pump.
 - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
- U. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each cheat pump, heating-water and well-water connection.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler and water-to-water heat pump shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- D. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- E. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

- F. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank shall be [**one of**] the following:
 - 1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- G. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heat Pump-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Well Water-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each heating, heat pump-water and well-water connection shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heat Pump-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Well Pump-Water Piping: 30-in. Hg to 15 psi.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Heat Pump-Water Piping: Venturi type.

- B. Flowmeters for Well-Water Piping: Venturi type.
- C. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Venturi type.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 230523.12

BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Steel ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
 - 6. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 7. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
 - 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.

- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Press Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Forged brass.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
- g. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.
- k. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.

C. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.

- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

B. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

2.4 STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Iron Ball Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.4 HEAT PUMP-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, two or three piece, with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded, solder or press connection-joint ends.
 - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150.

3.5 WELL-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, one, two or three piece with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded, solder or press connection-joint ends.
 - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150.

3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Brass or bronze ball valves, one, two or three piece with brass, bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded, solder or press connection-joint ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Steel ball valves, Class 150.

END OF SECTION 230523.12

SECTION 230523.14

CHECK VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze lift check valves.
 - 2. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 3. Iron swing check valves.
 - 4. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
 - 5. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
 - 6. Iron, center-guided check valves.
 - 7. Iron, plate-type check valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: NBR or PTFE.

2.3 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

B. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

2.4 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats, Class 125:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 250:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.

- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.5 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- b. Body Material: ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- c. Seal: EPDM.
- d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.6 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer.
- e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

B. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

C. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer.
- e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

D. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

E. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
- e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

F. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.7 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: API 594.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
- e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

B. Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: API 594.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
- e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
- f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements for valve tags and schedules in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 3. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 WELL PUMP-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Iron valves may be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Iron swing check valves with lever and spring-closure control, Class 125.
 3. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24: Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves with resilient seat, Class 150.
 5. Iron swing check valves with nonmetallic-to-metal seats, Class 125.
 6. Iron, single plate-check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
 7. Iron, dual plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 150.

3.6 HEAT PUMP AND HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 125 or Class 150.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Iron valves may be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Iron swing check valves with lever and spring-closure control, Class 125.

3. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end check valves, 300 CWP.
4. Iron swing check valves with nonmetallic-to-metal seats, Class 125.
5. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves with resilient seat, Class 125 or Class 150.
6. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
7. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125 or Class 150.

END OF SECTION 230523.14

SECTION 230529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, where required. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for all hangers and supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- B. All hangers shall be designed for a minimum additional live load of 250 pounds per individual hanger.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel or stainless steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 PLASTIC PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of plastic.
- B. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel or stainless steel.
- C. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.

2.5 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel or extruded-aluminum channel with inturned lips.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 - 7. Retain one of four subparagraphs below for coating. Coordinate coating with material retained in "Channels" Subparagraph.
 - 8. Metallic Coating: Pre-galvanized G90, Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.

2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.
- F. Strap shields to insulation using 2.75" wide cinch bands, one per each side of hanger.

2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.8 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
 - 4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two, galvanized or stainless-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized or stainless-steel pipe support channels.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Roller or Strut clamps, Clevis hanger or Swivel hanger as required.
 - 6. Hardware: Galvanized or Stainless steel.
 - 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
 - 8. Height: 12 inches above roof.
- D. High-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two, galvanized or stainless-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: One, adjustable height, galvanized- or stainless-steel pipe support slotted channel or plate.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Clevis hanger or Swivel hanger, as required.
 - 6. Hardware: Galvanized or Stainless steel.
 - 7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch continuous-thread galvanized-steel rod or 1/2-inch continuous-thread stainless-steel rod.
 - 8. Height: 36 inches above roof.
- E. High-Profile, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: Two or more; vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more, galvanized or stainless-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Members: One or more, adjustable height, galvanized or stainless-steel pipe support.
5. Pipe Supports: Roller or Strut clamps, Clevis hanger or Swivel hanger.
6. Hardware: Galvanized or Stainless steel.
7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch continuous-thread rod.
8. Height: 36 inches above roof.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure. Framing system in first paragraph below requires calculating and detailing at each use.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- E. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger

and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- O. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. For all piping: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - b. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting", Section 099123 "Interior Painting" cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.

12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230533

HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes heat tracing for HVAC piping with the following electric heating cables:
 - 1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
 - 2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- B. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 or No. 18 AWG, tinned or nickel-coated, stranded copper bus wires embedded in cross-linked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, non-heating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.
- C. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.
- D. Cable Cover: Tinned-copper or Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.
- E. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- F. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 1. RTU-1
 - a. Maximum Heat Output: 5 W/ft.
 - b. Piping Diameter: 1 ½" NPS.
 - c. Number of Parallel Cables: 1.
 - d. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:
 - 1) Volts: 208.
 - 2) Phase: 1.
 - 3) Hertz: 60.
 - 4) Cable Length: 15'.
 2. RTU-3
 - a. Maximum Heat Output: 5 W/ft.
 - b. Piping Diameter: 2" NPS.
 - c. Number of Parallel Cables: 1.
 - d. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:
 - 1) Volts: 208.
 - 2) Phase: 1.
 - 3) Hertz: 60.
 - 4) Cable Length: 16'.

2.2 CONTROLS

- A. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.
- B. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
- C. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
- D. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Warning Labels: Refer to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
 - 1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 - 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
- B. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
- C. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.

- D. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- E. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- F. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
 - 2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
 - 3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
- D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed heating cables, including non-heating leads, from damage during construction.
- B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 230533

SECTION 230548.13

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 3. Housed-spring isolators.
 - 4. Restrained-spring isolators.
 - 5. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
 - 6. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 7. Spring hangers.
 - 8. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
 - 9. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

- 1.
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric materials recommended by manufacturer
 - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
 - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.2 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
 - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.3 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt, threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device or elastomeric pad.

2.4 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
 - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes or elastomeric pad.
 - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.5 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.

- b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.6 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.7 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment.
- B. Upper Frame: Upper frame shall provide continuous and captive support for equipment.
- C. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
- D. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- E. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch, stainless steel, 0.025-inch, aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: Black.
 - 3. Background Color: White.

4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping, or at least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color:
 - 1. Supply Duct: Black
 - 2. Return Duct: White
 - 3. Exhaust Duct: White
- C. Background Color:
 - 1. Supply Duct: Yellow
 - 2. Return Duct: Green
 - 3. Exhaust Duct: Blue
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch, stainless steel, 0.025-inch, aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Well-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
2. Heat Pump-Water Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
3. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
4. Humidifier Distribution Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated or self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Well Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Heat Pump Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
 - c. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
 - d. Humidifier Distribution Piping: 1-1/2 inches, round or square.
 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 - b. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - c. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Heat exchangers.
 - b. Motors.
 - c. Chillers.
 - d. Well field.
 - e. Water-to-water heat pump.
 - f. Boilers.
 - g. Heat-transfer coils.
 - h. Pumps.
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
- 5. Sound tests.
- 6. Vibration tests.
- 7. Duct leakage tests.
- 8. New and existing Control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Department, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.

5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB
 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB.
 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Department Occupancy: Department may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Department during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Department's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:

- a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

- a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
- c. Water treatment is complete.
- d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
- e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and/or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation,"

Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.

- c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Department for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
- 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
- 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
- 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 4. Mark all final settings.
 - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
 - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
 - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

- b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - d. Mark final settings.
 - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
 - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - 1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 - 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 - 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 - 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 1. Measure total water flow.

- a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.

3. Mark final settings.
- G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

- a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
 7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
- c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
 9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
 10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.

12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.

4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- B. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- C. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Phase and hertz.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
 8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR WATER-TO-WATER HEAT PUMP

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
 7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Measure and record water flow.
 3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.
 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 6. Airflow.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
1. Nameplate data.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.

3.16 SOUND TESTS

- A. After the systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record sound levels at 10 locations as designated by the Department.
- B. Instrumentation:
 1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
 2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (LEQ).
 3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using 1/3 octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
 4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.
- C. Test Procedures:
 1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
 2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
 3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
 4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
 5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 31.5 Hz to 4000 Hz (RC) with the equipment off.
 6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 31.5 Hz to 4000 Hz (RC) with the equipment operating.
 7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
 8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.
- D. Reporting:
 1. Report shall record the following:
 - a. Location.
 - b. System tested.
 - c. dBA reading.
 - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.
 2. Plot sound pressure levels on RC worksheet with equipment on and off.

3.17 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.18 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. Before performing any system balancing, coordinate with the DDC contractor to verify the following:
 - 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 - 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 - 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 - 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 - 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 - 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 - 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 - 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 - 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.19 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 - 4. Check the condition of filters.
 - 5. Check the condition of coils.
 - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
 - 1. New filters are installed.
 - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.

3. Drain pans are clean.
 4. Fans are clean.
 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 4. Balance each air outlet.

3.20 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.21 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.22 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
 2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - j. Return airflow in cfm.
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
 - m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Gas-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Fuel type in input data.
 - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
 - h. Ignition type.
 - i. Burner-control types.
 - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
 - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
 - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
- e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
- f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- j. Manifold pressure in psig.
- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
- l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
- m. Motor voltage at each connection.
- n. Motor amperage for each phase.
- o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

- 1. Report Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Room or riser served.
- d. Coil make and size.
- e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.

- d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump rpm.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
 - j. Voltage at each connection.
 - k. Amperage for each phase.
- M. Instrument Calibration Reports:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.23 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Department.
- B. Department shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Department may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 - 3. If the second verification also fails, design professional may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.24 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, return.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed exhaust.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
 - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 - 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Department. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 - 1. Ductwork Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot section each of rectangular and round straight duct.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree mitered round and rectangular elbow, and one each of a 90-degree radius round and rectangular elbow.
 - c. One rectangular branch takeoff and one round branch takeoff from a rectangular duct. One round tee fitting.
 - d. One rectangular and round transition fitting.
 - e. Four support hangers for round and rectangular ductwork.
 - f. Each type of damper and specialty.
 - 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 - 3. Notify Department seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 4. Obtain Department's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.

5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Department specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.

- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 75 deg F is 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements, with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304: 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch or 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch or 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 - 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 - 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

- 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
- 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
- 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
- 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
- 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

3.7 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

- 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Department. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Department, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return air.
4. Indoor, exposed return.
5. Indoor, exposed exhaust.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round supply-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, round return-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Exposed, round, supply-air duct insulation is the following:

1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Exposed, round, return-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Exposed, round, outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Exposed, round, exhaust-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- J. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- L. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230716

HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:

1. Water-to-water heat pumps.
2. Heat exchangers.
3. Converters.
4. Pumps.
5. Heating, hot-water pumps.
6. Expansion/compression tanks.
7. Air separators.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.

4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Department. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 1. Equipment Mockups:
 - a. One heating-hot-water pump.
 - b. One tank or vessel.
 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 3. Notify Department seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Obtain Department's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Department specifically approves such deviations in writing.

6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semi-rigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White or gray.
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E84.
 6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E84.
 7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering equipment.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for equipment.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 - 1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 5. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, aluminum or stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 6. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.

- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 - 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 - 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 - 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
 - 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the

body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.

7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel, at least 0.050 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FINISHES

- A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Department. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Department, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

- C. Heating pump insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

3.9 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
 - 3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.024 inch thick.
 - 3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.020 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

SECTION 230719

HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Well-water piping, indoors when used for condensate control.
3. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
4. Heat pump piping, outdoors.
5. Humidifier distribution tube piping, indoors.
6. Hot drain and relief valve piping, indoors.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.

4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Department. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 1. Piping Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
 - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
 - d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
 - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
 - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
 - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
 - h. One pressure temperature tap.
 - i. One mechanical coupling.

2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Department seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Department's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Department specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type I or III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 2. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory-applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.

3. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Color: Aluminum.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 4. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E84.
 5. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 6. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and pre-sized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper, 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
 - 2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M.

- a. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
- b. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

- F. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E84.

- G. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E84.

- H. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 - 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 - 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 - 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 2. Wrap factory-presize jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presize jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.

5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Department. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Department, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

B. Well Water Piping Inside Pump House, above 40 Deg F:

NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- b. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 2 inches thick.

C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, above 200 Deg F:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches thick.
2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 3 inches thick.

D. Humidifier Distribution Tube Piping:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches thick.
2. NPS 1 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II or Pipe and Tank Insulation: 3 inches thick.

E. Heating, 40 to 200 Deg F:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: b 2 inches thick.

F. Drain and Relief Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Heat Pump Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

- 1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

- 1. None.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

- 1. Retain one of six subparagraphs below.
- 2. PVC, 30 mils thick.
- 3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

- 1. PVC, 30 mils thick.
- 2. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230900

HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. The General Conditions of the Contract, Supplementary Conditions, and General Requirements are part of this specification and shall be used in conjunction with this section as part of the contract documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC".

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. General: The control system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of DDC controllers, a control system server, and a web-based operator interface.
- B. System software shall be based on a server/thin-client architecture, designed around the open standards of web technology. The control system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over the control system network, the Department's local area network and (at the Department's discretion) over the Internet. The server shall also act as a "workstation" when running as a server/client platform. Additional clients shall have concurrent access to the "workstation" in this mode.
- C. The intent of the thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to the control system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends, configure trends, configure points and controllers, or to download programming into the controllers.
- D. Whereas as much as possible, utilize minimal integration. All logic shall live on existing BAS data base.
- E. System shall use BACnet protocol for communication between the control modules and web server. Communication between the web server and the user's browser shall be HTTP or HTTPS protocol utilizing HTML5. Use of Adobe Flash technology is not acceptable. I/O points, schedules, setpoints, trends, and alarms specified in the Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls shall be BACnet objects.
- F. Communications link (BAS router) shall be protected from brown outs with a UPS system.
- G. Provide surge and voltage protection to all existing and new DDC systems and components.

1.3 APPROVED CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. The following are approved control system suppliers, manufacturers, and product lines:

1. Automated Logic Corporation, WebCTRL.
2. The above item has been approved by the Department as a Proprietary Item. No other item will be accepted. Article 9, Paragraph 9.6, Substitution of Materials, of the General Conditions to the Construction Contract does not apply to the above item.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS

- A. The following abbreviations are utilized within this section and the sequences of operations. Refer to mechanical drawings for additional abbreviations.

1. AC: Air Conditioning
2. ACU: Air Conditioning Unit
3. AHU: Air Handling Unit
4. AHU: Air Handling Unit.
5. AI: Analog Input
6. AO: Analog Output
7. ATC: Automatic Temperature Control.
8. AUTO: Automatic
9. AUX: Auxiliary
10. AV: Analog Value
11. BAS: Building Automation System.
12. BI: Binary Input
13. BO: Binary Output
14. BV: Binary Value
15. C: Common
16. CFM: Cubic Feet per Minute.
17. CHW: Chilled Water
18. CHWP: Chilled Water Pump
19. CHWR: Chilled Water Return
20. CHWS: Chilled Water Supply
21. COND: Condenser
22. CV: Constant Volume
23. CW: Condenser Water
24. CWP: Condenser Water Pump
25. CWR: Condenser Water Return
26. CWS: Condenser Water Supply
27. DA: Discharge Air
28. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
29. DI: Digital Input.
30. DO: Digital Output.
31. EA: Exhaust Air
32. EF: Exhaust Fan
33. EVAP: Evaporator
34. FAS: Fire Alarm System.
35. FCU: Fan Coil Unit
36. HOA: Hand / Off / Auto
37. HP: Heat Pump
38. HRU: Heat Recovery Unit
39. HVAC: Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.

40.	HW	Hot Water
41.	HWP	Hot Water Pump
42.	HWR	Hot Water Return
43.	HWS	Hot Water Supply
44.	HX	Heat Exchanger
45.	IU:	Induction Unit
46.	LAN:	Local area network.
47.	MER:	Mechanical Equipment Room.
48.	NC:	Normally Closed
49.	NO:	Normally Open
50.	OA:	Outdoor Air
51.	PID:	Proportional Integral Derivative.
52.	POT:	Portable Operators Terminal.
53.	RA:	Return Air
54.	RF:	Return Fan
55.	RH:	Relative Humidity
56.	RTU:	Roof-top Unit
57.	SA:	Supply Air
58.	SF:	Supply Fan
59.	SP:	Static Pressure
60.	TEMP:	Temperature
61.	UH:	Unit Heater
62.	UV:	Unit Ventilator
63.	VAV:	Variable Air Volume
64.	VFD:	Variable Frequency Drive.
65.	VRF:	Variable Refrigerant Flow
66.	VRV:	Variable Refrigerant Volume
67.	WSHP:	Water Source Heat Pump

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Adjustable (adj.): Adjustable by the end user, through the supplied user interface.
- B. Advanced Application Controllers (AACs): A fully programmable control module. This control module may be capable of some of the advanced features found in Building Controllers (storing trends, initiating read & write requests, etc.) but it does not serve as a master controller. Advanced Application Controllers may reside on either the Ethernet/IP backbone or on a subnet.
- C. Alarm: The control system shall be configured to generate an alarm when this object exceeds user definable limits, as described in the Sequence of Controls.
- D. Analog Value: An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable AVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only AVs are typically used to display the status of a control operation.
- E. Application Specific Controllers (ASCs): A pre-programmed control module which is intended for use in a specific application. ASCs may be configurable, in that the user can chose between various pre-programmed options, but it does not support full custom programming. ASCs are often used on terminal equipment such as VAV boxes or fan coil units. In many vendors'

architectures ASCs do not store trends or schedules but instead rely upon a Building Controller to provide those functions.

- F. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBB): A BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBS are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device in a specification.
- G. BACnet/BACnet Standard: BACnet communication requirements as defined by the latest version of ASHRAE/ANSI 135 and approved addenda.
- H. Binary Value: An intermediate (software) point that may be editable or read-only. Editable BVs are typically used to allow the user to set a fixed control parameter, such as a setpoint. Read Only BVs are typically used to display the status of a control operation.
- I. Building Controllers (BCs): A fully programmable control module which is capable of storing trends and schedules, serving as a router to devices on a subnet, and initiating read and write requests to other controllers. Typically this controller is located on the Ethernet/IP backbone of the BAS. In many vendors' architectures a Building Controller will serve as a master controller, storing schedules and trends for controllers on a subnet underneath the Building Controller.
- J. Control Systems Server: A computer(s) that maintain(s) the systems configuration and programming database.
- K. Controller: Intelligent stand-alone control device. Controller is a generic reference to building controllers, custom application controllers, and application specific controllers.
- L. Direct Digital Control: Microprocessor-based control including Analog/Digital conversion and program logic.
- M. Furnished or Provided: The act of supplying a device or piece of equipment as required meeting the scope of work specified and making that device or equipment operational. All costs required to furnish the specified device or equipment and make it operational are borne by the division specified to be responsible for providing the device or equipment.
- N. Gateway: Bi-directional protocol translator connecting control systems that use different communication protocols.
- O. Install or Installed: The physical act of mounting, piping or wiring a device or piece of equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the scope of work as specified. All costs required to complete the installation are borne by the division specified to include labor and any ancillary materials.
- P. Integrate: The physical connections from a control system to all specified equipment through an interface as required to allow the specified control and monitoring functions of the equipment to be performed via the control system.
- Q. Interface: The physical device required to provide integration capabilities from an equipment vendor's product to the control system. The equipment vendor most normally furnishes the interface device. An example of an interface is the chilled water temperature reset interface

card provided by the chiller manufacturer in order to allow the control system to integrate the chilled water temperature reset function into the control system.

- R. Local Area Network: Computer or control system communications network limited to local building or campus.
- S. Loop or control loop: Most commonly a PID control loop. Typically a control loop will include a setpoint, an input which is compared to the setpoint, and an output which controls some action based upon the difference between the input and the setpoint. A PID control loop will also include gains for the proportional, integral, and derivative response as well as an interval which controls how frequently the control loop updates its output. These gains may be adjustable by the end user for control loop “tuning,” but in self-tuning control loops or loops which have been optimized for a specific application the gains may not be adjustable.
- T. Master-Slave/Token Passing (MS/TP): Data link protocol as defined by the BACnet standard.
- U. Point-to-Point: Serial communication as defined in the BACnet standard.
- V. Primary Controlling LAN: High speed, peer-to-peer controller LAN connecting BCs and optionally AACs and ASCs. Refer to System Architecture below.
- W. Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS): A written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- X. Router: A device that connects two or more networks at the network layer.
- Y. Schedule: The control algorithm for this equipment shall include a user editable schedule.
- Z. Trend: The control system shall be configured to collect and display a trend log of this object. The trending interval shall be no less than one sample every 5 minutes. (Change of Value trending, where a sample is taken every time the value changes by more than a user-defined minimum, is an acceptable alternative.) Trend logs shall be coordinated with Client agency during start up period.
- AA. Web Services: Web services are a standard method of exchanging data between computer systems using the XML (extensible markup language) and SOAP (simple object access protocol) standards. Web services can be used at any level within a Building Automation System (BAS), but most commonly they are used to transfer data between BAS using different protocols or between a BAS and a non-BAS system such as a tenant billing system or a utility management system.
- BB. Wiring: Raceway, fittings, wire, boxes and related items.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer and Manufacturer Qualifications

1. Installer shall have an established working relationship with the Control System Manufacturer and have, as a minimum, 5 years demonstrated experience with installation and support of the manufacturer’s product

2. Installer shall have successfully completed Control System Manufacturer's control system training. Upon request, Installer shall present record of completed training including course outlines.

1.7 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the most restrictive of local, state, and federal authorities' codes and ordinances for these plans and specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:
 1. National Electric Code (NEC)
 2. International Building Code (IBC)
 - a. Section 719 Ducts and Air Transfer Openings
 - b. Section 907 Fire Alarm and Detection Systems
 - c. Section 909 Smoke Control Systems
 - d. Chapter 28 Mechanical
 3. International Mechanical Code (IMC)
 4. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet – A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Systems

1.8 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Performance Standards. System shall conform to the following minimum standards over network connections. Systems shall be tested using manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for display through the user's web browser.
 1. Graphic Display. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall display with current data within 10 sec.
 2. Graphic Refresh. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall update with current data within 8 sec. and shall automatically refresh every 15 sec.
 3. Configuration and Tuning Screens. Screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, PID loops, and similar control logic shall automatically refresh within 6 sec.
 4. Object Command. Devices shall react to command of a binary object within 2 sec. Devices shall begin reacting to command of an analog object within 2 sec.
 5. Alarm Response Time. An object that goes into alarm shall be annunciated at the browser within 45 sec.
 6. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 sec.
 7. Performance. Programmable controllers shall be able to completely execute DDC PID control loops at a frequency adjustable down to once per sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
 8. Multiple Alarm Annunciation. Each user, connected to network accessing the system through their browser (workstation), shall receive alarms within 5 seconds of one another.
 9. Reporting Accuracy. System shall report values with minimum end-to-end accuracy listed in Table 1.

a. Table 1: Reporting Accuracy

- 1) Note 1: Accuracy applies to 10%–100% of scale
- 2) Note 2: For both absolute and differential pressure
- 3) Note 3: Not including utility-supplied meters

MEASURED VARIABLE	REPORTED ACCURACY
SPACE TEMPERATURE	±0.5°C (±1°F)
DUCTED AIR	±0.5°C (±1°F)
OUTSIDE AIR	±1.0°C (±2°F)
DEW POINT	±1.5°C (±3°F)
WATER TEMPERATURE	±0.5°C (±1°F)
DELTA-T	±0.15° (±0.25°F)
RELATIVE HUMIDITY	±5% RH
WATER FLOW	±2% OF FULL SCALE
AIRFLOW (TERMINAL)	±10% OF FULL SCALE (SEE NOTE 1)
AIRFLOW (MEASURING STATIONS)	±5% OF FULL SCALE
AIRFLOW (PRESSURIZED SPACES)	±3% OF FULL SCALE
AIR PRESSURE (DUCTS)	±25 PA (±0.1 IN. W.G.)
AIR PRESSURE (SPACE)	±3 PA (±0.01 IN. W.G.)
WATER PRESSURE	±2% OF FULL SCALE (SEE NOTE 2)
ELECTRICAL (A, V, W, POWER FACTOR)	±1% OF READING (SEE NOTE 3)
CARBON MONOXIDE (CO)	±5% OF READING
CARBON DIOXIDE (CO ₂)	±50 PPM

10. Control Stability and Accuracy. Control loops shall maintain measured variable at setpoint within tolerances listed in Table 2.

a. Table 2: Control Stability and Accuracy

CONTROLLED VARIABLE	CONTROL ACCURACY	RANGE OF MEDIUM
AIR PRESSURE	±50 PA (±0.2 IN. W.G.) ±3 PA (±0.01 IN. W.G.)	0–1.5 KPA (0–6 IN. W.G.) –25 TO 25 PA (–0.1 TO 0.1 IN. W.G.)
AIRFLOW	±10% OF FULL SCALE	
SPACE TEMPERATURE	±1.0°C (±2.0°F)	
DUCT TEMPERATURE	±1.5°C (±3°F)	
HUMIDITY	±5% RH	
FLUID PRESSURE	±10 KPA (±1.5 PSI) ±250 PA (±1.0 IN. W.G.)	MPA (1–150 PSI) 0–12.5 KPA (0–50 IN. W.G.) DIFFERENTIAL

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data and Shop Drawings: Meet requirements of Section 01 30 00 on Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples. In addition, the contractor shall provide shop drawings or other

submittals on hardware, software, and equipment to be installed or provided. No work may begin on any segment of this project until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. Drawings provided as electronic files on suitable solid state media (file format: .PDF or comparable) and as 11" x 17" prints. Select and show submittal quantities appropriate to scope of work. Submittal approval does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to supply sufficient quantities to complete work.

B. Submittals shall include:

1. DDC System Hardware

- a. A complete bill of materials to be used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment to be used.
- b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as performance curves, product specifications, and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items not listed below:
 - 1) Direct digital controllers (controller panels)
 - 2) Transducers and transmitters
 - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
 - 4) Actuators
 - 5) Valves
 - 6) Relays and switches
 - 7) Control panels
 - 8) Power supplies
 - 9) Operator interface equipment
 - 10) Wiring
- c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show termination numbers.
- d. Schematic diagrams for all field sensors and controllers. Provide floor plans of all sensor locations and control hardware. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.

2. Central System Hardware and Software

- a. A complete bill of material of equipment used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical.
- b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as product specifications and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items furnished under this contract not listed below:
 - 1) Central Processing Unit (CPU) or web server
 - 2) Monitors
 - 3) Keyboards
 - 4) Power supplies
 - 5) Battery backups including routers
 - 6) Transient and surge suppression for BAS router.
 - 7) Interface equipment between CPU or server and control panels
 - 8) Operating System software – web server
 - 9) Color graphic software
 - 10) Third-party software

- c. Schematic diagrams for all control, communication, and power wiring. Provide a schematic drawing of the central system installation. Label all cables and ports with computer manufacturers' model numbers and functions. Show interface wiring to control system.
 - d. Network riser diagrams of wiring between central control unit and control panels.
3. Controlled Systems
- a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
 - b. A schematic diagram of each controlled system. The schematics shall have all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. The schematics shall graphically show the location of all control elements in the system.
 - c. A schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals. Where a control element is also shown on control system schematic, use the same name.
 - d. An instrumentation list (Bill of Materials) for each controlled system. List each control system element in a table. Show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.
 - e. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. The description shall include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
 - f. A point list for each control system. List I/O points and software points specified in the Sequence of Operations. Indicate alarmed and trended points.
4. Quantities of items submitted shall be reviewed but are the responsibility of the Contractor.
5. BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for each submitted type of controller and operator interface.
- C. Project Record Documents. As-built documents shall be submitted for approval after final completion and shall include:
- 1. Project Record Drawings. As-built versions of submittal shop drawings provided as electronic files on suitable solid state media (file format: .PDF or comparable) and as 11" x 17" prints.
 - 2. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists.
 - 3. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual.
 - 4. As-built versions of submittal product data.
 - 5. Graphic files, programs, and database on suitable solid state media.
 - 6. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers provided at the request of the Department.
 - 7. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
 - 8. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation or web server software, and graphics software.
 - 9. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
 - 10. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions will be provided at the request of the Department.

- D. Training Materials: Provide course outline and materials for each class. Training shall be furnished via instructor-led sessions, computer-based training, or web-based training.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warrant work as follows:

1. Contractor shall perform software and firmware update 30 Days prior to end of warranty period. Do not install updates or upgrades without Department's written authorization.
2. Warrant labor and materials for specified control system free from defects for a period of 12 months after final acceptance. Control system failures during warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Department. Respond during normal business hours within 24 hours of Department's warranty service request.
3. Work shall have a single warranty date, even if Department receives beneficial use due to early system start-up. If specified work is split into multiple contracts or a multi-phase contract, each contract or phase shall have a separate warranty start date and period.
4. If the engineer determines that equipment and systems operate satisfactorily at the end of final start-up, testing, and commissioning phase, the engineer will certify in writing that control system operation has been tested and accepted in accordance with the terms of this specification. Date of acceptance shall begin warranty period.
5. Provide support related to web server software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware that resolve the contractor-identified software deficiencies at no charge during warranty period. If available, Department can purchase in-warranty service agreement to receive upgrades for functional enhancements associated with above-mentioned items.
6. Exception: Contractor shall not be required to warrant reused devices except those that have been rebuilt or repaired and factory recertified. Installation labor and materials shall be warranted. Demonstrate operable condition of reused devices at time of Engineer's acceptance.

1.11 OWNERSHIP OF PROPRIETARY MATERIAL

A. Project-specific software and documentation shall become Department's property. This includes, but is not limited to:

1. Graphics
2. Record drawings
3. Database
4. Application programming code
5. Documentation

1.12 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION (TO BE INSTALLED BY .2 CONTRACTOR)

A. Sensors and Transmitters:

1. Airflow stations
2. Flow Meters

3. Flow switches
4. Refrigerant pressure and temp sensor wells & sockets
5. Hydronic Temp sensor wells and sockets
6. H2O Pressure Differential/Flow Switches

B. Control Valves:

1. Control valves

C. Control Dampers:

1. Automated Dampers

1.13 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Field Installed Devices. HVAC equipment that is provided with packaged controls will be provided with all components necessary to complete the sequence of operations. Necessary components shipped loose from the equipment manufacturer shall be field installed by the ATC vendor.

1.14 PRODUCTS NOT FURNISHED OR INSTALLED UNDER BUT INTEGRATED WITH THE WORK OF THIS SECTION

- A. General: The Installer furnishing the DDC network shall meet with the Installer(s) furnishing each of the following products to coordinate details of the interface between these products and the DDC network. The Department or his designated representative shall be present at this meeting. Each Installer shall provide the Department and all other Installers with details of the proposed interface including PICS for BACnet equipment, hardware and software identifiers for the interface points, network identifiers, wiring requirements, communication speeds, and required network accessories. The purpose of this meeting shall be to insure there are no unresolved issues regarding the integration of these products into the DDC network. Submittals for these products shall not be approved prior to the completion of this meeting.

B. Central Heating Equipment

1. The boiler vendor shall furnish boilers with an interface to the control and monitoring points specified in the sequence of operations. These specified points shall be the minimum acceptable interface to the boiler. The connection to these points shall be by one of the following methods:
 - a. Hardwired connection such as relay, 0-10VDC, or 4-20mA.
 - b. BACnet/IP network connection.
 - c. BACnet MS/TP network connection.

C. Heat Pumps:

1. The heat pump vendor shall furnish heat pumps with an interface to the control and monitoring points specified in the sequence of operations. These specified points shall be

the minimum acceptable interface to the heat pump. The connection to these points shall be by one of the following methods:

- a. BACnet over ARCNET network connection.

D. Central HVAC Equipment

1. Unit shall be furnished configured to accept control inputs from an external building automation system controller as specified in the sequence of operations. Factory mounted safeties and other controls shall not interfere with this controller.

E. Variable Frequency Drive

1. The variable frequency drive (VFD) vendor shall furnish VFDs with an interface to the control and monitoring points specified in the sequence of operations. These specified points shall be the minimum acceptable interface to the VFD. The connection to these points shall be by one of the following methods:
 2. Hardwired connection such as relay, 0-10VDC, or 4-20mA.
 3. BACnet/IP network connection.
 4. BACnet MS/TP network connection.

- F. Any additional integral control systems included with the products integrated with the work of this section shall be furnished with a BACnet interface for integration into the Direct Digital Control System described in this specification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Use new products the manufacturer is currently manufacturing and selling for use in new installations. Do not use this installation as a product test site unless explicitly approved in writing by Department. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.

2.2 COMMUNICATION

- A. Control products, communication media, connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers shall comprise a BACnet internetwork. Controller and operator interface communication shall conform to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet.
- B. Install new wiring and network devices as required to provide a complete and workable control network.
- C. Each controller shall have a communication port for temporary connection to a laptop computer or other operator interface. Connection shall support memory downloads and other commissioning and troubleshooting operations.
- D. Internetwork operator interface and value passing shall be transparent to internetwork architecture.

1. An operator interface connected to a controller shall allow the operator to interface with each internetwork controller as if directly connected. Controller information such as data, status, and control algorithms shall be viewable and editable from each internetwork controller.
 2. Inputs, outputs, and control variables used to integrate control strategies across multiple controllers shall be readable by each controller on the internetwork. Program and test all cross-controller links required to execute control strategies specified in the Sequence of Operations. An authorized operator shall be able to edit cross-controller links by typing a standard object address or by using a point-and-click interface.
- E. Building Control Panels and Controllers with real-time clocks shall use the BACnet Time Synchronization service. System shall automatically synchronize system clocks daily from an operator-designated device via the internetwork. The system shall automatically adjust for daylight saving and standard time as applicable.
- F. System shall be expandable to at least twice the required input and output objects with additional controllers, associated devices, and wiring.
- G. System shall support Web services data exchange with any other system that complies with XML (extensible markup language) and SOAP (simple object access protocol) standards. Web services support shall as a minimum be provided at the workstation or web server level and shall enable data to be read from or written to the system.
1. System shall support Web services read data requests by retrieving requested trend data or point values (I/O hardware points, analog value software points, or binary value software points) from any system controller or from the trend history database.
 2. System shall support Web services write data request to each analog and binary object that can be edited through the system operator interface by downloading a numeric value to the specified object.
 3. For read or write requests, the system shall require user name and password authentication and shall support SSL (Secure Socket Layer) or equivalent data encryption.
 4. System shall support discovery through a Web services connection or shall provide a tool available through the Operator Interface that will reveal the path/identifier needed to allow a third party Web services device to read data from or write data to any object in the system which supports this service.
 5. Direct access to trend data shall be provided in order to facilitate historical information stored by the system.

2.3 OPERATOR INTERFACE

- A. Operator Interface. The web server shall reside on a high-speed network with the building controllers. Web pages generated by this server shall be compatible with the latest versions of Microsoft Internet Explorer or Edge, Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, and Apple Safari browsers. Any of these supported browsers connected to the server shall be able to access all system information. Mobile devices shall be recognized by the web server and shall supply the appropriate system content as needed. The Operator Interface (web server with client devices) shall conform to the BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) or BACnet Advanced Workstation (B-AWS) device profile as specified in ASHRAE/ANSI 135 BACnet Annex L.

This includes the ability to configure and/or reconfigure the system from the client device (change programs, graphics, labels, etc.).

- B. Communication. Web server and controllers shall communicate using BACnet protocol. Web server and control network backbone shall communicate using Ethernet Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex J. Communication between the web server and client (workstation) shall be HTTP or HTTPS protocol utilizing HTML5 language. Use of Adobe Flash in any part of the communication infrastructure is not acceptable.
- C. Hardware.
 - 1. Web server and/or workstation. Industry-standard hardware shall meet or exceed DDC system manufacturer's recommended specifications and shall meet response times specified elsewhere in this document. The web server may also be configured in client/server fashion to accommodate a "workstation" definition. In "workstation" configuration, the workstation will also perform as a server supplying additional clients as needed. The following hardware requirements apply:
 - a. System storage shall have sufficient memory to accommodate:
 - 1) All required system software.
 - 2) A DDC database to accommodate, as a minimum, twice the size of the delivered system database.
 - 3) One year of archival trend data based on the points specified to be trended at their specified trend intervals.
 - b. Provide additional hardware (communication ports, video drivers, network interface cards, cabling, etc.) to facilitate all control functions and software requirements specified for the DDC system.
- D. System Software.
 - 1. Operating System. Web server shall have an industry-standard professional-grade operating system. Operating system shall meet or exceed the DDC System manufacturer's minimum requirements for their software. Acceptable systems include Microsoft Windows 7, 8 or 10, Microsoft Vista, Windows Server 2008 or 2012, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, or Ubuntu Desktop 12.04.
 - 2. Within 30 days of the end of the warranty period, the control contractor shall perform an update to the newest manufacturer's control software package available at that time.
 - 3. Security. The web server application shall support Transport Layer Security (TLS) with a capability of 256-bit encryption for transmitting private information over the Internet using HTTPS. Additionally, the web server shall have SHA-2 certificate support.
 - 4. Database. System shall support any JDBC (Java DataBase Connectivity) compliant engine. This includes: MS SQL, My SQL, PostgreSQL and Oracle.
 - 5. System Graphics. The operator interface software shall be graphically based and shall include at least one graphic per piece of equipment or occupied zone, graphics for each chilled water and hot water system, and graphics that summarize conditions on each floor of each building included in this contract. Indicate thermal comfort on floor plan summary graphics using dynamic colors to represent zone temperature relative to zone setpoint.

- a. Minimum graphics resolution shall be 1920 x1080 for display of detailed system graphics.
 - b. Functionality. Graphics shall allow operator to monitor system status, to view a summary of the most important data for each controlled zone or piece of equipment, to use point-and-click navigation between zones or equipment, and to edit setpoints and other specified parameters.
 - c. Animation. Graphics shall be able to animate by displaying different image files for changed object status.
 - d. Alarm Indication. Indicate areas or equipment in an alarm condition using color or other visual indicator.
 - e. Format. Graphics shall be saved in an industry-standard format such as BMP, JPEG, PNG, or GIF. Web-based system graphics shall be viewable on browsers compatible with World Wide Web Consortium browser standards. Web graphic format shall require no plug-in) or shall only require widely available no-cost plug-ins (such as Active-X or Adobe Flash).
6. Custom Graphics. Custom graphic files shall be created with the use of a graphics generation package furnished with the system. The graphics generation package shall be a graphically based system to create and modify graphics that are saved in the same formats as are used for system graphics.
 7. Graphics Library. Furnish a complete library of standard HVAC equipment graphics such as chillers, boilers, air handlers, terminals, fan coils, and unit ventilators. This library also shall include standard symbols for other equipment including fans, pumps, coils, valves, piping, dampers, and ductwork. The library shall be furnished in a file format compatible with the graphics generation package program.
- E. System Applications. System shall provide the following functionality to authorized operators as an integral part of the operator interface or as stand-alone software programs. If furnished as part of the interface, the tool shall be available from each workstation or web browser interface. If furnished as a stand-alone program, software shall be installable on standard PCs with no limit on the number of copies that can be installed under the system license.
1. Automatic System Database Configuration. Web server shall store on its hard disk a copy of the current system database, including controller firmware and software. Stored database shall be automatically updated with each system configuration or controller firmware or software change.
 2. Manual Controller Memory Download. Operators shall be able to download memory from the system database to each controller.
 3. System Configuration. The workstation software shall provide a method of configuring the system. This shall allow for future system changes or additions by users under proper password.
 4. On-Line Help. Provide a context-sensitive, on-line help system to assist the operator in operating and editing the system. On-line help shall be available for all applications and shall provide the relevant data for that particular screen. Additional help information shall be available through the use of hypertext.
 5. Online Video Training. Provide on-line video support to supplement on-line help assistance. Video content shall be relevant and support existing system documentation.
 6. Security. Each operator shall be required to log on to the system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data.

- a. Operator Access. The user name and password combination shall define accessible viewing, editing, adding, and deleting privileges for that operator. Users with system administrator rights shall be able to create new users and edit the privileges of all existing users. System Administrators shall also be able to vary and deny each operator's privileges based on the geographic location, such as the ability to edit operating parameters in Building A, to view but not edit parameters in Building B, and to not even see equipment in Building C.
 - b. Password Policy Rules. System administrator shall invoke policies for minimum password strength, including number of characters, special characters and numbers, upper and lower case, etc.
 - c. Automatic Log Out. Automatically log out each operator if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto logoff time shall be user adjustable.
 - d. Encrypted Security Data. Store system security data including operator passwords in an encrypted format. System shall not display operator passwords.
7. System Diagnostics. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all building management panels and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator.
 8. Alarm Processing. System input and status objects shall be configurable to alarm on departing from and on returning to normal state. Operator shall be able to enable or disable each alarm and to configure alarm limits, alarm limit differentials, alarm states, and alarm reactions for each system object. Configure and enable alarm points as specified in the Sequences of Operations. Alarms shall be BACnet alarm objects and shall use BACnet alarm services.
 9. Alarm Messages. Alarm messages shall use the English language descriptor for the object in alarm in such a way that the operator will be able to recognize the source, location, and nature of the alarm without relying on acronyms or mnemonics.
 10. Alarm Reactions. Operator shall be able to configure (by object) what, if any actions are to be taken during an alarm. As a minimum, the workstation or web server shall be able to log, print, start programs, display messages, send e-mail, send SMS text, and audibly annunciate.
 11. Alarm and Event log. Operators shall be able to view all system alarms and changes of state from any location in the system. Events shall be listed chronologically. An operator with the proper security level may acknowledge and delete alarms, and archive closed alarms to the web server hard.
 12. Trend Logs
 - a. Trend logs shall be coordinated and set up based upon client agency requirements. Minimum points as indicated under sequence of operations shall be included in trend logs.
 - b. The operator shall be able to configure trend sample or change of value (COV) interval, start time, and stop time for each system data object and shall be able to retrieve data for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs. Controller shall sample and store trend data and shall be able to archive data to the hard disk. Configure trends as specified in the Sequences of Operations. Trends shall be BACnet trend objects. As a minimum, all physical points in the system shall be trended within the local controller (AAC, ASC, BC) for at least 277 samples per point. Selected points, as desired, shall be available for historical archiving within the server. The historical archiving capability cannot be less than 2 years.

13. Object and Property Status and Control. Provide a method for the operator to view, and edit if applicable, the status of any object or property in the system. The status shall be available by menu, on graphics, or through custom programs.
14. Reports and Logs. Operator shall be able to select, to modify, to create, and to print reports and logs. Operator shall be able to store report data in a format accessible by standard spreadsheet and word processing programs.
15. Audit and Security Detail. All users accessing the system shall have their actions recorded. Information recorded shall include: login/logout time and date; system modifications – with before and after values; ability to report user activity based on individual and/or date and time.
16. Standard Reports. Furnish the following standard system reports:
 - a. Objects. System objects and current values filtered by object type, by status (in alarm, locked, normal), by equipment, by geographic location, or by combination of filter criteria.
 - b. Alarm Summary. Current alarms and closed alarms. System shall retain closed alarms for an adjustable period.
 - c. Logs. System shall log the following to a database or text file and shall retain data for an adjustable period:
 - 1) Alarm History.
 - 2) Trend Data. Operator shall be able to select trends to be logged.
17. Environmental Index. System shall monitor all occupied zones and compile an index that provides a numerical indication of the environmental comfort within the zone. As a minimum, this indication shall be based upon the deviation of the zone temperature from the heating or cooling setpoint. If humidity is being measured within the zone then the environmental index shall be adjusted to reflect a lower comfort level for high or low humidity levels. Similarly, if carbon dioxide levels are being measured as an indication of ventilation effectiveness then the environmental index shall be adjusted to indicate degraded comfort at high carbon dioxide levels. Other adjustments may be made to the environmental index based upon additional measurements. The system shall maintain a trend of the environmental index for each zone in the trend log. The system shall also compute an average comfort index for every building included in this contract and maintain trend logs of these building environmental indices. Similarly, the system shall compute the percentage of occupied time that comfortable conditions were maintained within the zones. Through the UI the user shall be able to add a weighting factor to adjust the contribution of each zone to the average index based upon the floor area of the zone, importance of the zone, or other static criteria.
18. Custom Reports. Operator shall be able to create custom reports that retrieve data, including archived trend data, from the system, that analyze data using common algebraic calculations, and that present results in tabular or graphical format. Reports shall be launched from the operator interface.
19. Time Lapse Graphic Replay. Operator shall be able to “replay” any graphic in the system to see how key values changed over an operator-selected period of time. Operator shall be able to select the starting date/time for this display and the end date/time or the display period. System shall then display the graphic as it would have looked at the beginning of that period, displaying key data, dynamic colors, etc. based upon values recorded at the start time. When the operator starts the replay the graphics and key values shall dynamically change to produce the effect of “fast forwarding” through the designated period of time. Once the system has been operational for at least 30 days, the contractor

shall demonstrate that up to 24 hours of data from within the last 30 days can be replayed on any graphic page. Department's representative shall choose the graphic pages for this demonstration at the time of the demonstration.

2.4 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. Furnish the following applications for building and energy management. All software applications shall reside and operate in the system controllers. Applications shall be editable through operator workstation, web browser interface, or workstation.
- B. Scheduling. Provide the capability to execute control functions according to a user created or edited schedule. Each schedule shall provide the following schedule options as a minimum:
 - 1. Weekly Schedule. Provide separate schedules for each day of the week. Each schedule shall be able to include up to 5 occupied periods (5 start-stop pairs or 10 events).
 - 2. Exception Schedules. Provide the ability for the operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule has executed, the system shall discard and replace the exception schedule with the standard schedule for that day of the week.
- C. Holiday Schedules. Provide the capability for the operator to define up to 24 special or holiday schedules. These schedules will be repeated each year. The operator shall be able to define the length of each holiday period. System Coordination. Operator shall be able to group related equipment based on function and location and to use these groups for scheduling and other applications.
- D. Binary Alarms. Each binary object shall have the capability to be configured to alarm based on the operator-specified state. Provide the capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- E. Analog Alarms. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits. The operator shall be able to enable or disable these alarms.
- F. Alarm Reporting. The operator shall be able to determine the action to be taken in the event of an alarm. An alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in the event log, generate custom messages, and display on graphics.
- G. Fault Detection Diagnostics (FDD). The system shall provide the ability to follow NIST and ASHRAE standards for enhanced monitoring and alarming. The capability of FDD shall reside in the controller and integral to the programming. Overlay software for primary FDD reporting is not acceptable. FDD capabilities shall include diagnostics for: Simultaneous Heating and Cooling; Continuous Operation; Fraction of Outdoor Air; Analog Output Cycling; Discrete Output Cycling; Sensor Failures; and Run Requests Analytics. Equipment using these FDD capabilities, as a minimum, shall include: Single Zone Units (SZU), VAV Air Handlers, VAV Terminal Units, Fan Coils, Unit Ventilators, Air Source & Water Source Heat Pumps.
- H. Remote Communication. System shall automatically contact operator workstation or server on receipt of critical alarms. If no network connection is available, system shall use a modem connection.

- I. Demand Limiting.
 - 1. The demand-limiting program shall monitor building power consumption from a building power meter (provided by others) which generates pulse signals or a BACnet communications interface. An acceptable alternative is for the system to monitor a watt transducer or current transformer attached to the building feeder lines.
 - 2. When power consumption exceeds adjustable levels, system shall automatically adjust setpoints, de-energize low-priority equipment, and take other programmatic actions to reduce demand as specified in the Sequence of Operations. When demand drops below adjustable levels, system shall restore loads as specified.
- J. Maintenance Management. The system shall be capable of generating maintenance alarms when equipment exceeds adjustable runtime, equipment starts, or performance limits. Configure and enable maintenance alarms as specified in the Sequence of Operations.
- K. Sequencing. Application software shall sequence chillers, boilers, and pumps as specified in the Sequence of Operations.
- L. PID Control. System shall provide direct- and reverse-acting PID (proportional-integral-derivative) algorithms. Each algorithm shall have anti-windup and selectable controlled variable, setpoint, and PID gains. Each algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value that can be used to position an output or to stage a series of outputs. The calculation interval, PID gains, and other tuning parameters shall be adjustable by a user with the correct security level.
- M. Staggered Start. System shall stagger controlled equipment restart after power outage. Operator shall be able to adjust equipment restart order and time delay between equipment restarts.
- N. Energy Calculations.
 - 1. The system shall accumulate and convert instantaneous power (kW) or flow rates (L/s [gpm]) to energy usage data.
 - 2. The system shall calculate a sliding-window average (rolling average). Operator shall be able to adjust window interval to 15 minutes, 30 minutes, or 60 minutes.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling. All binary output objects shall be protected from short cycling by means of adjustable minimum on-time and off-time settings.
- P. On and Off Control with Differential. Provide an algorithm that allows a binary output to be cycled based on a controlled variable and a setpoint. The algorithm shall be direct-acting or reverse-acting.
- Q. Runtime Totalization. Provide software to totalize runtime for each binary input and output. Operator shall be able to enable runtime alarm based on exceeded adjustable runtime limit. Configure and enable runtime totalization and alarms as specified in the Sequence of Operations.

2.5 CONTROLLERS

- A. General. Provide an adequate number of Building Controllers (BC), Advanced Application Controllers (AAC), Application Specific Controllers (ASC), Smart Actuators (SA), and Smart Sensors (SS) as required to achieve performance specified. Every device in the system which executes control logic and directly controls HVAC equipment must conform to a standard BACnet Device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L. Unless otherwise specified, hardwired actuators and sensors may be used in lieu of BACnet Smart Actuators and Smart Sensors
- B. BACnet.
1. Building Controllers (BCs): Each BC shall conform to BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L, and shall be listed as a certified B-BC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
 2. Advanced Application Controllers (AACs): Each AAC shall conform to BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-AAC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
 3. Application Specific Controllers (ASCs): Each ASC shall conform to BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-ASC in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
 4. Smart Actuators (SAs): An actuator which is controlled by a network connection rather than a binary or analog signal (0-10v, 4-20mA, relay, etc.). Each SA shall conform to BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SA in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
 5. Smart Sensors (SSs): A sensor which provides information to the BAS via network connection rather than a binary or analog signal (0-10000 ohm, 4-20mA, dry contact, etc.). Each SS shall conform to BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) device profile as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex L and shall be listed as a certified B-SS in the BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL) Product Listing.
 6. BACnet Communication.
 - a. Each BC shall reside on or be connected to a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing.
 - b. BACnet routing shall be performed by BCs or other BACnet device routers as necessary to connect BCs to networks of AACs and ASCs.
 - c. Each AAC shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol with BACnet/IP addressing, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - d. Each ASC shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - e. Each SA shall reside on a BACnet network using the ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
 - f. Each SS shall reside on a BACnet network using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol with BACnet/IP addressing, or it shall reside on a BACnet network using ARCNET or MS/TP Data Link/Physical layer protocol.
- C. Security.

1. Provide BACnet firewall capability, as defined in the BACnet standard, for controllers that are IP capable.
- D. Communication.
1. Service Port. Each controller shall provide a service communication port for connection to a Portable Operator's Terminal. Connection shall be extended to space temperature sensor ports where shown on drawings.
 2. Signal Management. BC and ASC operating systems shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and to allow for central monitoring and alarms.
 3. Data Sharing. Each BC and AAC shall share data as required with each networked BC and AAC.
 4. Stand-Alone Operation. Each piece of equipment specified in Section 23 09 93 shall be controlled by a single controller to provide stand-alone control in the event of communication failure. All I/O points specified for a piece of equipment shall be integral to its controller. Provide stable and reliable stand-alone control using default values or other method for values normally read over the network such as outdoor air conditions, supply air or water temperature coming from source equipment, etc.
- E. Environment. Controller hardware shall be suitable for anticipated ambient conditions.
1. Controllers used outdoors or in wet ambient conditions shall be mounted in waterproof enclosures and shall be rated for operation at $\square 29^{\circ}\text{C}$ to 60°C ($\square 20^{\circ}\text{F}$ to 140°F).
 2. Controllers used in conditioned space shall be mounted in dust-protective enclosures and shall be rated for operation at 0°C to 50°C (32°F to 120°F).
- F. Serviceability. Provide diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor. All wiring connections shall be made to a field-removable modular terminal strip or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable. Each BC and AAC shall continually check its processor and memory circuit status and shall generate an alarm on abnormal operation. System shall continuously check controller network and generate alarm for each controller that fails to respond.
- G. Memory.
1. Controller memory shall support operating system, database, and programming requirements.
 2. Each BC and AAC shall retain BIOS and application programming for at least 72 hours in the event of power loss.
 3. Each ASC and SA shall use nonvolatile memory and shall retain BIOS and application programming in the event of power loss. System shall automatically download dynamic control parameters following power loss.
- H. Immunity to Power and Noise. Controllers shall be able to operate at 90% to 110% of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80% nominal voltage. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios up to 5 W at 1 m (3 ft).
- I. Transformer. ASC power supply shall be fused or current limiting and shall be rated at a minimum of 125% of ASC power consumption.

2.6 INPUT AND OUTPUT INTERFACE

- A. General. Hard-wire input and output points to BCs, AACs, ASCs, or SAs.
- B. Protection. All input points and output points shall be protected such that shorting of the point to itself, to another point, or to ground shall cause no damage to the controller. All input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration, such that contact with this voltage will cause no controller damage.
- C. Binary Inputs. Binary inputs shall allow the monitoring of ON/OFF signals from remote devices. The binary inputs shall provide a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against contact bounce and noise. Binary inputs shall sense dry contact closure without application of power external to the controller.
- D. Pulse Accumulation Inputs. Pulse accumulation inputs shall conform to binary input requirements and shall also accumulate up to 10 pulses per second.
- E. Analog Inputs. Analog inputs shall monitor low-voltage (0–10 Vdc), current (4–20 mA), or resistance (thermistor or RTD) signals. Analog inputs shall be compatible with and field configurable to commonly available sensing devices.
- F. Binary Outputs. Binary outputs shall provide for ON/OFF operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse width modulation control. Binary outputs on Building Controllers have three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights. Outputs shall be selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
- G. Analog Outputs. Analog outputs shall provide a modulating signal for the control of end devices. Outputs shall provide either a 0–10 Vdc or a 4–20 mA signal as required to properly control output devices. Each Building Controller analog output shall have a two-position (auto-manual) switch, a manually adjustable potentiometer, and status lights. Analog outputs shall not drift more than 0.4% of range annually.
- H. Tri-State Outputs. Control three-point floating electronic actuators without feedback with tri-state outputs (two coordinated binary outputs). Tri-State outputs may be used to provide analog output control in zone control and terminal unit control applications such as VAV terminal units, duct-mounted heating coils, and zone dampers.
- I. Universal Inputs and Outputs. Inputs and outputs that can be designated as either binary or analog in software shall conform to the provisions of this section that are appropriate for their designated use.
- J. System Object Capacity. The system size shall be expandable to at least twice the number of input/ output objects required for this project. Additional controllers (along with associated devices and wiring) shall be all that is necessary to achieve this capacity requirement. The operator interfaces installed for this project shall not require any hardware additions or software revisions in order to expand the system

2.7 POWER SUPPLIES AND LINE FILTERING

- A. Power Supplies. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
1. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
 - a. Unit shall operate between 0°C and 50°C (32°F and 120°F). EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
 - b. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA listed.
- B. Power Line Filtering.
1. Provide internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations and controllers. Surge protection shall have:
 - a. Dielectric strength of 1000 V minimum
 - b. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
 - c. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater
 - d. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or greater at 40–100 Hz

2.8 AUXILIARY CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Motorized Control Dampers, unless otherwise specified elsewhere, shall be as follow.
1. Type. Control dampers shall be the parallel or opposed-blade type as specified below or as scheduled on drawings.
 - a. Outdoor and return air mixing dampers and face-and-bypass dampers shall be parallel-blade and shall direct airstreams toward each other.
 - b. Other modulating dampers shall be opposed-blade.
 - c. Two-position shutoff dampers shall be parallel- or opposed-blade with blade and side seals.
 2. Frame. Damper frames shall be galvanized steel channel or extruded aluminum with reinforced corner bracing.
 3. Blades. Blades shall be suitable for medium velocity (10 m/s [2000 fpm]) performance.
 4. Shaft Bearings. Damper shaft bearings shall be as recommended by manufacturer for application, oil impregnated sintered bronze, or better.
 5. Seals. Blade edges and frame top and bottom shall have replaceable seals of butyl rubber or neoprene. Side seals shall be spring-loaded stainless steel. Blade seals shall leak no more than 50 L/s·m² (10 cfm per ft²) at 1000 Pa (4 in. w.g.) differential pressure. Blades shall be airfoil type suitable for wide-open face velocity of 7.5 m/s (1500 fpm).

6. Sections. Individual damper sections shall not exceed 125 cm × 150 cm (48 in. × 60 in.). Each section shall have at least one damper actuator.
7. Modulating dampers shall provide a linear flow characteristic where possible.
8. Linkages. Dampers shall have exposed linkages.

B. Electric Damper and Valve Actuators.

1. Stall Protection. Mechanical or electronic stall protection shall prevent actuator damage throughout the actuator's rotation.
2. Spring-return Mechanism. Actuators used for power-failure and safety applications shall have an internal mechanical spring-return mechanism or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
3. Signal and Range. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0–10 Vdc or a 0–20 mA control signal and shall have a 2–10 Vdc or 4–20 mA operating range. (Floating motor actuators may be substituted for proportional actuators in terminal unit applications)
4. Wiring. 24 Vac and 24 Vdc actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
5. Manual Positioning. Operators shall be able to manually position each actuator when the actuator is not powered. Non-spring-return actuators shall have an external manual gear release. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 N·m (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank.
6. Zone Valve Actuators. For modulation of actuators in HVAC systems, actuator sizing should be in accordance with the valve manufactures' specifications. The actuator shall be powered by 24 volts AC. The actuator shall be controlled by commands from the terminal unit controller. Actuator shall be capable of modulating to any position as directed by the terminal unit controller. In addition, the actuator shall provide positive feedback to the terminal unit controller. The terminal unit controller actuator command is not considered positive feedback. Actuator shall be capable of providing fail open, fail close, or fail last position as determined by the project requirements.
 - a. Electronic Fail Safe is acceptable for terminal unit and zone valve applications

C. Control Valves.

1. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type for two-position or modulating service.
2. Close-off (differential) Pressure Rating: Valve actuator and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings:
 - a. Water Valves:
 - 1) Two-way: 150% of total system (pump) head.
 - 2) Three-way: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head.
 - b. Steam Valves: 150% of operating (inlet) pressure.
3. Water Valves.
 - a. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown, with equal percentage ports for modulating service.
 - b. Sizing Criteria:

- 1) Two-position service: Line size.
 - 2) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through heat exchanger (load), 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
 - 3) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil exchanger (load), 35 kPa (5 psi) maximum.
- c. Valves ½ in. through 2 in. shall be bronze body or cast brass ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing, quick opening for two-position service. Two-way valves to have replaceable composition disc or stainless steel ball.
 - d. Valves 2½ in. and larger shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
 - e. Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
 - 1) Terminal zone valves—fail in place.
 - 2) Heating coils in air handlers—normally open.
 - 3) Chilled water control valves—normally closed.
 - 4) Other applications—as scheduled or as required by sequences of operation.

D. Temperature Sensors.

1. Type. Temperature sensors shall be thermistor (10k Type2).
2. Duct Sensors. Duct sensors shall be single point or averaging as shown. Averaging sensors shall be a minimum of 1.5m (5 ft) in length per 1 m² (10 ft²) of duct cross-section.
3. Immersion Sensors. Provide immersion sensors with a separable stainless steel well. Well pressure rating shall be consistent with system pressure it will be immersed in. Well shall withstand pipe design flow velocities.
4. Space Sensors. Space sensors shall not have setpoint adjustment, override switch, or display.
5. Differential Sensors. Provide matched sensors for differential temperature measurement.

E. Humidity Sensors.

1. Duct and room sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–80%.
2. Duct sensors shall have a sampling chamber.
3. Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–95% RH and shall be suitable for ambient conditions of -40°C–75°C (-40°F–170°F).
4. Humidity sensors shall not drift more than 1% of full scale annually.

F. Flow Switches. Flow-proving switches shall be paddle (water service only) or differential pressure type (air or water service) as shown. Switches shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, and pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum).

1. Paddle switches shall have adjustable sensitivity and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
2. Differential pressure switches shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.

G. Relays.

1. Control Relays. Control relays shall be plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have dust cover and LED “energized” indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
2. Time Delay Relays. Time delay relays shall be solid-state plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable $\pm 100\%$ from setpoint shown. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure for relays not installed in local control panel.

H. Override Timers.

1. Unless implemented in control software, override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration required by application. Provide 0–6 hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Flush mount timer on local control panel face or where shown.

I. Current Transmitters.

1. AC current transmitters shall be self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4–20 mA two-wire output. Full-scale unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A, with internal zero and span adjustment. Unit accuracy shall be $\pm 1\%$ full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.
2. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized.
3. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.

J. Current Transformers.

1. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized and shall be completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
2. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for $\pm 1\%$ accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
3. Use fixed-core transformers for new wiring installation and split-core transformers for existing wiring installation.

K. Voltage Transmitters.

1. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4–20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.
2. Adjustable full-scale unit ranges shall be 100–130 Vac, 200–250 Vac, 250–330 Vac, and 400–600 Vac. Unit accuracy shall be $\pm 1\%$ full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.
3. Transmitters shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized at 600 Vac rating.

L. Voltage Transformers.

1. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized, 600 Vac rated, and shall have built-in fuse protection.
2. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of 4°C–55°C (40°F–130°F) and shall provide $\pm 0.5\%$ accuracy at 24 Vac and 5 VA load.
3. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic.

M. Power Monitors.

1. Selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading, 4–20 mA output for kW reading, N.O. alarm contact, and ability to operate with 5.0 amp current inputs or 0–0.33 volt inputs.
2. 1.0% full-scale true RMS power accuracy, +0.5 Hz, voltage input range 120–600 V, and auto range select.
3. Under voltage/phase monitor circuitry.
4. NEMA 1 enclosure.
5. Current transformers having a 0.5% FS accuracy, 600 VAC isolation voltage with 0–0.33 V output. If 0–5 A current transformers are provided, a three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly is required.

N. Hydronic Flowmeters

1. Insertion-Type Turbine Meter

- a. Dual counter-rotating axial turbine elements, each with its own rotational sensing system, and an averaging circuit to reduce measurement errors due to swirl and flow profile distortion. Single turbine for piping 2 inches and smaller. Flow sensing turbine rotors shall be non-metallic and not impaired by magnetic drag.
- b. Insertion type complete with ‘hot-tap’ isolation valves to enable sensor removal without water supply system shutdown.
- c. Sensing method shall be impedance sensing (nonmagnetic and non-photoelectric)
- d. Volumetric accuracy
 - 1) $\pm 0.5\%$ of reading at calibrated velocity
 - 2) $\pm 1\%$ of reading from 3 to 30 ft/s (10:1 range)
 - 3) $\pm 2\%$ of reading from 0.4 to 20 ft/s (50:1 range)
- e. Each sensor shall be individually calibrated and tagged accordingly against the manufacturer’s primary standards which must be accurate to within 0.1% of flow rate and traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).
- f. Maximum operating pressure of 400 psi and maximum operating temperature of 95°C (200°F) continuous or 105°C (220°F) peak.
- g. All wetted metal parts shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel.
- h. Analog outputs shall consist of noninteractive zero and span adjustments, a DC linearly of 0.1% of span, voltage output of 0-10 Vdc, and current output of 4-20 mA.

2. Magnetic Flow-Tube Type Flowmeter

- a. Sensor shall be a magnetic flowmeter, which utilizes Faraday’s Law to measure volumetric fluid flow through a pipe. The flowmeter shall consist of two elements, the sensor and the electronics. The sensor shall generate a measuring signal proportional to the flow velocity in the pipe. The electronics shall convert this EMF into a standard current output.
- b. Electronic replacement shall not affect meter accuracy (electronic units are not matched with specific sensors).
- c. Four-wire, externally powered, magnetic type flow transmitter with adjustable span and zero, integrally mounted to flow tube. Output signal shall be a digital

pulse proportional to the flow rate (to provide maximum accuracy and to handle abrupt changes in flow). Standard 4-20 mA or 0-10 Vdc outputs may be used provided accuracy is as specified.

- d. Flow Tube:
 - 1) ANSI class 150 psig steel
 - 2) ANSI flanges
 - 3) Protected with PTFE, PFA, or ETFE liner rated for 120°C (245°F) minimum fluid temperature
- e. Electrode and grounding material
 - 1) 316L Stainless steel or Hastelloy C
 - 2) Electrodes shall be fused to ceramic liner and not require o-rings.
- f. Electrical Enclosure: NEMA 4, 7
- g. Approvals:
 - 1) UL or CSA.
 - 2) NSF Drinking Water approval for domestic water applications
- h. Performance
 - 1) Accuracy shall be $\pm 0.5\%$ of actual reading from 3 to 30 ft/s flow velocities, and 0.015 ft/s from 0.04 to 3 ft/s.
 - 2) Stability: 0.1% of rate over six months.
 - 3) Meter repeatability shall be $\pm 0.1\%$ of rate at velocities > 3 ft/s.

3. Magnetic Insertion-Type Flowmeter

- a. Magnetic Faraday point velocity measuring device.
- b. Insertion type complete with hot-tap isolation valves to enable sensor removal without water supply system shutdown.
- c. 4-20 mA transmitter proportional to flow or velocity.
- d. Accuracy: larger of 1% of reading and 0.2 ft/s.
- e. Flow range: 0.2 to 20 ft/s, bidirectional.
- f. Each sensor shall be individually calibrated and tagged accordingly against the manufacturer's primary standards which must be accurate to within 0.1% of flow rate and traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).

4. Vortex Shedding Flowmeter

- a. Output: 4-20 mA, 0-10 Vdc, 0-5 Vdc.
- b. Maximum Fluid Temperature: 427 °C (800 °F).
- c. Wetted Parts: Stainless Steel.
- d. Housing: NEMA 4X.
- e. Turndown: 25:1 minimum.
- f. Accuracy: 0.5% of calibrated span for liquids, 1% of calibrated span for steam and gases.
- g. Body: Wafer style or ANSI flanged to match piping specification.

5. Transit-Time Ultrasonic Flowmeter
 - a. Clamp-On transit-time ultrasonic flowmeter
 - b. Wide-Beam transducer technology
 - c. 4-20 mA transmitter proportional to flow or velocity.
 - d. Accuracy: 0.5% of reading in range 1 to 30 ft/s, 0.001 ft/s sensitivity.

- O. Thermal Energy Meters
 1. Matched RTD, solid state, or thermistor temperature sensors with a differential temperature accuracy of $\pm 0.08^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 0.15^{\circ}\text{F}$).
 2. Flow meter: See "Hydronic Flowmeters" section.
 3. Unit accuracy of $\pm 1\%$ factory calibrated, traceable to NIST with certification.
 4. NEMA 1 enclosure.
 5. Panel mounted display.
 6. UL listed.
 7. Isolated 4–20 ma signals for energy rate and supply and return temperatures and flow.

- P. Current Switches.
 1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. Select switches to match application current and DDC system output requirements.

- Q. Pressure Transducers.
 1. Transducers shall have linear output signal and field-adjustable zero and span.
 2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
 3. Water pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and block and bleed valves.
 4. Water differential pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Over-range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 2000 kPa (300 psi.) Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and 5-valve manifold.

- R. Differential Pressure Switches. Differential pressure switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum) and shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.

- S. Pressure-Electric (PE) Switches.
 1. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuated, operating pressure rated for 0–175 kPa (0–25 psig), with calibrated scale minimum setpoint range of 14–125 kPa (2–18 psig) minimum, UL listed.
 2. Provide one- or two-stage switch action (SPDT, DPST, or DPDT) as required by application. Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and /or for motor control.
 3. Switches shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation. Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
 4. Each pneumatic signal line to PE switches shall have permanent indicating gauge.

2.9 LOCAL CONTROL PANELS.

- A. Indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with hinged door and removable subpanels.
 - 1. Terminal equipment enclosures will be constructed of lightweight durable metal with Lexan cover.
- B. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices shall be prewired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
- C. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

2.10 WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. General. Provide copper wiring, plenum cable, and raceways as specified in applicable sections of Division 26.
- B. Insulated wire shall use copper conductors and shall be UL listed for 90°C (200°F) minimum service.

2.11 FIBER OPTIC CABLE SYSTEM

- A. Optical Cable. Optical cables shall be duplex 900 mm tight-buffer construction designed for intra-building environments. Sheath shall be UL listed OFNP in accordance with NEC Article 770. Optical fiber shall meet the requirements of FDDI, ANSI X3T9.5 PMD for 62.5/125mm.
- B. Connectors. Field terminate optical fibers with Lc to LC single mode connectors

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. The project plans shall be thoroughly examined for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the architect/engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. The contractor shall inspect the site to verify that equipment may be installed as shown. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- C. The contractor shall examine the drawings and specifications for other parts of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the plans and the contractor's work and the plans and the work of others—the contractor shall report

these discrepancies to the engineer and shall obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the contractor's work with the work of others.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. The contractor shall protect all work and material from damage by his/her work or employees and shall be liable for all damage thus caused.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible for his/her work and equipment until finally inspected, tested, and accepted. The contractor shall protect any material that is not immediately installed. The contractor shall close all open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects.

3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Site.
 - 1. Where the mechanical work will be installed in close proximity to, or will interfere with, work of other trades, the contractor shall assist in working out space conditions to make a satisfactory adjustment.
 - 2. Coordinate and schedule work with other work in the same area and with work dependent upon other work to facilitate mutual progress.
- B. Test and Balance.
 - 1. The contractor (if necessary) shall provide the T&B contractor with test and balance software and cable to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
 - 2. The contractor shall provide training in the use of these tools.
 - 3. The tools used during the test and balance process will be returned at the completion of the testing and balancing process.
 - 4. If interfacing capability cannot be provided, the contractor will assist the T&B contractor for the entirety of the test and balance process.
- C. Life Safety.
 - 1. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are provided by others. Interlock smoke detectors to air handlers for shutdown as specified in the Sequence of Operations.
 - 2. Smoke dampers and actuators required for duct smoke isolation are provided by others. Interlock smoke dampers to air handlers as specified in the Sequence of Operations.
 - 3. Fire and smoke dampers and actuators required for fire-rated walls are provided by others. Fire and smoke damper control is provided by others.

3.4 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e. horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.

- C. Install equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by the National Electrical Code (NEC).
- D. Verify integrity of all wiring to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and grounds.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility and be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All work, materials, and equipment shall comply with rules and regulations of applicable local, state, and federal codes and ordinances as identified in Section (Codes and Standards).
- B. Contractor shall continually monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship.

3.6 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes, and electrical specifications. Where the requirements of this section differ from other divisions of this specification, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. All NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL listed in approved raceway according to NEC and electrical specification requirements.
- C. All low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub-fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.
- D. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables not in raceway may be used provided that cables are UL listed for the intended application.
- E. All wiring in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms – or where subject to mechanical damage – shall be installed in raceway at levels below 3 m (10ft).
- F. Do not install Class 2 wiring in raceways containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g. relays and transformers).
- G. Do not install wiring in raceway containing tubing.
- H. Where Class 2 wiring is run exposed, wiring is to be run parallel along a surface or perpendicular to it and neatly tied at 3 m (10 ft) intervals.
- I. Where plenum cables are used without raceway, they shall be supported from or anchored to structural members. Cables shall not be supported by or anchored to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.

- J. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. All wire-to-wire connections shall be at a terminal block.
- K. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- L. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- M. All wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- N. Install plenum wiring in sleeves where it passes through walls and floors. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- O. Size of raceway and size and type of wire shall be the responsibility of the contractor in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- P. Include one pull string in each raceway 2.5 cm (1 in.) or larger.
- Q. Use color-coded conductors throughout with conductors of different colors.
- R. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- S. Conceal all raceways except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Install raceway to maintain a minimum clearance of 15 cm (6 in.) from high-temperature equipment (e.g. steam pipes or flues).
- T. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- U. Adhere to electrical specification requirements where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
- V. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of vertical raceways.
- W. The contractor shall terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and shall maintain updated (as-built) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- X. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 1 m (3 ft) in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than ½ in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- Y. Raceway must be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with couplings (according to code). Terminations must be made with fittings at boxes, and ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

3.7 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. The contractor shall adhere to the items listed in the “Wiring” article in Part 3.7 of the specification.
- B. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer’s installation recommendations for all communication cabling.
- C. Do not install communication wiring in raceways and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.
- D. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for the cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during installation.
- E. Contractor shall verify the integrity of the entire network following cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- F. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor must be installed between the lines and ground. The lightning arrestor shall be installed according to manufacturer’s instructions.
- G. All runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced length when that length is commercially available.
- H. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.
- I. Grounding of coaxial cable shall be in accordance with NEC regulations article on “Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding.”
- J. BACnet Arcnet or MS/TP communications wiring shall be installed in accordance with ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 135. This includes but is not limited to:
 - 1. Arcnet
 - a. The network shall use shielded, twisted-pair cable with characteristic impedance between 100 nominal. Distributed capacitance between conductors shall be less than 12.5 pF per foot (41 pF per meter.)
 - b. The maximum length of an Arcnet segment is 610 meters (2000 ft) with AWG 22 cable.
 - c. The maximum number of nodes per segment shall be 32, as specified in the EIA 485 standard. Additional nodes may be accommodated by the use of repeaters.
 - d. An Arcnet network shall have no T connections.
 - 2. MS/TP
 - a. The network shall use shielded, twisted-pair cable with characteristic impedance between 100 and 120 ohms. Distributed capacitance between conductors shall be less than 100 pF per meter (30 pF per foot.)
 - b. The maximum length of an MS/TP segment is 1200 meters (4000 ft) with AWG 18 cable. The use of greater distances and/or different wire gauges shall comply with the electrical specifications of EIA-485

- c. The maximum number of nodes per segment shall be 32, as specified in the EIA 485 standard. Additional nodes may be accommodated by the use of repeaters.
- d. An MS/TP EIA-485 network shall have no T connections.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Install sensors in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for environment within which the sensor operates.
- C. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by wall framing. Backs of boxes shall be insulated from any external heating or cooling source.
- D. All wires attached to sensors shall be sealed in their raceways or in the wall to stop air transmitted from other areas from affecting sensor readings.
- E. Sensors used in mixing plenums and hot and cold decks shall be of the averaging type. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner vertically across the duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.
- F. Low-limit sensors used in mixing plenums shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip. Provide 1 ft. of sensing element for each 1 ft² of coil area.
- G. Do not install temperature sensors within the vapor plume of a humidifier. If installing a sensor downstream of a humidifier, install it at least 10 ft. downstream.
- H. All pipe-mounted temperature sensors shall be installed in wells. Install liquid temperature sensors with heat-conducting fluid in thermal wells.
- I. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall, complete with sun shield at designated location.
- J. Differential Air Static Pressure.
 - 1. Supply Duct Static Pressure. Pipe the high-pressure tap to the duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the high-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor (if applicable) or to the location of the duct high-pressure tap and leave open to the plenum.
 - 2. Return Duct Static Pressure. Pipe high-pressure tap to duct using a pitot tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to a tee in the low-pressure tap tubing of the corresponding building static pressure sensor.
 - 3. Building Static Pressure. Pipe the low-pressure port of the pressure sensor to the static pressure port located on the outside of the building through a high-volume accumulator. Pipe the high-pressure port to a location behind a thermostat cover.
 - 4. The piping to the pressure ports on all pressure transducers shall contain a capped test port located adjacent to the transducer.
 - 5. All pressure transducers, other than those controlling VAV boxes, shall be located in field device panels, not on the equipment monitored or on ductwork. Mount transducers in a location accessible for service without use of ladders or special equipment.

- 6. All air and water differential pressure sensors shall have gauge tees mounted adjacent to the taps. Water gauges shall also have shut-off valves installed before the tee.
- K. Smoke detectors, low limit temperature sensors, high-pressure cut-offs, and other safety switches shall be hard-wired to de-energize equipment as described in the sequence of operation. All safeties shall be provided with a manual reset. Provide contacts that allow DDC software to monitor safety switch status.
- L. Install humidity sensors for duct mounted humidifiers at least 10 ft. downstream of the humidifier. Do not install filters between the humidifier and the sensor.

3.9 FLOW SWITCH INSTALLATION

- A. Use correct paddle for pipe diameter.
- B. Adjust flow switch according to manufacturer's instructions.

3.10 ACTUATORS

- A. General. Mount and link control damper actuators according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. To compress seals when spring-return actuators are used on normally closed dampers, power actuator to approximately 5° open position, manually close the damper, and then tighten the linkage.
 - 2. Check operation of damper/actuator combination to confirm that actuator modulates damper smoothly throughout stroke to both open and closed positions.
 - 3. Provide all mounting hardware and linkages for actuator installation.
- B. Electric/ Electronic
 - 1. Dampers: Actuators shall be direct mounted on damper shaft or jackshaft unless shown as a linkage installation. For low-leakage dampers with seals, the actuator shall be mounted with a minimum 5° travel available for tightening the damper seal. Actuators shall be mounted following manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Valves: Actuators shall be connected to valves with adapters approved by the actuator manufacturer. Actuators and adapters shall be mounted following the actuator manufacturer's recommendations.

3.11 IDENTIFICATION OF HARDWARE AND WIRING

- A. All wiring and cabling, including that within control panels, shall be labeled.
- B. All pneumatic tubing shall be labeled at each end within 2 in. of termination with a descriptive identifier.
- C. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served.
- D. Identify control panels with minimum ½ in. letters on laminated plastic nameplates.

- E. Identify all other control components with labels.
- F. Control System Manufacturers' nameplates and UL or CSA labels shall be visible and legible after equipment is installed.
- G. Identifiers shall match record documents.

3.12 CONTROLLERS

- A. Provide a separate controller for each AHU, Hot Water system, Chilled Water system or other HVAC system. A DDC controller may control more than one system provided that all points associated with the system are assigned to the same DDC controller. Points used for control loop reset, such as outside air or space temperature, are exempt from this requirement.
- B. Building Controllers and Custom Application Controllers shall be selected to provide the required I/O point capacity required to monitor all of the hardware points listed in the Sequence of Operation.

3.13 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for the specified sequences of operation and trend logging
- B. Point Naming. Name points as shown on the equipment points list provided with each sequence of operation. See Sequence of Operations. If character limitations or space restrictions make it advisable to shorten the name, the abbreviations given in the Sequence of Operations may be used. Where multiple points with the same name reside in the same controller, each point name may be customized with its associated Program Object number. For example, "Zone Temp 1" for Zone 1, "Zone Temp 2" for Zone 2.
- C. Operator Interface.
 - 1. Standard Graphics. Provide graphics for all mechanical systems and floor plans of the building. This includes each chilled water system, hot water system, chiller, boiler, air handler, and all terminal equipment. Point information on the graphic displays shall dynamically update. Show on each graphic all input and output points for the system. Also show relevant calculated points such as setpoints. As a minimum, show on each equipment graphic the input and output points and relevant calculated points as indicated on the applicable Points List in Section 23.
 - 2. The contractor shall provide necessary labor to start up and troubleshoot all operator interface software and its functions as described in this section. This includes any operating system software, the operator interface database, and any third-party software installation and integration required for successful operation of the operator interface.

3.14 CONTROL SYSTEM CHECKOUT AND TESTING

- A. Startup Testing. All testing listed in this article shall be performed by the contractor and shall make up part of the necessary verification of an operating control system. This testing shall be completed before the Department's representative is notified of the system demonstration

1. The contractor shall furnish all labor and test apparatus required to calibrate and prepare for service of all instruments, controls, and accessory equipment furnished under this specification.
2. Verify that all control wiring is properly connected and free of all shorts and ground faults. Verify that terminations are tight.
3. Enable the control systems and verify calibration of all input devices individually. Perform calibration procedures according to manufacturers' recommendations.
4. Verify that all binary output devices (relays, solenoid valves, two-position actuators and control valves, magnetic starters, etc.) operate properly and that the normal positions are correct.
5. Verify that all analog output devices (I/Ps, actuators, etc.) are functional, that start and span are correct, and that direction and normal positions are correct. The contractor shall check all control valves and automatic dampers to ensure proper action and closure. The contractor shall make any necessary adjustments to valve stem and damper blade travel.
6. Verify that the system operation adheres to the sequences of operation. Simulate and observe all modes of operation by overriding and varying inputs and schedules. Tune all DDC loops.
7. Alarms and Interlocks:
 - a. Check each alarm separately by including an appropriate signal at a value that will trip the alarm.
 - b. Interlocks shall be tripped using field contacts to check the logic, as well as to ensure that the fail-safe condition for all actuators is in the proper direction.
 - c. Interlock actions shall be tested by simulating alarm conditions to check the initiating value of the variable and interlock action.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. The contractor shall clean up all debris resulting from his/her activities daily. The contractor shall remove all cartons, containers, crates, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.
- B. At the completion of work in any area, the contractor shall clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.

3.16 TRAINING

- A. Provide eight (8) hours of site-specific training for a designated staff of Department's representatives. Training shall be provided on site for all new equipment and systems..
- B. Provide course outline and materials according to the "Submittals" article in Part 1 of this specification. Provide one copy of training material per student.
- C. The instructor(s) shall be factory-trained and experienced in presenting this material.
- D. Classroom training shall be done using a network of working controllers representative of installed hardware.

3.17 START-UP AND CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Start up, check out, and test all hardware and software and verify communication between all components.
 - 1. Verify that all control wiring is properly connected and free of all shorts and ground faults. Verify that terminations are tight.
 - 2. Verify that all analog and binary input/output points read properly.
 - 3. Verify alarms and interlocks.
 - 4. Verify operation of the integrated system.
 - 5. Coordinate and set up trend logs with Client agency during start up period.

END OF SECTION 230900

SECTION 230923.12

CONTROL DAMPERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of control dampers and actuators for DDC systems:
 - 1. Rectangular control dampers.
 - 2. Round control dampers.
 - 3. General control-damper actuator requirements.
 - 4. Electric and electronic actuators.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
 - 2. Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.12.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct-digital control.
- B. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
 - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
 - 4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for air and process signal tubing.
5. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, and equipment.
2. Size and location of wall access panels for control dampers and actuators installed behind walls.
3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control dampers and actuators installed above inaccessible ceilings.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.
- D. Backup Power Source: Systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated control damper actuators served from a backup power source.
- E. Environmental Conditions:
 1. Provide electric control-damper actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Electric control-damper actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

F. Selection Criteria:

1. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Outdoor Air: Close.
 - b. Mixed Air: Last position.
 - c. Exhaust Air: Last position.
2. Dampers shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum airflow over varying pressures and temperatures encountered.
3. Select modulating dampers for a pressure drop of 5 percent of fan total static pressure unless otherwise indicated.
4. Two-position dampers shall be full size of duct or equipment connection unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pneumatic, two-position control dampers shall provide a smooth opening and closing characteristic slow enough to avoid excessive pressure. Dampers with pneumatic actuators shall have an adjustable opening time (valve full closed to full open) and an adjustable closing time (valve full open to full closed) ranging from zero to 10 seconds. Opening and closing times shall be independently adjustable.
6. Control-damper, pneumatic-control signal shall not exceed 200 feet. For longer distances, provide an electric/electronic control signal to the damper and an electric solenoid valve or electro-pneumatic transducer at the damper to convert the control signal to pneumatic.

2.2 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed blade configuration.
2. Factory assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
3. Damper actuator shall be factory installed by damper manufacturer as integral part of damper assembly. Coordinate actuator location and mounting requirements with damper manufacturer.

B. Rectangular Dampers with Aluminum Airfoil Blades:

1. Performance:
 - a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
 - b. Pressure Drop: 0.05-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
 - c. Velocity: Up to 6000 fpm.
 - d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 - e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
 - f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

2. Construction:
 - a. Frame:
 - 1) Material: ASTM B211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles, 0.07 inch thick.
 - 2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flange(s). Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
 - 3) Width not less than 5 inches.
 - b. Blades:
 - 1) Hollow, airfoil, extruded aluminum.
 - 2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
 - 3) Material: ASTM B211, Alloy 6063 T5 aluminum, 0.07 inch thick.
 - 4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
 - 5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.
 - c. Seals:
 - 1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl, or plastic composite.
 - 2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.
 - d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or steel, mechanically attached to blades.
 - e. Bearings:
 - 1) Molded synthetic or stainless-steel sleeve mounted in frame.
 - 2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.
 - f. Linkage:
 - 1) Concealed in frame.
 - 2) Constructed of aluminum and plated or stainless steel.
 - 3) Hardware: Stainless steel.
 - g. Transition:
 - 1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
 - 2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
 - 3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
 - 4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
 - 5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

2.3 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

- A. Actuators shall operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
- B. Actuators shall produce sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators shall be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.
- C. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.
- D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly shall operate in unison.
- E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.
- F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.
- G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.
- H. Select actuators to fail in desired position in the event of a power failure.
- I. Actuator Fail Positions: As indicated below:
 - 1. Exhaust Air: Last position.
 - 2. Outdoor Air: Close.

2.4 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS

- A. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- B. Voltage:
 - 1. Voltage selection as required by the ATC Contactor.
 - 2. Actuator shall deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
 - 3. Actuator shall function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- C. Construction:
 - 1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
 - 2. 100 up to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft-hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.

3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.

D. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring return actuators shall be easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
2. Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.

E. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.

F. Modulating Actuators:

1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
2. Control Input Signal:
 - a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
 - b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10- or 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
 - c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink or source controller.
 - d. Programmable Multi-Function:
 - 1) Control input, position feedback, and running time shall be factory or field programmable.
 - 2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
 - 3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

G. Position Feedback:

1. Where required, equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
2. Where required, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

H. Fail-Safe:

1. Where required, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.

3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
- I. Integral Overload Protection:
1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.
- J. Damper Attachment:
1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
 2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
 3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.
- K. Temperature and Humidity:
1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
 2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
- L. Enclosure:
1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
 2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
 3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
 4. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.
- M. Stroke Time:
1. Operate damper from fully closed to fully open within 60 seconds.
 2. Operate damper from fully open to fully closed within 60 seconds.
 3. Move damper to failed position within 30 seconds.
 4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
 5. Actuators operating in smoke control systems comply with governing code and NFPA requirements.
- N. Sound:
1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
 2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONTROL-DAMPER APPLICATIONS

- A. Control Dampers:
- B. Select from damper types indicated in "Control Dampers" Article to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.
 - 1. Rectangular Exhaust Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction Class 2"wg and Velocities to 650: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades or Insulated rectangular dampers.
 - 2. Rectangular Outdoor Air Duct Applications with SMACNA Construction Class 2"wg and Velocities to 650: Rectangular dampers with aluminum airfoil blades.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- E. Fastening Hardware:
 - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
 - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

- F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Department's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Install smooth transitions, not exceeding 15 degrees, to dampers smaller than adjacent duct. Install transitions as close to damper as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Consult manufacturer for recommended clearance.
- B. Clearance:
 - 1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
 - 2. Install dampers with at least 24 inches of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access.
- C. Service Access:
 - 1. Dampers and actuators shall be accessible for visual inspection and service.
 - 2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Install supplementary structural steel reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory support alone cannot handle loading.
- E. Attach actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.
- F. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper and on face of ceiling where damper is concealed above ceiling.

3.8 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Control-Damper Checkout:
 - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
 - 2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
 - 3. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.
 - 4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.
 - 5. For pneumatic dampers, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to damper actuator and positioner.
 - 6. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 7. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 - 8. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 9. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
 - 10. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
 - 11. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

3.9 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:

- A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- D. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

SECTION 230993.11

SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. The control specification is intended to cover the automatic control of heating, ventilating, and air conditioning on the following equipment:

1. Fresh air handling unit including but not limited to:
 - a. Carbon dioxide and outside air monitoring.
 - b. Duct mounted humidification
2. Water to air heat pump including but not limited to:
 - a. Duct heating coils.
 - b. Humidifiers.
3. Roof Top Heat pumps.
4. Heat pump water loop including but not limited to:
 - a. Well Pumps.
 - b. Heat Exchangers.
 - c. Water flows.
5. Hydronic heating system including, but not limited to the following:
 - a. Condensing Boiler.
 - b. Hydronic loop including but not limited to:
 - 1) Hot Water System
 - 2) New and existing pumps.
 - c. Water-to-water heat pump.
6. VAV Boxes
7. Miscellaneous Controls
8. Existing systems
9. Emergency Unit Shut Downs.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 2230900 – “HVAC Instrumentation and Controls.”
2. 235216 Condensing Boilers
3. 237433 Dedicated Outdoor-Air Unit (FAHU-1)
4. 237416.13 Packaged Rooftop Heat Pump Air-Conditioning Units
5. 238146 Water-To-Water Heat Pumps
6. 238146.13 Water-To-Air Heat Pumps
7. 238413.29 Self-Contained Steam Humidifiers

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Analog Output: Proportional output signal (zero- to 10-V dc, 4 to 20 mA).
- B. Binary Output: On/off output signal or contact closure.
- C. DDC: Direct digital control.
- D. Digital Output: Data output that must be interpreted digitally.
- E. VFD: Variable speed drive.
- F. VAV: variable air volume.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 1. An instrumentation list for each controlled system. Label each element of the controlled system in table format. Show, in the table element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and control device product data sheet number.
 2. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. Include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
 2. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Include all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. Show the location of control elements in the system.
 3. Wiring diagram for each controlled system. Show all control elements labels. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label with the same name. Label all terminals.

1.5 The following units shall be fully accessible through BACnet interface between the Automated Logic system and the built-in unit control cards:

1. Water to water heat pump
2. Roof top units
3. Water to air heat pumps

4. Humidification units
5. Fresh air handling unit
6. Variable frequency drives.
7. Condensing Boiler
8. Glycol fill station.

1.6 FRESH AIR HANDLING UNIT (FAHU-1)

A. General

1. FAHU-1 shall be provided with DDC card, outside air and relief dampers and internal unit controls. See 237433 Dedicated Outdoor-Air Unit (FAHU-1) specification for all controls provided with unit.
2. FAHU-1 shall interface to the existing BACnet LAN of Automated Logic's control system through the BACnet optimal controller to be provided with the fresh air handling unit manufacturer.
3. DDC interface shall include the readout all temperature, humidity, damper positions, VFD settings, wheel speed, etc. as available from unit manufacturer's DDC card. See specification for complete list.

B. Occupied Mode

1. FAHU-1 shall be indexed to the occupied mode by a seven-day time schedule through the DDC system.
2. The fresh air handling unit shall maintain 63 degrees F. cooling set point and 64 degrees F. heating set point. Discharge humidity shall be 70% during heating mode.
3. The outdoor air damper shall open and the relief air discharge damper shall open.
4. The supply air and exhaust air fans shall be energized through their VFD controllers.
5. The energy recovery section shall rotate continuously through the fresh air and exhaust air streams while the unit is activated (in order to capture waste heat.)
6. An outdoor air sensor shall index the unit's internal air-to-air heat pump section between its heating/cooling cycle.
7. Heating Mode
 - a. On a call for heating, the reversing valve shall be indexed to the heating mode and the discharge heating set point shall be maintained by internally cycling of the heat pump controller.

- b. When the unit is indexed to the heating mode, a temperature sensor shall modulate the heating coil to maintain proper discharge air set point.
 - c. In the event the heat pump coil cannot maintain set point, the hydronic heating coil control valve shall modulate open.
- 8. Freeze Protection
 - a. When the unit is indexed to the heating mode, an air temperature sensor located in the exhaust air stream and pressure differential switch across the heat wheel shall be available for frost control.
 - b. High pressure drop shall energize the variable speed drive on the heat wheel if the outside air temperature is 10 degrees F or less.
 - c. The temperature low limit controller shall modulate the VFD to maintain exhaust air temperature greater than or equal to 25 degrees F.
 - d. If supply air temperature drops below 35 degrees F, cooling shall shut down and fan shall be de-energized. Manual reset shall be required.
- 9. Cooling Mode
 - a. On a continued increase in discharge air temperature above the dead band set point, and with outdoor air being greater than heating set point, the heat pump cooling section shall be fully operational. The reversing valve shall be indexed to the cooling mode and the hot gas bypass valve shall be modulated. A hot gas reheat coil shall be used to maintain discharge temperature and humidity set points.
 - b. If hot gas reheat is not required by the unit, the heat rejection of the heat pump cooling cycle shall be dissipated to the outdoor condensing section.
- 10. High Limit protection
 - a. If supply air sensor reads temperatures greater than 120 degrees F, heating shall shut down and fan shall be disabled. Manual reset shall be required.
- C. Flow measurement
 - 1. Discharge and return air flows shall be measured through air flow measurement stations built into unit and provided with the equipment. Air flow monitors shall be located in the unit supply air discharge. A similar flow measurement device shall be located in the unit return air inlet. Air flow rates shall be measured and recorded by the DDC system.
 - 2. Air flow measurement shall be provided through the unit manufacturer provided air flow monitoring system through the built in BACnet card.
- D. Demand Ventilation Control
 - 1. Carbon dioxide levels shall be measured and recorded through intake sensing probe and exhaust duct sensing probe provided by the DDC contractor.

2. The supply and exhaust fans shall be modulated as required to maintain an exhaust duct carbon dioxide level of 450 ppm (adjustable.) Increased levels shall increase fan speeds. Lower levels shall decrease fan speeds.
 3. A minimum VFD setting shall be as required by FAHU-1 manufacturer.
- E. Primary Electronic Humidifier H-1 (field installed by .2 Contractor) is provided with built in BACnet card. Provide the following:
1. Humidifier shall be energized when the outside air is below 60 degrees F.
 2. A discharge humidity sensor shall modulate the electronic humidifier to maintain 70% RH.
 3. A high limit control shall cycle the humidifier to maintain a maximum duct humidity level of 85 to 90% RH.
- F. Alarm:
1. Send alarm signal to DDC system in event of unit malfunction
 2. Filter dirty.
 3. High or low temperature alarm.
 4. High or low humidity alarm.
 5. Fan failure
 6. Loss of energy wheel.
 7. Freeze protection alarm
 8. High exhaust carbon dioxide level.
 9. Humidifier failure.

1.7 GALLERY, COLLECTIONS AND LIBRARY WATER TO AIR HEAT PUMP (HP-2 thru -5, HP-8 thru -10)

- A. Control shall include the respective heat pump, duct mounted humidifier and duct mounted hydronic reheat coil.
- B. The heat pumps include built in Automated Logic DDC cards that shall be able to be fully accessed by the DDC contractor. See 238146.13 Water-to-Air Heat Pumps.
- C. Provide the necessary logic o utilize built in control functions for the sequences listed below. Provide external temperature and humidity sensors as required.
- D. General:

1. The heat pumps shall operate in occupied mode 24 hours per day, 365 days per year.
 2. Units include built in drain pan overflow control. In event of alarm, unit will shut down.
 3. Occupied Mode Set points:
 - a. A 72°F and 50% RH cooling
 - b. A 70°F and 48% RH heating
 4. The occupant shall be able to adjust the zone temperature and humidity heating and cooling setpoints through the DDC control system.
- E. Occupied Mode:
1. The fan shall run continuously when indexed on.
 2. The unit controller shall receive a signal from the loop water source monitor indicating that there is water flow and that the water temperature is within acceptable limits.
- F. Fan Control
1. The heat pump includes built in fan speed control and shall be utilized during heating and cooling mode.
 2. During heating mode, fan shall be operated at low fan speed. If set point cannot be met, fan speed shall be increased in steps.
 3. During cooling mode, fan shall be operated at low speed. If set point can not be maintained, fan speed shall be increased in steps.
- G. Heating Mode
1. On a drop in space temperature, the heating shall be indexed on and reversing valve shall be moved to the heating position. The unit refrigeration system shall cycle the compressor in stages to maintain its set point. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime. The compressor shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
 2. A second stage heating shall be available through the modulation of the duct mounted hydronic heating coil two-way control valves. The reheat coil shall be available upon proving of flow in the hydronic heating system.
- H. Cooling Mode
1. On a rise in space temperature, the reversing valve shall switch to the cooling mode.
 2. The unit refrigeration system shall cycle the compressor in stages to maintain its set point. The compressor shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
 3. The dehumidification sequence shall be deenergized during cooling mode.

4. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a built-in five-minute time delay off timer. A built in 45 second delay is included for staging down.

I. Dehumidification Mode

- a. On a rise in space humidity above 55% RH, as sensed by the room humidistat, the dehumidification sequence shall be activated. Medium fan speed shall be activated and mechanical cooling shall be energized and run to maintain discharge air temperature.
- b. In units with hot gas reheat, reheat coils shall be energized and cycled to maintain room thermostat setting. If required, a second stage heating control shall modulate hydronic heating coil two-way control valves as required.
- c. In units without hot gas reheat, hydronic heating coil two-way modulating valves shall be modulated top maintain space temperature settings.

J. Electronic Humidifier (H-2 thru H-10):

1. Provide a separate control card to communicate to the electronic humidifier. Obtain all points available within humidifier and connect to DDC system.
2. Use a 0-10 VDC signal for device control.
3. An air proving switch shall allow humidifier to operate.
4. The room sensor shall send a start signal to the humidifier when zone humidity is below set point of 50% RH. Humidity control shall be modulating.
5. The discharge air moisture sensor shall modulate the humidifier output to maintain duct high limit (85% maximum, field adjusted as required.)
6. The duct mounted discharge air moisture sensor shall monitor the discharge air humidity.

K. The following monitoring points, as available through the built in heat pump BACnet card shall be provided for each heat pump graphics:

1. Space temperature
2. Leaving heat pump loop water temperature
3. Discharge air temperature
4. Command of space temperature set point
5. Cooling status
6. Heating status
7. Low temperature sensor alarm
8. High pressure switch alarm

9. Fan on/off position of space thermostat
 10. Unoccupied/occupied command
 11. Cooling demand
 12. Heating demand
 13. Fan "ON/AUTO" command.
- L. The following monitoring points shall be provided by the DDC control contractor:
1. Return air carbon dioxide level
 2. Return air temperature
 3. Return air humidity
 4. Reheat coil conditions as follows:
 - a. Entering air temperature
 - b. Leaving air temperature
 - c. Control valve position
 - d. Entering water temperature.
- M. Alarms shall be provided as follows:
1. Return air high carbon dioxide level
 2. Dirty filter
 3. Air flow failure
 4. Alarm output as available from internal DDC controller.
 5. Humidifier failure.
 6. High Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is greater than 120°F (adj.).
 7. Low Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is less than 40°F (adj.).
 8. High Discharge Air humidity: If the discharge air humidity is greater than 95% (adj.).
 9. Low Discharge Air humidity: If the discharge air humidity is less than 40% RH (adj.).
 10. Condensate drain pan alarm.

1.8 ROOF TOP WATER TO AIR HEAT PUMP (RTU-1 & RTU-3)

A. General

1. The unit controller shall be furnished to the packaged roof top heat pump unit manufacturer for factory installation by the DDC contractor. The specified roof top heat pump units include fully compatible internal control devices with Automated Logic Controls.
2. The roof top unit shall include its own internal programming logic to properly control the DX cooling and heating sections for full interface to the variable speed air flow control feature as specified herein. This refrigerant system interface shall eliminate short cycling and minimize cycle off time.
3. The roof top units serve a ducted supply system that serves existing VAV boxes. Return air is a non-ducted system. The VAV boxes are controlled through a zone sensor polling (evaluating deviation of room temperature from thermostat set point) system.
4. Heat pump water flow to roof top units shall be continuous with no control valve. Heat trace shall be provided by the .2 Contractor. Heat trace temperature control shall be monitored through the DDC system and issue an alarm condition if loop protection is not maintained.

B. Zone Optimal Start:

1. Existing wall sensors shall be polled on a timed basis.
2. The occupant shall be able to adjust the zone temperature heating and cooling set points at the zone sensor.
3. When majority polling indicates cooling is required, the unit shall be indexed to cooling, provided the outdoor air temperature is above outdoor air cooling set point.
4. When majority polling indicates heating is required, and the outdoor air temperature is below heating set point, the unit shall be indexed to heating.
5. The unit shall use an optimal start algorithm for morning start-up. This algorithm shall minimize the unoccupied warm-up or cool-down period while still achieving comfort conditions by the start of scheduled occupied period.

C. Zone Unoccupied Override:

1. A timed local override control shall allow an occupant to override the schedule and place the unit into an occupied mode for an adjustable period of time. At the expiration of this time, control of the unit shall automatically return to the schedule.

D. Run Conditions - Scheduled:

1. The unit supply and exhaust fans shall be energized and run during the occupied mode.
2. Occupied Mode:

- a. Outside and relief air dampers to modulate to minimum position during occupied mode.
 - a) Outside and relief air dampers shall close during unoccupied mode.
- b. During unoccupied mode, the unit shall be indexed on upon call from any VAV box served by respective unit.

E. Duct Setpoint Controllers:

- 1. Relocate the existing discharge static pressure sensors to 2/3 distance down the duct work. The static pressure sensor shall modulate the supply and return fan speeds.
- 2. The existing discharge air temperature sensor shall receive a signal from unit controller to reset the unit discharge set point based upon zone sensing and outside air temperature. The greatest zone differential shall set the unit to either heating or cooling.

F. Temperature control requirements shall be as follows:

- 1. A majority of zones shall index the unit to either heating or cooling when the system is in the occupied mode.
- 2. The unit controller shall receive polling signals from all room sensors indicating differential from room set points and adjust heating/cooling mode accordingly.
 - a. When polling indexes the unit to cooling, the following shall occur:
 - 1) If the outside air less than 55 degrees F, or outdoor enthalpy less than return enthalpy, modulate outside and relief air section damper open.
 - 2) If the outside temperature less than 55 degrees F, but outdoor enthalpy greater than return enthalpy, modulate outside air and exhaust dampers to minimum position, switch the reversing valve to cooling and energize mechanical cooling in stages.
 - 3) If outdoor air temperature is greater than 65 degrees F., the unit shall switch the reversing valve to cooling and energize mechanical cooling in stages.
 - b. When polling indexes the unit to heating, the following shall occur:
 - c. If the outside air temperature is less than 60 degrees F., the unit shall switch to heating mode
 - 1) If the outside air is less than 60 degrees F, the fresh air and exhaust dampers shall return to their minimum positions.
 - a) Heat pump reversing valve shall be changed and compressors cycled and energized in stages to maintain a discharge set point of 70 degrees.
 - 2) If the VAV boxes are unable to satisfy space set point, the unit discharge air temperature shall be increased proportionally.

G. Fan:

- 1. The fan shall run anytime the unit is commanded to run, unless shutdown on safeties.
- 2. The supply and exhaust fan variable speed controllers (provided with the units) shall be modulated to maintain static pressure set point.

3. Existing duct mounted smoke detectors shall shut the fan down under alarm conditions.

H. Heating and Cooling:

1. The unit controller shall receive a signal from the loop water source monitor indicating that there is water flow and that the water temperature is within acceptable limits.
2. The existing 'polling' signal from the VAV box controller shall index the heat pump to the required heating or cooling mode.
3. As provided by the heat pump manufacturer, on a call for mechanical cooling or heating, the compressor speed shall be modulated to maintain discharge set point. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime. The compressor shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
4. The compressor shall be disabled and remain off for 30sec (adj.) after the reversing valve has changed position.

I. The following points shall be indicated in the unit graphics:

1. Space temperature
2. Leaving heat pump loop water temperature
3. Discharge air temperature
4. Command of space temperature set point
5. Cooling status
6. Heating status
7. Low temperature sensor alarm
8. High pressure switch alarm
9. Unoccupied/occupied command
10. Cooling demand
11. Heating demand
12. Fan "ON/AUTO" command
13. Supply and exhaust fan VFD position
14. Mixing box damper position
15. Duct static pressure.
16. Return duct humidity
17. Return duct temperature.

J. Alarms shall be provided as follows:

1. Dirty filters as measured by unit provided Magnehelic gage.
2. Fan Failure (supply and exhaust.)
3. Smoke alarm.
4. High Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is greater than 120°F (adj.).
5. Low Discharge Air Temp: If the discharge air temperature is less than 40°F (adj.).

1.9 CABINET UNIT HEATERS, CONVECTORS:

- A. Existing control schemes shall remain in place.
- B. Existing controls shall be available for use upon activation of the hydronic loop and proving of flow in the secondary system.

1.10 WATER TO WATER HEAT PUMP (WW-1):

A. General

1. The water-to-water heat pump shall be the primary hydronic loop heating source.
2. The heat pump shall be provided by the unit manufacturer with an Automated Logic control card. The .2 contractor shall obtain rights for DDC contractor to have full access to internal card controls.
3. The water-to-water heat pump shall serve as a heating only unit. This unit will be the first stage of heating control for the existing hydronic loop.
4. Heat pump water shall flow through the unit continuously with no control valve. Proving of flow through the heat pump as sensed by a pipe mounted flow switch and heating loops shall allow the heat pump internal controls to be energized.

B. Heating Control

1. The water-to-water heat pump shall receive a start signal from the main DDC controller.
2. The secondary pump located in the heating loop (P-2,) shall also be energized,
3. The heat pump shall through its internal controls modulate the refrigerant cycle to maintain discharge heating water temperature set point of 130 degrees F as sensed by a unit discharge temperature sensor located in the heating side discharge piping.

C. Heating Loop Secondary Pump Summer Control

- a. If the heating loop secondary pump (P-2) is de-energized for at least 2 weeks, provide a 5-minute timed start/stop sequence to exercise water to water inline pump during this period.
- D. The following items shall be indicated for the unit graphics:
1. Proof of unit heat pump flow
 2. Heat pump loop inlet and discharge water temperatures
 3. Proof of pump P-2 flow
 4. Heating system entering water temperature
 5. Heating system leaving water temperature.
- E. Alarms
1. Loss of flow
 2. High and low water temperature failure.
 3. High water pressure drop across heat pump and hydronic loop of heat pump
 4. All failures shall signal a local alarm. Manual reset shall be required to silence the local alarm.
- 1.11 GAS FIRED BOILER (B-1):
- A. The boiler controls shall be activated upon flow switch sensing flow through the boiler.
 - B. Upon a call for heating, the existing primary in line boiler pump (P-1) shall be energized and the boiler controls shall be allowed to cycle.
 - C. The boiler shall be modulated to maintain a set point of 130-degree supply water, unless indexed by the main DDC controller to reset its leaving water temperature proportionally to a maximum of 160 degrees as sensed by a discharge water temperature sensor.
 - D. Provide new high limit and manual reset high limit controls for this boiler. A built in new low water cut off shall de-energize the boiler.
 - E. In the event of primary pump (P-1) failure, the boiler shall not be allowed to operate.
 - F. A remote, wall mounted boiler 'kill' switch for Emergency Boiler Shut Down
 1. Provide emergency shut down switches at each door leaving the existing basement mechanical room.
 2. Switches shall de-energize the boiler and its respective circulating pump (P-1.)

G. Boiler Pump Summer Control

- a. Provide a timed start/stop sequence to exercise boiler inline pump during summer months.

H. Alarms:

1. Temperature low limit.
2. Temperature high limit.
3. Low water cut off.
4. Pump flow failure.

1.12 HYDRONIC WATER LOOP:

A. Existing isolation loop control valves as indicated in the demolition drawings shall be removed from the control sequence. The primary/secondary bridge shall be open design.

B. The heating loop controls shall be indexed on through the central DDC controller.

C. A secondary mounted flow station shall monitor flow rates in the secondary loop through either P-3 or P-4.

D. Secondary pumps (P-3 and P-4)

1. New VFD's shall be provided by the Contractor. New DDC connections as indicated herein shall be provided for the VFD's.
2. Secondary pump P-3 variable speed controller shall receive a start signal and the pump shall be energized.
3. The existing secondary loop pressure differential controller shall be removed. A new differential controller shall be installed approximately 2/3 distance of hydronic loop. The new device set point shall be for the required pressure differential across the furthest coil in the heating loop. (Verify this setting with balancing contractor and commissioning agent.)
4. Upon a drop in secondary loop pressure, the variable speed control shall increase pump speed.
5. In the event of pump P-3 failure as sensed by a flow switch or current sensing, pump P-4 and its respective VFD shall be energized and controlled by the differential controller. P-4 shall have similar safety control.

E. Secondary Loop Hot Water Temperature Control:

1. Upon a call for heating in the secondary loop as sensed by a pipe mounted temperature sensor, the primary pump P-2 shall be energized and water shall flow through WW-1.

2. The secondary hot water temperature set point shall be set at 130 degrees year-round.
3. In the event of a zone reheat or VAV box heating coil control valve 100% open, and zone temperature sensor indicates excessive deviation from zone set point, the loop temperature shall be proportionally reset up to a maximum 140 degrees. Boiler B-1 shall be energized to increase loop water temperature.

F. Primary Loop Boiler Control

1. The boiler water temperature control set point shall be changed for set point adjustment through the central DDC system controller. The heating loop shall be available at all times.
2. Upon receiving a start signal, the lead boiler (water to water heat pump WW-1) and its respective primary pump (P-2) shall be energized and run continuously until a stop signal is sent to the pump.
3. The condensing gas fire boiler, B-1 shall be the lag boiler. Upon receiving a start signal from the central DDC controller (either as stand by or second stage boiler,) primary pump P-1 shall be energized and the boiler shall be made operational through the primary pump flow switch.
4. In the event of failure of lead boiler WW-1, the stand by boiler, B-1 shall become lead.
5. If either WW-1 or B-1 primary pumps are inactive for a two-week period, the respective primary pump P-2 or P-1 shall be exercised for a five-minute period.

G. The following items shall be indicated in the system graphics:

1. Heat pump and boiler run status.
2. Primary supply and return water temperature at WW-1 and at B-1
3. Secondary loop flow rate
4. Secondary loop supply and return pressure settings at secondary pump suction and discharge lines
5. Secondary supply and return water temperature
6. Boiler B-1 inputs as indicated in section 235219 Condensing Boilers.

H. Alarms

1. Loss of primary and secondary system flow
2. Pump failure
3. Low primary and secondary loop temperature.
4. Low system fill pressure.

5. Low water cut off.

1.13 HEAT PUMP LOOP WATER SYSTEM:

- A. The water source heat pump loop shall consist of two systems.
 1. First system includes the open well field pumps, heat exchanger and bag filters located in the remote pump house.
 2. Second system includes the in line circulating pumps located in the remote pump house and the closed loop system extending from the pump house to the building proper.
- B. Loop Control
 1. The loop system shall be indexed on through the DDC controller.
 2. Upon receiving a start signal, closed loop pump P-5a shall be energized and run continuously.
 - a. In the event of failure of pump P-5a as sensed by a flow switch or current sensing, stand by pump P-5b shall be energized. Pump P-5b shall have similar safety control.
 - b. Pumps P-5a and P-5b shall be sequenced as lead pump based upon a timed sequence.
 3. Upon sensing a rise in closed loop water temperature above 75 degrees F, and outside air temperature is above 37 degrees F. (adjustable), the open loop system shall be energized.
 - a. Heat exchanger HXC-1 two position bypass valve close and water flow shall go through HXC-1. Bypass valve shall fail in the closed position.
 - b. Well pump SP-1 shall be energized and provide variable flow well water through HXC-1.
 - c. Upon sensing a continued increase in loop temperature, well pump SP-1 shall increase speed as required to maintain loop set point.
 - d. Well pump SP-1 and SP-2 shall be manually alternated between operating and stand by pump.
 - e. In the event of well pump failure, a visual alarm at the DDC system and an audible alarm at the pump house (including exterior flashing visual notification) shall occur at the pump house.
 4. Between a loop temperature of 65 to 75 degrees, neither the wells nor the boiler shall be required.
 5. Upon sensing a drop in closed loop temperature below 65 degrees, the following shall occur:

- a. Heat exchanger HXC-1 two position bypass valve shall open and bypass flow across HXC-1.
 - b. Well pumps SP-1 and SP-2 shall be deenergized,
 - c. Heat exchanger HXC-2 two way modulating control valve shall open as required to maintain heat pump closed loop above 65 degrees.
6. The following loop water conditions shall be monitored and indicated in the system graphics:
- a. Closed and open loop HXC-1 flow status through differential pressure readings.
 - b. Supply temperature.
 - c. Return temperature.
 - d. Inlet and outlet temperature and pressure readings on open and closed loop sides of HXC-1.
 - e. HXC-1 valve position.
 - f. Inlet and outlet temperature and pressure readings of both sides of HXC-2.
 - g. Pressure drop readings across the open loop bag filters shall be monitored.
 - h. Open loop flow rate
7. Alarms shall be generated upon any of the following loop water conditions:
- a. No Loop Flow.
 - b. High pressure drop alarm shall be indexed in the event of excessive pressure drop.
 - c. High closed loop water supply temp: If the loop water supply temperature is greater than 90°F (adj.).
 - d. Low closed loop water supply temp: If the loop water supply temperature is less than 58°F (adj.).
 - e. Loop Water Pump Operation.
 - f. Closed Loop Water Pumps P-5a and P-5b
 - 1) Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - 2) Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - 3) Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
 - g. Well Pumps SP-1 and SP-2
 - 1) Failure: Commanded on, but the status is off.
 - 2) Running in Hand: Commanded off, but the status is on.
 - 3) Runtime Exceeded: Status runtime exceeds a user definable limit.
 - h. Bypass Valve
 - 1) Failure: Commanded on, but the status is closed.
 - 2) High Condenser Water Supply Temp: If the condenser water supply temperature is greater than 85°F (adj.).

1.14 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME BOXES WITH REHEAT

A. General

1. The new and existing VAV boxes shall utilize the following sequences.

2. The VAV boxes shall be indexed between the occupied and unoccupied modes by the DDC system according to the occupied time schedule of the associated air handler.

3. Unoccupied Mode (night setback):

B. Unoccupied Mode:

1. The VAV boxes shall maintain
 - 1) A 80°F (adj.) cooling setpoint.
 - 2) A 65°F (adj.) heating setpoint.

C. Occupied Mode:

1. The VAV boxes shall maintain
 - 1) A 74°F (adj.) cooling setpoint
 - 2) A 76°F (adj.) heating setpoint
2. The VAV box shall modulate from its minimum to its maximum CFM setpoint to maintain the space temperature setpoint.
3. When the VAV box is at its minimum CFM setpoint and space temperature continues to fall below set point, the hot water reheat valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature setpoint.
4. In the event the heat valve is 100% open, air flow is at its maximum valve, and heating set point cannot be maintained, the respective RTU heating set point shall be indexed to a higher setting.
5. A reheat discharge air temperature sensor shall be placed in the duct for monitoring and troubleshooting purposes.

1.15 MISCELLANEOUS CONTROLS

A. Glycol Fill System

1. Monitor high- and low-level sensors through the BAS interface.
2. Pump On/Off and run time alarm.

B. Boiler Room Carbon Monoxide Detection

1. Provide ceiling mounted carbon monoxide detector.
2. Tie detector into BAS system to sound alarm if carbon monoxide is detected.

C. Variable speed controllers

1. Provide the following control points for each variable speed controller.
 - a. Start/stop
 - b. External Speed Reference (0-10V)

- c. Status (Current sensor)
- d. Fault

D. Pump House Monitoring

- 1. Provide a local temperature sensor located in the new pump house.
- 2. An alarm condition shall be energized under a low-level temperature sensing.

E. Provide two new outdoor air and humidity sensors at locations as indicated on the roof plan.

F. Existing Building Monitoring System

- 1. Located in the basement mechanical room is an existing internet interface to the State Museum in Harrisburg.
- 2. The existing monitoring system located high along the side wall of the mechanical room shall remain in place and be fully functional during the renovation project.
- 3. This system shall be reconnected through the upgraded DDC control system with full communications to PSFEI.

1.16 EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. In areas where no new work is occurring, the existing DDC control systems shall remain as currently configured.
- B. In areas where demolition work is occurring, all unnecessary control devices shall be removed.

1.17 EMERGENCY UNIT SHUTDOWN

- A. Air handling systems with capacity greater than 2,000 CFM shall have protection devices installed as follows:
 - 1. Systems with capacity from 2,000 to 15,000 shall have smoke detector in discharge air to shut down system(s) when it senses products of combustion.
- B. Smoke detectors shall be System Sensor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993.11

SECTION 231123

FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Joining materials.
 - 4. Manual gas shutoff valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. An example includes rooftop locations.
- C. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- D. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Corrugated, stainless steel tubing with associated components.
 - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Certificates:
 - 1. Welding certificates.
- C. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Using Agency or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Department no fewer than four days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Department's written permission.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for piping identification for natural-gas piping. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification of Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code.
- B. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings:
 - 1. Single Pressure: 0.5 psig or less.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.

- b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum O-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
5. Mechanical Couplings:
- a. Stainless steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - b. NBR seals.
 - c. Stainless steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - d. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe are to be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1/CSA 6.26.
- 1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
 - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
 - 3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
 - 5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections are to comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
 - 6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.

2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless steel basket with 50 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.5 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - 5. Service Mark: Valves NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 having initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 - 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
 - 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- C. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze.
 - 3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
 - 4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 - 5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
 - 6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 7. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- D. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 - 1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A126, Class B.
 - 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 - 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.

4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
7. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.6 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description and rated pressure of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.
- B. Label and identify gas piping and pressure outside a multitenant building by tenant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping in accordance with the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for preventing accidental ignition.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR PIPING

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Do not install piping in concealed locations unless sleeved with the sleeve open at both ends.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Where installing piping above accessible ceilings, allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Locate valves for easy access. Do not locate valves within return air plenums.
- G. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- K. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- L. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
 - 2. Install sediment trap on both sides of regulators for gas reduction to 2 psig with valve and capped.
- M. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- N. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- O. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- P. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- Q. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- R. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.
- F. Do not install valves in return-air plenums.

3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.

- B. Install hangers for steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for corrugated stainless steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.7 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas-appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to appliances, allow space for service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

3.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas in accordance with the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller is to be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping is to be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

3.11 ABOVEGROUND, MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter are to be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter are to be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance are to be one of the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 232113

HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 2. Steel pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Plastic pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Double wall containment systems.
 - 5. Joining materials.
 - 6. Transition fittings.
 - 7. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Pipe.
 - 2. Fittings.
 - 3. Joining materials.
 - 4. Bypass chemical feeder.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Other building services.
 - 3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Preconstruction Test Reports:

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
2. Double wall Containment Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on water quality.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 100 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Heat Pump Water Piping: 100 psig at 180 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 73 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
5. Air-Vent Piping: 180 deg F.
6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 - 1. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
 - 2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Housing: Copper.
 - 2. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 - 3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 - 4. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- F. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
- G. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- E. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- F. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM or nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- G. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- B. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.

2.5 DOUBLE WALL PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Copper tube and fittings carrier pipe
 - 1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
 - 2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.
 - 3. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 - a. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
 - b. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - a. Housing: Copper.
 - b. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 - c. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 - 5. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
 - 6. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- B. Plastic pipe and fittings conduit pipe
 - 1. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 2. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
 - 3. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- C. Inner Pipe Supports:
 - 1. All pipe shall be aligned and supported within the outer casing with nonmetallic pipe supports, designed to allow free air and fluid movement within the containment pipe.
 - 2. The supports shall be designed and spaced to carry the weight of the carrier pipe full of fluid with a 50% safety factor while allowing the carrier pipe to expand and contract
- D. Accessories
 - 1. 1" fiberglass insulation on carrier pipe.

2. Continuous leak detection system along length of conduit. Cable to be multiple wire, single strand copper conductors insulated with cross linked polyethylene jacket. Cable to be connected to a local alarm module with built in 12 VSC sensing circuit. Power supply to be 120-volt, single phase. Alarm module to be connected to DDC control system via a built in TCP/IP cable connection. Local controller shall have local alarm capability.

2.6 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
- H. Solvent Cements for PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
- b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Description:

- a. Non-conducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

D. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
- b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
- c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed or pressure-seal joints.
2. Schedule 40, Grade B steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40n steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.

- C. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
 - 1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- D. Well-water piping, aboveground, NPS ½” and larger shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Type L drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
 - 2. Schedule 80 CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- E. Heat pump water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Type L drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
 - 4. Schedule 80 CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
 - 5. Double wall piping systems were indicated on drawings.
- F. Heat pump piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 - 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
 - 4. Schedule 80 CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
 - 5. Double wall piping systems where indicated on the drawings.
- G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
 - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or brazed joints.
- H. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M or Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- I. Air-Vent Piping:
 - 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to the following:
 - 1. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
 - 2. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- U. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges, flange kits or nipples.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing and steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

- D. Install hangers for plastic piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Install hangers for fiberglass piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- G. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and steel piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- H. Support vertical runs of fiberglass piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.

2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
 - J. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT (Closed loop, Non-glycol filled systems)

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
 1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. (Contractor shall adjust as required for glycol application.)
 5. Corrosion Inhibitors:
 - a. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
 7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
 9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
 11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.

- c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
- B. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
 - C. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
 - D. Fill systems that have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
 - 1. Heat Pump Piping: Minimum of 25 percent propylene glycol.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 - 1. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 2. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 - 3. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 4. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 - 5. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
 - 1. Open manual valves fully.
 - 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 - 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.

4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232113.13

UNDERGROUND HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Conduit piping system.
- B. See Section 232113 Hydronic Piping for piping materials within buildings and structures.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Conduit piping.
 - 2. Cased piping.
 - 3. Loose-fill insulation.
- B. Shop Drawings: For underground hydronic piping. Signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
 - 1. Calculate requirements for expansion compensation for underground piping.
 - 2. Show expansion compensators, offsets, and loops with appropriate materials to allow piping movement in the required locations. Show anchors and guides that restrain piping movement with calculated loads, and show concrete thrust block dimensions.
 - 3. Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show piping in trench, conduit, and cased pipe with details showing clearances between piping, and show insulation thickness.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet and at vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet. Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing hydronic piping.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Material Test Reports: For conduit or cased piping.

- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide components and installation capable of producing hydronic piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings:
 - 1. Heat Pump Piping: 100 psig at 200 deg F.

2.2 CASED PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated piping with carrier pipe, insulation, and casing.
- B. Carrier Pipe: HDPE or PE pipe and fittings.
- C. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: Rigid, cellular, high-pressure injected between carrier pipe and jacket.
 - a. Comply with ASTM C591; thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.14 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
- D. Casing: HDPE, Filament-wound, fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin or PVC.
- E. Casing accessories include the following:
 - 1. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation, casing sleeve, and shrink-wrap sleeve.
 - 2. Expansion Blanket: Elastomeric foam, formed to fit over piping.
 - 3. End Seals: Shrink wrap the casing material to seal watertight around casing and carrier pipe.

- F. Source Quality Control: Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. See Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATION

- A. Heat Pump Water Piping:

1. NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be any of the following:
 - a. HDPE or PE with adhesive or flanged joints.
2. Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.
 - a. Piping Insulation Thickness: 2 inches.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Remove standing water in the bottom of trench.
- C. Do not backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
- D. Install piping at uniform grade of 0.2 percent. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points and elsewhere as required for system drainage. Install manual air vents at high points.
- E. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. See Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
- I. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. See Section 330500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Conduit and Cased Piping Joints: Assemble sections and finish joints with pourable or split insulation and exterior jacket sleeve, and apply shrink-wrap seals.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during back filling of trenches for underground hydronic piping. Locate tapes 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly over piping. See Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Prepare hydronic piping for testing according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - a. Leave joints uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - b. Fill system with water. Where there is risk of freezing, air or a safe, compatible liquid may be used.
 - c. Use vents installed at high points to release trapped air while filling system.
 - 2. Test hydronic piping as follows:
 - a. Subject hydronic piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure.
 - b. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for 10 minutes, examine joints for leakage. Remake leaking joints using new materials and repeat hydrostatic test until no leaks exist.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 232113.13

SECTION 232113.33

OPEN-LOOP WELL WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes piping for vertical, open well extraction/discharge heat-pump systems.
- B. Existing well casings shall be used for open loop side of system.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 331114 "Open Loop Heat Pump Extraction/Discharge Wells."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Joining method and equipment.
 - 3. Well casing accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Borehole backfilling and drilling operations reports.
- C. Dimensioned site layout.
- D. Startup performance results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Discharge pipe:
 - 1. HDPE Pipe: ASTM D3035.
 - 2. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261, ASTM F1055 PE resin, socket, butt-fusion or electro-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.

- B. Well Pump piping
 - 1. Threaded PVC: Schedule 80, ASTM D1784, ASTM D1785, NSF 14.
 - 2. Stainless steel threaded fitting couplings.
- C. Ground-Loop, Heat-Pump Piping
 - 1. Minimum Working Pressure: 160 psig.
 - 2. Operating Temperature: Between 23 and 104 deg F.
- D. Well Pump Piping
 - 1. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
 - 2. Operating Temperature: Between 23 and 104 deg F.

2.2 BOREHOLE

- A. Remove top 8 feet of casing and replace with 8" diameter casing. Below that point, use existing cased boreholes
- B. Welded pitless adapters with bronze fittings.
- C. Powder coated aluminum water tight well cap for steel casing.
- D. Finish well casings as detailed in the plans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, warning tape, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 HORIZONTAL PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Backfill
- B. Extend at an elevation that is at least 12 inches below frost line.
- C. Install HDPE piping in trenches according to ASTM D2774 or ASTM F645.
 - 1. Clean HDPE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D2657. Minimize number of joints.
- D. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling trenches.
- E. Install continuous detectable warning tape for underground piping. Locate tape a minimum of 24 inches below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.3 BORE HOLE

- A. RegROUT around new well casing using bentonite.

3.4 VERTICAL PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install PVC screw pipe in boreholes according to manufacturer requirements.
- B. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before finishing boreholes.
- C. Install the header piping 48 inches deep and install the horizontal piping from the header to the boreholes.
- D. Extend the horizontal piping and connect to ground-loop heat-pump piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
 - 1. Terminate piping at building wall until building ground-loop heat-pump piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps. Make connections to building ground-loop heat-pump piping systems when those systems are installed.
- E. Backfill the horizontal piping and header trenches.
- F. Maintain records of backfilling on-site.
- G. Mark horizontal runs with metallic locator tape as specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- H. Seal penetrations through building walls.
- I. Wall sleeves are specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- J. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Fill piping 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize piping. Use potable water only.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 1-1/2 times the pipe working-pressure rating or 300 percent of system design pressure, whichever is more, allowing for static pressure of borehole depth.
 - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 30 minutes. Slowly increase to next test pressure increment and hold

for 30 minutes. After testing at maximum test pressure, reduce pressure to 30 psig. Hold for 90 minutes, and measure pressure at 30-minute intervals. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Maintain a minimum pipe velocity of 24 in./s for a minimum of 15 minutes to remove all air.
- C. Flush well casing prior to flow through bag filters and heat exchanger. Make hose connections prior to bag filters and flush system until well water runs clear.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 232113.33

SECTION 232116

HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hydronic specialty valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Air/Dirt Separators and Purgers.
4. Strainers.
5. Glycol fill Station.
6. Chemical Bypass Feeder.
7. Connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for expansion fittings and loops.
2. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for ball valves common to most piping systems.
3. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for check valves common to most piping systems.
4. Section 230923.11 "Control Valves" for automatic control valve and sensor specifications, installation requirements, and locations.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product:

1. Include construction details and material descriptions for hydronic piping specialties.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For hydronic piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Safety Valves and Pressure Vessels: Shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Plastic Ball Valves:

1. Body: Two- or three-piece CPVC to match piping.
2. Ball: Full-port CPVC to match piping.
3. Seats: PTFE.
4. Seals: EPDM.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Handle Style: Tee shape.
7. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
9. Comply with MSS SP-122.

B. Plastic Check Valves:

1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Plug: Resin.
4. Seat: PTFE.
5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Plug: Resin.
4. Seat: PTFE.

5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Body: Bronze or brass.
2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
3. Seat: Brass.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Diaphragm: EPT.
6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
7. Inlet Strainer: Brass, removable without system shutdown.
8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.

4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

C. Bladder-Type ASME Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

D. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

2.3 AIR/DIRT SEPARATORS AND PURGERS

A. Coalescing-Type Air and Dirt Separators:

1. Full flow coalescing type air eliminator and dirt separator.
2. Tank: Fabricated steel tank; ASME constructed and stamped for 150 psig working pressure and 270 deg F maximum operating temperature.
3. Coalescing Medium: Copper core tube with continuous wound copper wire permanently affixed.
4. Internal design to suppress turbulence.
5. Provide air elimination efficiency of 100% free air, 100% entrained air, and 99.6% dissolved air.
6. Dirt separation efficiency shall be a minimum of 80% of all particles 30 micron and larger within 100 passes.
7. Separate venting chamber to prevent system contaminants from harming the float and venting valve operation. At the top of the venting chamber shall be an integral full port float actuated brass venting mechanism.
8. Air Vent: Threaded to top of separator.
9. Inline Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; Class 150 flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
10. Blowdown Connection: Threaded to bottom of separator.
11. Size: Match system flow capacity.

2.4 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2.5 GLYCOL FILL STATION

A. Provide a duplex Glycol Auto-Fill Unit to automatically provide glycol make-up water for HVAC systems.

B. Unit shall be suitable for all bladder and compression tanks up to 90 psi (621 kPa) cold-fill pressure

C. Materials

1. Unit shall have a fully enclosed polypropylene tank and housing assembly. The specially molded mixing tank shall include a compact package with built-in housing for controls and make-up pump
2. The unit shall include an all bronze pump with bronze isolation and check valves. Pumps shall be duplex configuration, and shall include suction strainers.
3. Interconnecting piping shall be galvanized pipe and wrought galvanized fittings.
4. Water and glycol fill valves shall be 304 stainless steel ball valves with brass balls.
5. Unit shall be capable of operating to a maximum fluid temperature of 40°F (60°C), and in a maximum ambient temperature of 104°F (40°C). Maximum system operating pressure of 150 psig.
6. Unit shall automatically provide glycol make-up upon a drop in system pressure.
 - a. The unit shall monitor and maintain the minimum system pressure at all times.
 - b. A low and high mixture cut-out level switches shall monitor the status of the mixing tank.
 - c. Level switches shall be 24 volts maximum to ensure intrinsic electrical safety.
 - d. Pumps shall be 120-volt, single phase units.
 - e. Duplex pumps and motors with automatic alternating pump controller and 'hand-off-automatic' pump operation switch.
 - f. Controls shall be BACnet compatible.

2.6 Chemical Bypass Feeders

1. Provide steel feeders with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
2. Unit shall include bag filter kit. Provide six spare bags.
3. Capacity: 5 gal.
4. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
5. Unit similar to Vector FA-100ALTC or equal.

2.7 CONNECTORS

A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

B. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.
- E. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- F. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.
- G. Install glycol fill unit in location as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Unit shall be set on concrete housekeeping pad.
 - 2. Provide cold water fill connection with pressure reducing station and reduced pressure back flow preventer.
 - 3. Make necessary power connections.
- H. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating system.
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps.
 - 2. Install a full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
 - 3. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.
- I.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232123

HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Separately coupled, horizontally mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 3. Separately coupled, vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps.
 - 4. Wet-rotor pumps.
 - 5. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on drawings.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange or union-end connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve or Stainless steel.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N, EPT or Viton bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings or Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type.
- D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled or Totally enclosed, air over.
 - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron, Cast aluminum or Rolled steel.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated or Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
 - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
 - e. Service Factor: 1.15.

2.2 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

- A. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch-minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

- B. Capacities and Characteristics: As required for unit served.

2.3 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern.
2. 175 psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve:

1. Angle or straight pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.
- E. Equipment Mounting:

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- F. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers or spring hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install check valve and throttling valve with memory stop or triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

SECTION 232533

HVAC WELL-WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following HVAC water-filtration equipment:
 - 1. Bag- or cartridge-type filters.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TSS: Total suspended solids include both organic and inorganic solids that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bag- or cartridge-type filters.
- B. Shop Drawings: Softeners and filtration equipment, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Water-Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, water softeners, RO equipment, water-filtration units, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUPLEX BAG-TYPE FILTERS

- A. Description: Filtrek S4SLDV212-3F-V2-150 ASME rated Floor-mounted duplex housing with filter bags or cartridges for removing particles from water.
1. Housing: Corrosion resistant; designed to separate inlet from outlet and to direct inlet through bag or cartridge-type water filter; with bag support and base, feet, or skirt.
 - a. Pipe Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - b. Steel Housing Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges in accordance with ASME B16.5 or grooved in accordance with AWWA C606
 - c. Built in bypass inlet and discharge valves.
 - d. Pressure gages with pet cocks.
 - e. Ball valve type drain valve with hose connections.
 - f. Pressure relief valve for filter change.
 2. Bag: Replaceable; of shape to fit housing.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. Filter Design:
 - a. Filtrek MPG-PO-5-2 -BN
 - b. Water-Flow Rate: 100 gpm.
 - c. Filtration Efficiency: 99 percent.
 - d. Particle Size: 5 microns and larger.
 - e. Clean Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
 - f. Pressure Loss at Replacement: 6 psig.
 2. Housing:
 - a. Material: 304 Stainless steel.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Seal Material: BUNA N.
 - d. Diameter: 7 inches.
 - e. Overall Height or Length (w/ feet): 52".
 - f. Inlet and Outlet Size: 2" NPS.
 - g. Drain Size: 1/2" NPS.
 - h. Bag Support Basket Material: Stainless steel.
 3. Pleated Bag
 - a. Number Required: 2 per housing.
 - b. Nominal Diameter: 6.625 inches.
 - c. Nominal Length: 26 inches.
 - d. Media Material: Polypropylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-filtration equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-filtration equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Provide backflow preventer in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-filtration system into operation, and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.

7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

END OF SECTION 232533

SECTION 233113

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealant and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
 2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
 3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
 - 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
 - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
 - 6. Fittings.
 - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
 - 8. Seam and joint construction.
 - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
 - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
 - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Welding certificates.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 - 2. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
 - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: White.
 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested according to ASTM C 518.
 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.
 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile

Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 - 2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
 - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 - 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 - 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - 3. Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Department from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Department from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Department from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Department from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Department, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

- a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.

3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated.

- B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units <Insert equipment>:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.

- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

C. Return Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.

G. Liner:

- 1. Supply Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric or Natural fiber, 1 inch thick.
- 2. Return Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric or Natural fiber, 1 inch thick.
- 3. Supply Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric or Natural fiber, 1 inch thick.
- 4. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric or Natural fiber, 2 inch thick.

H. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-

1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

- 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
- 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.

- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.

I. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume dampers.
 - 3. Control dampers.
 - 4. Fire dampers.
 - 5. Ceiling radiation dampers.
 - 6. Flange connectors.
 - 7. Duct silencers.
 - 8. Turning vanes.
 - 9. Remote damper operators.
 - 10. Duct-mounted access doors.
 - 11. Flexible connectors.
 - 12. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Duct security bars.
 - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Description: Gravity balanced.

- B. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- C. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg.
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- F. Blade Action: Parallel.
- G. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- H. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- L. Accessories:
 - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 - 3. Electric actuators.
 - 4. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
 - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
 - 5. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 - 6. Screen Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 7. Screen Type: Insect.
 - 8. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
 - 2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
 - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 4. Frames:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.

- c. Mitered and welded corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
- a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
- a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Blade Seals: Vinyl.
9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
11. Accessories:
- a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

- 1. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
- 2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
- 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
- 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
 - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.
- 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- 7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 8. Blade Seals: Vinyl.
- 9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
- 10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- 11. Accessories:

- a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- C. Jackshaft:
 - 1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
 - 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
 - 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- D. Damper Hardware:
 - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
 - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
 - 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- B. Frames:
 - 1. Hat shaped.
 - 2. 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
 - 3. Mitered and welded corners.
- C. Blades:
 - 1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width as required.
 - 2. Parallel- or opposed-blade design, as required.
 - 3. Galvanized-steel.
 - 4. 0.064 inch thick single skin or 0.0747-inch-thick dual skin.
 - 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
 - 6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
 - 1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. Bearings:
 - 1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream or Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05, 0.138 inch or 0.39 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
 - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- or 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.8 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Factory fabricated.
 - 2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E84.
 - 3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Shape:

1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
 2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
 3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
 4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
- C. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel, 0.034 inch-thick.
- D. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch thick.
 2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch thick.
 3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: 0.05 inch thick.
 4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch thick.
- E. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 galvanized sheet metal, 0.034 inch-thick, and with 1/8-inch-diameter perforations.
- F. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:
1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
 2. Film-lined type with fill material.
 - a. Fill Material: 100% environmentally friendly and constructed of recycled natural fiber materials. Fibers to be treated with EPA registered fungal inhibitor capable of preventing mold, mildew, fungi and pest protection. Material shall be free of harmful chemicals, irritants and VOC's capable of off-gassing.
 - b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, and heat sealed before assembly.
 3. Lining: Mylar.
- H. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.
1. Joints: Lock formed and sealed.
 2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
 3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.
- I. Accessories:
1. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.
- J. Source Quality Control: Test according to ASTM E477.
1. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.
 2. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

2.9 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.
- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.10 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- B. Tubing: Brass, Copper or Aluminum.
- C. Cable: Stainless steel.
- D. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed or Surface as required.
- E. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.11 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

- a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
- b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
- c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside handles.
- d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

2.13 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Non-insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181 Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
 1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181 Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
 1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:
 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft and/or control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct security bars. Construct duct security bars from 0.164-inch steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints and 1/2-inch-diameter steel bars, 6 inches o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld 2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1/4-inch steel angle to 4 sides and both ends of sleeve. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
- I. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure

relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.

7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

L. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

M. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233713.13

AIR DIFFUSERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
 - 2. Linear slot diffusers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
 - 2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.

3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROUND CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- B. Material: Aluminum.
- C. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
- D. Face Style: As scheduled.
- E. Mounting: Duct connection.
- F. Pattern: Fully adjustable.
- G. Dampers: Combination damper and grid.
- H. Accessories:
 1. Equalizing grid.
 2. Sectorizing baffles.
 3. Operating rod extension.

2.2 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- B. Material: Aluminum.
- C. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
- D. Face Style: As scheduled.
- E. Mounting: Surface or Snap in.
- F. Pattern: Fixed.
- G. Dampers: Combination damper and grid.
- H. Accessories:

1. Equalizing grid.
2. Sectorizing baffles.
3. Operating rod extension.

2.3 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS

- A. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- B. Material - Shell: Aluminum, insulated.
- C. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
- D. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
- E. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
- F. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
- G. Slot Width: 3/4 inch or 1 inch.
- H. Number of Slots: As scheduled.
- I. Length: As scheduled.
- J. Accessories: T-bar slot, Center notch, T-bar on inlet side or T-bar on both sides.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final

locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Department for a determination of final location.

- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

SECTION 233713.23

REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fixed face registers and grilles.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
 - 2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For registers and grilles with factory-applied color finishes. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

- D. Samples for Verification: For registers and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Smallest size register and grille indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.

4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REGISTERS

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
3. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal or Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal or Vertical spaced 3/4 inch or 1/2 inch apart.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Concealed.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
9. Accessories:
 - a. Front or Rear-blade gang operator.

B. Fixed Face Register:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
3. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal or Vertical spaced 3/4 inch or 1/2 inch apart.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Concealed.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.2 GRILLES

A. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Department.
3. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal or Vertical; spaced 3/4 inch or 1/2 inch apart.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Concealed.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Department for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

SECTION 235216

CONDENSING BOILERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired, fire-tube condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and sections, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- E. Product Certificates:

1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.
2. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.
 1. Warranty Period for Wall-Hung Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
 - a. Heat Exchanger and Tank: Free from defects in material and workmanship.
 - b. Warranty Coverage: Prorated Year 0 to 5 - 100 percent; Year 6 to 7 - 50 percent; Year 8 to 9 - 30 percent; Year 10 - 10 percent from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 431, Subpart E, Appendix N.
- D. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.

2.2 FLOOR-MOUNTED, FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube, forced-draft, condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls.
 1. Units are to be for water-heating service only.

- B. The boiler shall be an HTP model 650 FBN or equal, having a modulation input range of 650,000 Btu/Hr, and shall operate on Natural Gas (NG).
 - 1. The boiler shall be capable of full modulation with a turndown ratio of up to 10:1.
 - 2. The boiler shall have 97% AFUE Rating.
- C. The boiler heat exchanger shall be certified and stamped for 160PSI and shall be National Board Listed.
 - 1. There shall be no banding material, bolts, gaskets, or “O” rings in the header configuration.
 - 2. The heat exchanger shall be removable from the cabinet for replacement without removing the entire boiler assembly from the site.
 - 3. The stainless-steel combustion chamber shall be designed to direct condensate to the rear of the chamber to ensure that condensation does not collect in the boiler.
 - 4. The complete heat exchanger assembly shall have a ten (10) year extended limited warranty.
- D. The boiler shall be certified and listed by ETL under the latest edition of the harmonized ANSI Z21.13 test standard for the US and Canada.
 - 1. The boiler shall comply with the energy efficiency requirements of the latest edition of the ASHRAE 90.1 Standard and the minimum efficiency requirements of the latest edition of the ASHRAE 103 Standard.
 - 2. The boiler shall operate at up to 97% thermal efficiency. The boiler shall be certified for indoor or outdoor installations.
- E. The boiler shall be constructed with a heavy gauge steel jacket assembly, primed and pre-painted on both sides.
 - 1. The boiler jacket shall afford easy access to all components through easily removable access doors to facilitate service of all components.
 - 2. The combustion chamber shall be sealed and completely enclosed, independent of the outer jacket assembly, so that integrity of the outer jacket does not affect a proper seal.
 - 3. A burner/flame observation port shall be provided.
 - 4. The burner shall be a premix design and constructed of high-grade stainless-steel with modulating firing rates.
 - 5. The boiler shall be supplied with a gas valve designed with a negative pressure regulation pneumatic gas valve and be equipped with a variable speed blower system to precisely control the fuel/air mixture to provide modulating boiler firing rates for maximum efficiency.
 - 6. The boiler shall operate in a safe condition at a derated output with gas supply pressures as low as 3 ½ inches of water column.
- F. The customer connection board shall be equipped with two types of screw connectors.
 - 1. The smaller green terminal blocks shall be designated for low voltage connection inputs including thermostat, DHW sensor, system sensor, outdoor sensor, 0-10VDC, external low water cut off input signals, bus wiring connections, and Low Voltage Output 0-10 volt - A (Modulating Pump Output) and Low Voltage B (see the status of various

parameters through 0-10VDC output for the Fan Speed - Boiler Power - Cascade Power Alarm Status or Target temperature).

2. The larger black barrier strips shall be designated for 120-volt connections for incoming power, central heat pump (CH), DHW pump (indirect water heater), and system pump operation with additional double pole relay rated at 5 amp for Alarm Output.
3. The three pump outputs shall be 2-amp fuse protected.
4. The control cabinet shall also include two RJ-45 style jacks for cascade communication bus wiring using CAT 5 or CAT 3 cables. These connections and fuses are accessed from the outside of the boiler by removing an access door.
5. The electrical supply shall be 120 volt / 60 hertz / 20A single phase.
6. Two additional electrical connections shall be provided internal to the boiler cabinet for the connection of optional high and low gas pressure switches.
7. The boiler shall come equipped with an Integrated UL 353 certified CSD-1 compliant low water cut-off with manual reset.
8. An outdoor sensor shall be supplied with the boiler.

G. The boiler shall utilize a 120 VAC control circuit and components

1. The control system shall have a seven-inch (7") color touch screen display for boiler setup, status, and diagnostics.
2. All components shall be easily accessed and serviceable from the front, right, and left sides of the jacket. The boiler shall be supplied with a high resolution flow switch to ensure minimum flow rates through the heat exchanger, temperature/pressure gauge, ASME certified pressure relief valve, Dual Water Supply Temperature Sensor / High Limit (210oF), return water temperature sensor, blocked vent pressure switch, flue temperature sensor, built-in freeze protection, and an optional high limit temperature control with manual reset.
3. The boiler shall also be equipped with an outdoor temperature reset function.

H. The boiler shall include a special link system as standard equipment.

1. The link shall offer a WiFi connection, allowing the user to remotely monitor boiler operation, change system parameters to maximize boiler efficiency, and alerting the user when system issues occur to aid in troubleshooting.
2. The boiler shall include an ON/OFF power switch and feature the 928 intelligent control system with color touch screen display with graphic indicators for System Pump, DHW Pump, Boiler Pump, Pump Service Mode, Flame On, and Fault Indication.
3. Pump operation and the combustion system can be manually operated to assist the installer in system commissioning.
4. The control shall have password protection for the installer to set limits and configure outdoor reset.
5. The control shall have freeze protection, outdoor reset, indirect priority with operation time limits, and a 0-10V DC input for building management system (i.e. programmable to control either boiler temperature or firing).
6. The boiler control shall have a gateway device which will allow integration of Modbus or BACnet Protocols.

I. The boiler shall be equipped with a condensate collection system equipped with an internal float switch which will protect the boiler from condensation backing up into the combustion chamber.

1. The condensate collection system shall be equipped with a 2" NPT threaded cleanout port to allow for easy cleaning and sediment removal.
- J. The boiler shall have a sealed combustion system, taking outside air for combustion and exhausting the flue gas with a 6" adapter.
1. The Category IV vent system may be constructed with Stainless Steel, PVC, CPVC, or Polypropylene.
 2. The boiler's total combined equivalent vent length, including fitting allowances for both intake and exhaust, shall not exceed 125 feet.
- K. The boiler shall comply with the NOx emissions limit set forth in SCAQMD Rule 1146.2.
1. The manufacturer shall verify proper operation of the burner, the combustion and control systems, as well as all related safety functions, to ensure the boiler will operate based on its designed parameters before shipping.
 2. Complete operating and installation instructions shall be furnished with every boiler as packaged by the manufacturer for shipping.
- L. The appliance shall operate at high elevations without additional parts; however, adjustments to the combustion system may be required at any elevation.
1. See installation manual for combustion system setting details.

2.3 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.9.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit with manual reset.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- F. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- G. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- H. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.

1. High Cutoff: Manual reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual-reset type.
 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch factory mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
1. A BACnet communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. All monitoring and control features, which are available at the local boiler control panel, shall also be available at the remote operator workstation through the building automation system.

2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
 4. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs.
 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker with lockout capability.
 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

2.6 VENTING KITS

- A. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A959, Type 29-4C stainless steel elbow and vent adapter, condensate trap and dilution tank, and sealant.
- B. Use Schedule 40 PVC fittings, primed and cemented for vent system.
- C. Combustion-Air Intake: Complete system, PVC Schedule 40 pipe and fittings, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and primer/cement.

2.7 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing tank assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections. Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.
- B. Tank features:
 - 1. All corrosion-resistant material.
 - 2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
 - 3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
 - 4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.
- C. Capsule Configuration:
 - 1. Low-profile design for applications where boiler condensate drain is close to the floor.
 - 2. Easily removed and opened for neutralizing agent replacement.
 - 3. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.
- D. Tank Configuration:
 - 1. Utilized where boiler is elevated or where tank is installed in a pit with tank top flush with floor.
 - 2. Top easily removed for neutralizing agent replacement.
 - 3. Internal baffles to channel flow for complete neutralization.
 - 4. Integral bypass to prevent condensate backflow into appliance.
 - 5. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- D. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.

- F. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- G. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Boiler Venting:
 - 1. Install flue-venting kit and combustion-air intake.
 - 2. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 3. Connect boiler vent full size to boiler connections.
 - 4. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- D. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training." Video record the training sessions and provide electronic copy to Department.
 - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
 - 2. Provide not less than two hours of training.
 - 3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
 - 4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Obtain Department sign-off that training is complete.
 - 6. Department training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 235216

SECTION 235700

HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes plate heat exchangers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TEMA: Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints and for designing bases.
 - 2. Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Tube-removal space.
 - 2. Structural members to which heat exchangers will be attached.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for heat exchanger, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Heat Exchanger: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of heat exchanger anchorage devices on which certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of shell-and-tube heat exchanger. Documentation that shell-and-tube heat exchangers comply with "TEMA Standards."
 - D. Source quality-control reports.
 - E. Field quality-control reports.
 - F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For heat exchangers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of domestic-water heat exchangers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including heat exchanger, storage tank, and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Plate, Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers:
 - 1) Plate-and-Frame Type: One year(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic restraints for heat exchangers.

2.2 GASKETED-PLATE HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Configuration: Freestanding assembly consisting of frame support, top and bottom carrying and guide bars, fixed and movable end plates, tie rods, individually removable plates, and one-piece gaskets.
- B. Construction: Fabricate and label heat exchangers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.
- C. Frame:
 - 1. Capacity to accommodate 20 percent additional plates.
 - 2. Painted carbon steel with provisions for anchoring to support.
- D. Top and Bottom Carrying and Guide Bars: Painted carbon steel, aluminum, or stainless steel.
 - 1. Fabricate attachment of heat-exchanger carrying and guide bars with reinforcement strong enough to resist heat-exchanger movement during seismic event when heat-exchanger carrying and guide bars are anchored to building structure.
- E. End-Plate Material: Painted carbon steel.
- F. Tie Rods and Nuts: Steel or stainless steel.
- G. Plate Material: 0.031 inch thick before stamping; Type 316 stainless steel.
- H. Gasket Materials: EPDM rubber.
 - 1. Glue: Chlorine free.
- I. Piping Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with heat-exchanger shell. Attach tappings to shell before testing and labeling.
 - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- J. Enclose plates in solid stainless-steel removable shroud.
- K. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the drawings.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Factory or Field-fabricated steel supports to ensure both horizontal and vertical support of heat exchanger. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Shroud: Steel, Stainless-steel or Aluminum sheet.

C. Pressure Relief Valves: Bronze or Brass, ASME rated and stamped.

1. Pressure relief valve setting: 150 psig.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect heat exchangers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1. Affix ASME label.

B. Hydrostatically test heat exchangers to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Heat exchangers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and for structural rigidity, strength, anchors, and other conditions affecting performance of heat exchangers.

B. Examine roughing-in for heat-exchanger piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 GASKETED-PLATE HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

A. Install gasketed-plate heat exchanger on custom-designed wall supports anchored to structure as indicated on Drawings.

B. Install metal shroud over installed gasketed-plate heat exchanger according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for tube removal, service, and maintenance.

C. Install piping adjacent to heat exchangers to allow space for service and maintenance of heat exchangers. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers.

- D. Install shutoff valves at heat-exchanger inlet and outlet connections.
- E. Install relief valves on heat-exchanger heated-fluid connection and install pipe relief valves, full size of valve connection, to floor drain.
- F. Install vacuum breaker at heat-exchanger steam inlet connection.
- G. Install hose end valve to drain shell.
- H. Install thermometer on heat-exchanger and inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- I. Install pressure gages on heat-exchanger and heating-fluid piping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Heat exchanger will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fitting and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION 235700

SECTION 237416.13

PACKAGED ROOFTOP HEAT PUMP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Other sections:
 - 1. 230993.11 SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans, variable frequency drives, and motors.
 - 3. Coils.
 - 4. Refrigerant circuit components including DX system controls.
 - 5. Air filtration.
 - 6. Heat Exchanger
 - 7. Dampers.
 - 8. Electrical power connections.
 - 9. Factory installed Automated Logic Controls (controls provided by DDC contractor.)
 - 10. Roof curbs (including custom curb.).
 - 11. Accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged rooftop water source heat pump air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.

5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 8. Include water to refrigerant heat exchanger performance characteristics.
 9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting/attachment details.
 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. System startup reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: 1 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Unit Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) shall be equal to or greater than that prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- D. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- E. Unit shall be certified in accordance with UL Standard 1995/CSA C22.2 No. 236, Safety Standard for Heating and Cooling Equipment.
- F. Unit and refrigeration system shall comply with ASHRAE 15, Safety Standard for Mechanical Refrigeration.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. R-410A refrigerant
- B. Variable capacity compressor with 10-100% capacity control
- C. Direct drive supply fans
- D. Belt driven exhaust fans
- E. 100% Outside air intake
- F. 100% Exhaust fan section with barometric damper
- G. Double wall cabinet construction
- H. Insulation with a minimum R-value of 13
- I. Stainless steel drain pans

2.3 ROOFTOP UNITS

- A. General Description
 - 1. Packaged rooftop unit shall include compressors, evaporator coils, filters, supply fans, dampers, water-cooled condenser, exhaust fans, and unit controls.

2. Unit shall be factory assembled and tested including leak testing of the DX coils, pressure testing of the refrigeration circuit, and run testing of the completed unit. Run test report shall be supplied with the unit in the service compartment's literature pocket.
3. Unit shall have decals and tags to indicate lifting and rigging, service areas and caution areas for safety and to assist service personnel.
4. Unit components shall be labeled, including refrigeration system components, and electrical and controls components.
5. Estimated sound power levels (dB) shall be shown on the unit ratings sheet.
6. Installation, Operation, and Maintenance manual shall be supplied within the unit.
7. Laminated color-coded wiring diagram shall match factory installed wiring and shall be affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.
8. Unit nameplate shall be provided in two locations on the unit, affixed to the exterior of the unit and affixed to the interior of the control compartment's hinged access door.

B. Construction

1. All cabinet walls, access doors, and roof shall be fabricated of double wall, impact resistant, rigid polyurethane foam panels.
2. Unit insulation shall have a minimum thermal resistance R-value of 13. Foam insulation shall have a minimum density of 2 pounds/cubic foot and shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1929-11 for a minimum flash ignition temperature of 610°F.
3. Unit construction shall be double wall with G90 galvanized steel on both sides and a thermal break. Double wall construction with a thermal break prevents moisture accumulation on the insulation, provides a cleanable interior, reduces heat transfer through the panel, and prevents exterior condensation on the panel.
4. Unit shall be designed to reduce air leakage and infiltration through the cabinet. Cabinet leakage shall not exceed 1% of total airflow when tested at 3 times the minimum external static pressure provided in AHRI Standard 340/360. Panel deflection shall not exceed L/240 ratio at 125% of design static pressure, at a maximum 8 inches of positive or negative static pressure, to reduce air leakage. Deflection shall be measured at the midpoint of the panel height and width. Continuous sealing shall be included between panels and between access doors and openings to reduce air leakage. Piping and electrical conduit through cabinet panels shall include sealing to reduce air leakage.
5. Roof of the air tunnel shall be sloped to provide complete drainage. Cabinet shall have rain break overhangs above access doors.
6. Access to filters, dampers, cooling coils, compressors, water-cooled condensers, and electrical and controls components shall be through hinged access doors with quarter turn, zinc cast, lockable handles. Full length stainless steel piano hinges shall be included on the doors.
7. Exterior paint finish shall be capable of withstanding at least 2,500 hours, with no visible corrosive effects, when tested in a salt spray and fog atmosphere in accordance with ASTM B 117-95 test procedure.
8. Units with cooling coils shall include double sloped 304 stainless steel drain pans.
9. Unit shall be provided with base discharge and return air openings. All openings through the base pan of the unit shall have upturned flanges of at least 1/2 inch in height around the opening.
10. Unit shall include lifting lugs on the top of the unit.

C. Electrical

1. Unit shall have a 5kAIC SCCR.

2. Unit shall be provided with factory installed and factory wired, non-fused disconnect switch.
3. Unit shall be provided with a factory installed and factory wired 115V, 12 amp GFI outlet disconnect switch in the unit control panel.
4. Unit shall be provided with phase and brown out protection which shuts down all motors in the unit if the electrical phases are more than 10% out of balance on voltage, the voltage is more than 10% under design voltage or on phase reversal.

D. Supply Fans

1. Unit shall include direct drive, unhooded, backward curved, plenum supply fans.
2. Blowers and motors shall be dynamically balance and mounted on rubber isolators.
3. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points.
4. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.

E. Exhaust Fans

1. Exhaust dampers shall be sized for 100% relief.
2. Fans and motors shall be dynamically balanced.
3. Unit shall include barometric relief dampers.
4. Motors shall be premium efficiency ODP with ball bearings rated for 200,000 hours service with external lubrication points.
5. Access to exhaust fans shall be through double wall, hinged access doors with quarter turn lockable handles.
6. RTU-1 shall include direct drive fans. RTU-3 shall include belt driven, forward curved exhaust fans.
7. Variable frequency drives shall be factory wired and mounted in the unit. Fan motors shall be premium efficiency.

F. Cooling Coils

1. Evaporator Coils
 - a. Coils shall be designed for use with R-410A refrigerant and constructed of copper tubes with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to the tubes and galvanized steel end casings. Fin design shall be sine wave rippled.
 - b. Coil shall be standard capacity.
 - c. Coils shall have interlaced circuitry and shall be standard capacity.
 - d. Coils shall be hydrogen or helium leak tested.
 - e. Coils shall be furnished with factory installed expansion valves.

G. Refrigeration System

1. Unit shall be factory charged with R-410A refrigerant.
2. Compressors shall be scroll type with thermal overload protection and carry a 5 year non-prorated warranty, from the date of original equipment shipment from the factory.
3. Compressors shall be mounted in an isolated service compartment which can be accessed without affecting unit operation. Lockable hinged compressor access doors shall be

- fabricated of double wall, rigid polyurethane foam injected panels to prevent the transmission of noise outside the cabinet.
4. Compressors shall be isolated from the base pan with the compressor manufacturer's recommended rubber vibration isolators, to reduce any transmission of noise from the compressors into the building area.
 5. Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with expansion valve type refrigerant flow control.
 6. Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with automatic reset low pressure and manual reset high pressure refrigerant safety controls, Schrader type service fittings on both the high pressure and low pressure sides and a factory installed liquid line filter driers.
 7. In single compressor units, a variable capacity scroll compressor on the refrigeration circuit which shall be capable of modulation from 10-100% of its capacity.
 8. In multiple compressor units, a variable capacity scroll compressor on the lead refrigeration circuit which shall be capable of modulation from 10-100% of its capacity and an on/off compressor on the lag refrigeration circuit.
 9. Unit shall include factory provided and installed compressor sound jackets on all compressors.
 10. Unit shall be configured as a water-source heat pump. Refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with a factory installed liquid line filter drier with check valve, reversing valve, and expansion valves on both the indoor coil and refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger. Reversing valve shall energize during the heat pump cooling mode of operation.
 11. Unit shall be configured as a water-source heat pump. Each refrigeration circuit shall be equipped with a factory installed liquid line filter drier with check valve, reversing valve, and expansion valves on both the indoor coil and refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger. Reversing valve shall energize during the heat pump cooling mode of operation.
 12. Unit shall be provided with a fixed 55F compressor lockout.

H. Water-Cooled Condensers

1. Water-cooled condensing section shall contain plate type, heat exchangers located in an insulated vestibule. Heat exchangers shall be circuited in a counter flow arrangement to the refrigerant system. Plates shall be stainless steel. Each heat exchanger shall be provided with a removable and cleanable type, basket filter on the waterside circuit. Field piping connections shall be made at each plate heat exchanger within the condensing section of the rooftop unit. Maximum operating pressure on the water side of the condenser shall be 125 psi.
2. All field installed piping shall be hydrostatically tested before being put into service. Test pressure shall be 125 psi for a 2 hour duration. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects. If test fails, corrections shall be made to the system and the test shall then be repeated to make certain all defects were corrected. All testing shall be performed to ASTM Standards.
3. Each heat exchanger circuit shall have a flow switch that shuts down the compressors if water flow to the condenser is interrupted
4. Unit shall include factory installed head pressure control module and each heat exchanger shall include factory installed head pressure control valve which modulates the condenser water flow based on head pressure and allows cooling operation below 65°F condenser water temperature.

I. Filters

1. Unit shall include 4-inch thick, pleated panel filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 14, upstream of the cooling coil. Unit shall also include 2-inch thick, pleated panel pre filters with an ASHRAE MERV rating of 8, upstream of the 4 inch standard filters.
2. Unit shall include a clogged filter switch.
3. Unit shall include a Magnehelic gauge mounted in the controls compartment.

J. Outside Air/Economizer

1. Unit shall include 0-100% economizer consisting of a motor operated outside air damper and return air damper assembly constructed of extruded aluminum, hollow core, airfoil blades with rubber edge seals and aluminum end seals. Damper blades shall be gear driven and designed to have no more than 20 cfm of leakage per sq ft. at 4 in. w.g. air pressure differential across the damper. Low leakage dampers shall be Class 2 AMCA certified, in accordance with AMCA Standard 511. Damper assembly shall be controlled by spring return DDC actuator. Unit shall include outside air opening bird screen, outside air hood, and relief dampers.

K. Accessories

1. Unit shall be provided with a safety shutdown terminal block for field installation of a smoke detector which shuts off the unit's control circuit.

2.4 CURBS

- A. Curbs shall to be fully gasketed between the curb top and unit bottom with the curb providing full perimeter support, cross structure support and air seal for the unit. Curb gasket shall be furnished within the control compartment of the rooftop unit to be mounted on the curb immediately before mounting of the rooftop unit.
- B. Knockdown curb (with duct support rails) shall be factory furnished for field assembly.
- C. Solid bottom curb shall be factory assembled and fully lined with curb rated 1 inch fiberglass insulation and include a wood nailer strip.
 1. Curb shall be adjustable up to 3/4 inch per foot to allow for sloped roof applications.
- D. For RTU-3, provide a custom curb. Provide solid bottom plenum curb with extended base to allow supply and return alignment with existing roof penetrations. Field verify dimensions prior to fabrication. Supply and return openings to be field cut in curb base by installing contractor.

2.5 CONTROLS

- A. Factory Installed DDC Controls. DDC controller to be furnished to Aeon for factory installation by Aeon.
- B. Provide factory mounted 100 VA control transformer.

- C. Coordinate with Automated logic for foot print of DDC provide controller. Unit manufacturer to set same and provide termination strip.
- D. Isolation relays shall be factory installed.
- E. Provide internal refrigerant system control for both heating and cooling for proper interface to variable air flow. Control shall eliminate short cycling and minimize cycle off time.
 - 1. On a call for mechanical cooling or heating, the compressor speed shall be modulated to maintain discharge set point.
 - 2. To prevent short cycling, the stage shall have a user definable (adj.) minimum runtime. The compressor shall run subject to its own internal safeties and controls.
 - 3. The compressor shall be disabled and remain off for 30sec (adj.) after the reversing valve has changed position
- F. Unit shall be provided with a safety shutdown terminal block for field installation of a smoke detector which shuts off the unit's control circuit.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Outdoor air intake weather hood with moisture eliminator.
- B. Service Lights and Switch: Factory installed in each accessible section with weatherproof cover. Factory wire lights to a single-point field connection.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 - 2. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs
- B. AMCA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
 - 2. Damper leakage tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.
 - 3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.

- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. **Roof Curb:** Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- B. **Unit Support:** Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. **Equipment Mounting:**
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B88, Type M (ASTM B88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. **Heat Pump Loop Piping:** Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- F. Provide heat trace and insulation to protect piping systems in units as indicated on the plans.

3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
 - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
 - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Electrical contractor to make separate power connection to unit service lights furnished with units.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
 4. Inspect internal insulation.
 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 8. Verify that filters are installed.
 9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
 10. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
 11. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
 12. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
 13. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 14. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 15. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- a. Start refrigeration system.
 - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
 - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
16. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
 17. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
 18. Calibrate thermostats.
 19. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
 20. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
 21. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
 - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
 22. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
 23. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Return-air volume.
 - c. Relief-air volume.
 - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
 24. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
 - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
 25. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
 - a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
 - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
 - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
 - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
 - e. Relief-air fan operation.
 - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
 26. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.13

SECTION 237433

DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS (FAHU-1)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Other sections:
 - 1. 230993.11 Sequence Of Operations.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes Packaged Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Units with integral heating and cooling for rooftop installation.
 - 1. Integral heat source shall be electric air-to-air heat pump with hot water heat coil.
 - 2. Integral cooling source shall be electric air-to-air heat pump
 - 3. Airflow arrangement shall be Outdoor and Exhaust Air only.
- B. Within this document, FAHU-1 may be referred to as Energy Recovery Unit (ERU) for brevity

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type or model of Packaged Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Unit with Integral Heat Pump, include the following:
 - 1. Complete fan performance curves for both Supply Air and Exhaust Air, with system operating conditions indicated, as tested in an AMCA Certified Chamber.
 - 2. Sound performance data for both Supply Air and Exhaust Air, as tested in an AMCA Certified chamber.
 - 3. Energy wheel performance data for both summer and winter operation.
 - 4. AHRI Certified coil performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated. Ratings shall be in accordance with Standard 410.
 - 5. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics and motor and fan accessories.
 - 6. Combined efficiency data per ARI Guideline V-2003 for each model. Data shall include RER, COP, Unitary Net Cooling, Unitary EER and CEF.
 - 7. Material types and gauges of all component pieces and assemblies.
 - 8. Dimensioned drawings for each type of installation, showing isometric and plan views, to include location of attached ductwork and service clearance requirements.
 - 9. Estimated gross weight of each installed unit.
 - 10. Installation, Operating and Maintenance manual (IOM) for each model.
 - 11. Microprocessor Controller specifications to include available options and operating protocols. Include complete data on all factory-supplied input devices.
 - 12. Remote Panel description to include all functions. You may specify a Remote Panel in lieu of a Microprocessor Controller.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof-curb mounting details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Size and location of unit-mounted rails and anchor points and methods for anchoring units to roof curb.
 2. Required roof penetrations for ducts, pipes, and electrical raceways, including size and location of each penetration.
- B. Startup service reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 3. Warranty Period for Entire Unit: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
1. Entire unit shall be ETL Certified per U.L. 1995 and bear an ETL sticker.
 2. Energy Wheel shall be AHRI Certified, per Standard 1060.
 3. Coils shall be Recognized Components for ANSI/UL 1995, CAN/CSA C22.2 No 236.05. DX and water coils shall be AHRI Certified per standard 410-2001.

- B. Cabinet Insulation: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B and erosion requirements of UL 181.
 - 1. Materials: Fiberglass insulation. If insulation other than fiberglass is used, it must also meet the Fire Hazard Classification shown below.
 - a. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm)
 - b. Fire Hazard Classification: Maximum flame spread of 25 and smoke developed of 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 411.
 - c. Location and application: Full coverage of entire cabinet exterior to include walls and roof of unit. Insulation shall be of semi-rigid type and installed between inner and outer shells of all cabinet exterior components.
 - 2. Materials: Rigid urethane foam
 - a. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm)
 - b. Meets UL94HF-1 flame requirements.
 - c. Location and application: Doors and the floor of the unit.
 - 3. Cabinet Surface Condensation:
 - a. Cabinet shall have additional insulation and vapor seals if required to prevent condensation on the interior and exterior of the cabinet.
 - b. Portions of cabinet located downstream from the cooling coil shall have a thermal break at each thermal bridge between the exterior and interior casing to prevent condensation from occurring on the interior and exterior surfaces. The thermal break shall not compromise the structural integrity of the cabinet.
- C. Maximum Cabinet Leakage: 0.5 percent of the total supply-air flow at a pressure rating equal to the fan shut-off pressure.
- D. Cabinet Deflection Performance:
 - 1. Walls and roof deflection shall be within 1/240 of the span at the design working pressure equal to the fan shut-off pressure. Deflection limits shall be measured at any point on the surface.
 - 2. Floor deflections shall be within 1/240 of the span considering the worst-case condition caused by the following:
 - a. Service personnel.
 - b. Internal components.
 - c. Design working pressure defined for the walls and roof.
- E. Electrical components, devices, and accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the drawings.

2.2 CABINET

- A. Construction: double wall.
- B. Exterior Casing Material: 18 ga. Galvanized steel with paint finish.
- C. Interior Casing Material: 20 ga. Galvanized steel.

- D. Motor supports: 14 ga. Galvanized steel.
- E. Galvanized steel to be G90.
- F. Lifting and Handling Provisions: Factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs.
- G. Base Rails: Galvanized-steel rails for mounting on roof curb or pad as indicated.
- H. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 1. Service Doors: Hinged access doors with gaskets. Material and construction of doors shall match material and construction of cabinet in which doors are installed.
- I. Roof: Standing seam or membrane; sloped to drain water.
- J. Floor: Reinforced, metal surface; reinforced to limit deflection when walked on by service personnel. Insulation shall be below metal walking surface.
- K. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - 1. Shape: Rectangular, with 2 percent slope in at least two planes to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 2. Size: Large enough to collect condensate from cooling coils including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends.
 - a. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - b. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - 3. Configuration: Stainless steel, with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
 - 4. Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
 - 5. Drain Connection:
 - a. Located on both ends of pan, at lowest point of pan.
 - b. Terminated with threaded nipple.
 - c. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - d. P-trap provided by unit manufacturer, including cleanout ports, cleanout tool, vacuum break device and see-through reservoir to permit visual verification of water or glycol solution levels.
 - e.
 - 6. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
- L. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1 for resistance to mold and erosion.

- M. Access panels/doors: Unit shall be equipped with insulated, hinged doors or removable access panels to provide easy access to all major components. Doors and access panels shall be fabricated of 22 gauge galvanized G90 steel.
- 2.3 Roof Curb: Full-perimeter curb of sheet metal, minimum 12 inches high, with wood nailer, neoprene sealing strip, and welded Z-bar flashing.
- 1. Comply with requirements in "The NRCA Roofing Manual."
- 2.4 FANS
- A. Supply Air blower assemblies:
 - 1. Blower assembly shall consist of an electric motor and direct-drive fans.
 - 2. Assembly shall be mounted on heavy gauge galvanized steel rails and further mounted on 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolators.
 - 3. Blower motors shall be capable of continuous speed modulation and controlled by a VFD.
 - 4. The VFD shall be controlled by the duct (or unit) mounted carbon dioxide controller provided by DDC contractor.
 - B. Exhaust Air blower assemblies:
 - 1. Blower assembly shall consist of an electric motor and a direct-drive fan.
 - 2. Assembly shall be mounted on heavy gauge galvanized steel rails and further mounted on 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolators.
 - 3. Blower motor shall be capable of continuous speed modulation and controlled by a VFD.
 - 4. The VFD shall be interconnected to the supply fan and parallel its operation (by DDC contractor.)
- 2.5 ENERGY WHEEL
- A. Energy wheel shall be of total enthalpy, rotary air-to-air type and shall be an element of a removable energy wheel cassette. Plate and frame enthalpy module will be accepted.
 - B. The cassette shall consist of a galvanized steel framework (designed to produce laminar air flow through the wheel), an energy wheel as specified and a motor and drive assembly.
 - 1. The cassette shall incorporate a pre-tensioned drive belt with a five year warranty.
 - C. The wheel media shall be a polymer film matrix in a stainless steel framework and be comprised of individual segments that are removable for servicing.
 - 1. Non-segmented energy wheels are not acceptable.
 - 2. Silica gel desiccant shall be permanently bonded to the polymer film and is designed and constructed to permit cleaning and servicing.
 - D. The energy wheel shall have a five year warranty. Performance criteria are to be as specified in AHRI Standard 1060, complying with the Combined Efficiency data in the submittal.

- E. Control system shall include an outdoor air thermostat and pressure sensor on the wheel assembly to initiate frost control sequence.
- F. Modulating frost control.
 - 1. Control system shall include an outdoor air thermostat and pressure sensor on the wheel assembly to initiate frost control sequence.
- G. Reheat Coil with factory installed modulating hot gas reheat valve (for humidity control.)

2.6 PACKAGED DX HEAT PUMP SYSTEM

- A. Unit shall have an integral compressor(s) and evaporator coil located within the weather-tight unit housing.
- B. Condenser coils and appurtenant condenser fan assemblies shall be factory installed as integral subassemblies of the unit and mounted on the exterior of the unit.
 - 1. Unit condenser fans shall feature swept blade design resulting in reduced sound levels.
- C. Condenser fan motors shall be three phase, external rotor, type 56 frame, open air over and shaft up.
 - 1. Each condenser fan motor shall have a vented frame, rated for continuous duty and be equipped with an automatic reset thermal protector.
 - 2. Lead condenser fan will have an electronically commutated (EC) motor that will modulate to maintain a head pressure set point.
 - 3. Motors shall be UL Recognized and CSA Certified.
- D. The refrigerant compressor(s) shall be digital hermetic scroll-type and shall be equipped with liquid line filter drier, thermostatic expansion valves (TXV)(s), manual reset high pressure and low pressure cutouts and all appurtenant sensors, service ports and safety devices.
- E. Compressed refrigerant system shall be fully charged with R-410A refrigerant.
- F. Each compressor shall be factory-equipped with an electric crankcase heater to boil off liquid refrigerant from the oil. (The use of an electric crankcase heater is an essential unit-protective device in most climates.)
- G. Hot gas bypass shall be provided on the lead circuit to prevent icing of the evaporator coil under low load conditions where scheduled in the drawings.
 - 1. Hot gas bypass is not used with digital scroll compressors.

2.7 Heat-Cool Only Controls - Sequence of Operation

- A. Third-Party Controls Responsibilities and Limitations
 - 1. The following information in this section are guidelines for the third-party controls contractor to follow when controlling a unit with Heat-Cool Only controls:
 - 2. Airflow: Maintaining the proper airflow through the unit is the responsibility of the DDC contractor.

3. Dampers: Ensure damper end switch, when installed, proves the damper position for airflow through the unit prior to starting the supply fan. (100% OA units)
 - a. Outside Air Damper
 - b. Return Air Damper
4. Supply Fan Modulation: Proper fan modulation is the responsibility of the third-party. Enable and modulation of the supply fan within the following guidelines:
 - a. Compressor Operation: Fan turn down limited to 50% of the designed airflow.
5. Exhaust Fan Modulation: Enable and modulation of the exhaust fan necessary to achieve the building requirements.
6. Energy Recovery: Controlling the energy recovery equipment is the responsibility of the third-party.
 - a. Enable of Energy recovery device and modulation signal.
 - b. Defrost of device located in the outside air stream: All units with energy recovery options must provide a defrost sequence for the energy recovery section.
 - c. Energy Wheel: Provide a differential pressure switch or transducer installed across the energy wheel; AND maintain less than 1.5"wc when Outside Air Temp less than 10 F.
 - d. Energy Wheel: Provide an exhaust air temperature sensor; AND maintain the exhaust air temperature ≥ 25 F.
7. Supply Air Temperature must be monitored and maintained by the third-party.
 - a. Supply Air Temperature Setpoint
 - 1) A 2-10VDC analog input will be utilized by the DDC contractor for setpoint control.
 - 2) Setpoint range between 50.0°F and 95.0°F for all modes of operation. (Note: A minimum setpoint of 60.0°F is advised in heating mode of a heat pump.)
 - 3) B. Supply Air Temperature Limits
 - a) Minimum Low Supply Temp Limit: Supply Air Temperature less than 35 F. (Cooling will shutdown and the unit will be disabled.)
 - b) Maximum High Supply Temp Limit: Supply Air Temperature > 120 F. (Heating will shutdown and the unit will be disabled.)
 - b. Cooling and Dehumidification: Refrigeration control is requested by the third-party via two 2-10VDC inputs:
 - 1) Cooling Mode
 - a) Remote Enable Input: Closed
 - b) Cooling/Dehumidification Input: Open
 - c) Cooling/Heating Input: Open
 - d) Cooling Coil Setpoint Request: 50 F - 75 F scaled from 2-10VDC (Compressor Staging)
 - 2) Dehumidification Mode
 - a) Remote Enable Input: Closed
 - b) Cooling/Dehumidification Input: Closed
 - c) Cooling/Heating Input: Open
 - d) Supply Air Setpoint Request: 50 F - 95 F scaled from 2-10VDC (HGRH Valve Modulation)
 - e) Cooling Coil Setpoint Request: 50 F - 75 F scaled from 2-10VDC (Compressor Staging)
 - c. Heating: Heating device control is requested by the third-party via a single 2-10VDC input. This input will control any heating devices installed in the unit.
 - 1) Heating Mode (Hot Water, Heat Pump Heating)
 - a) Remote Enable Input: Closed

- b) Cooling/Dehumidification Input: Open
- c) Cooling/Heating Input: Closed
- d) Supply Air Setpoint Request: 50 F - 95 F scaled from 2-10VDC
(Note: A minimum setpoint of 60.0 F is advised in heating mode of a heat pump.)

B. Controls Availability: The following sequence is logic in the Heat-Cool Only Controller installed in the unit.

1. Unit Availability: The unit is available for operation when the following conditions are met:
 - a. Heat-Cool Only system alarms are not active.
 - b. Shutdown Input is closed.
 - c. Remote Start Input is closed.
 - d. Supply fan status indicates that the fan is running.
 - e. Outside Air Temperature sensor is reading a normal temperature.
 - f. Coil Leaving Air Temperature sensor is reading a normal temperature.
 - g. Supply Air Temperature sensor is reading a normal temperature.
2. Cooling Availability: The unit is available to operate in cooling mode when all the Unit Availability conditions, and the following conditions are met:
 - a. Outside Air Temp > Cooling Ambient Lockout.
 - b. Coil Leaving Air Temp > Cold Coil Low Limit Setpoint. (If the coil leaving temp falls below 42.0 F, the compressors are not available to stage on until the cooling coil temp reaches 46.0 F.)
 - c. Cooling/Heating Control Mode is open for cooling mode (third-party input).
 - d. Refrigeration alarms are not active.
3. Heating Availability: The unit is available to operate in heating mode when all the Unit Availability conditions, and the following conditions are met:
 - a. Outside Air Temp less than Heating Ambient Lockout.
 - b. Cooling/Heating Control Mode is closed for Heating Mode (third-party input).
 - c. Heat device alarms are not active.
 - d. Heat Pump Heating – Outside Air Temp > ASHP Low Ambient Lockout for ASHP.

C. Cooling Sequence

1. Cooling Control: The heat-cool only controller performs the following functions for compressor control.
 - a. The compressors stage and modulate to maintain the cooling coil temperature setpoint.
 - b. Modulating Inverter Scroll Compressor: If the unit is equipped with an inverter scroll compressor, the following control will also apply:
 - 1) Envelope Control: The Hear-Cool Only controller will monitor temperatures and pressures in the circuit and compare them to the compressor's operating envelope to ensure that the compressor is within safe operating conditions.
 - 2) Superheat Control: An Electronic Expansion Valve (ExV) and Electronic Valve Driver (EVD) will be utilized in the modulating circuit. The EVD will control the position of the ExV based on the Suction Superheat to maintain a setpoint of 10 F.
2. Dehumidification Control: Dehumidification mode is possible on units equipped with Hot Gas Reheat.
 - a. Enable Dehumidification: The Cooling/Dehumidification input is closed to initiate dehumidification mode, the following will occur:

- 1) The hot gas reheat valve will modulate to maintain the supply air temperature setpoint.
- 2) The compressors stage and modulate to maintain the cooling coil temperature setpoint.
- b. Disable Dehumidification: The Cooling/Dehumidification input is open to initiate cooling mode, the following will occur:
 - 1) The HGRH valve modulates to the closed position when a compressor in the HGRH circuit is operating.
 - 2) The compressors stage and modulate to maintain the cooling coil temperature setpoint.
3. Pressure Control: Pressure control maintains a consistent condensing temperature in cooling and dehumidification modes by modulating coil fans to meet the pressure control setpoint.

D. Heating Sequence

1. Heat Control: The heat-cool only controller performs the following functions for control of gas furnaces, electric heat, or hot water devices installed in the unit.
 - a. Modulates the heating device to maintain the supply air temperature setpoint.
2. Heat Pump Heating
 - a. The compressors stage and modulate to maintain the supply air temperature setpoint.
 - b. Modulating Inverter Scroll Compressor: If the unit is equipped with an inverter scroll compressor, the following control will also apply:
 - 1) Envelope Control: The main controller will monitor temperatures and pressures in the circuit and compare them to the compressor's operating envelope to ensure that the compressor is within safe operating conditions.
 - 2) Superheat Control: An Electronic Expansion Valve (ExV) and Electronic Valve Driver (EVD) will be utilized in the modulating circuit. The EVD will control the position of the ExV based on the Suction Superheat to maintain a setpoint of 10 F.
 - c. Pressure Control: Pressure control maintains a consistent coil temperature in heating mode by modulating coil fans to meet the pressure control setpoint.
 - d. Secondary Heat: A secondary hydronic heating coil shall be provided in unit. The coil shall be located in the unit discharge, downstream of the supply fan..
 - 1) Supplemental: Secondary heat will operate simultaneously with heat pump heating when the compressors are not producing enough heat to stay within 2 F of setpoint.
 - e. Outside Coil Defrost - ASHP: An Air-Source Heat Pump (ASHP) periodically initiates a defrost cycle of the outside coil to remove the accumulation of frost build-up when operating in heating mode.
 - 1) Supplemental Heat: If supplemental heat is installed in the unit, that heating device will maintain the Supply Air Temperature Setpoint.
 - 2) Backup Heat: If backup heat is installed in the unit, that heating device will NOT start during defrost operation.

E. Switching Modes of Operation: The unit switches modes of operation based on an external input from a third-party device.

1. Switch from Cooling to Heating: When the Cooling/Heating contact is closed and all heating availability conditions are met, heating mode will initiate, and the following will occur:
 - a. All currently operating compressors are shut down.

- b. The mode switch timer starts before completely switching to heating mode.
 - c. The reversing valve moves to the heating position, if the unit is a heat pump.
 - 2. Switch from Heating to Cooling: When the Cooling/Heating contact is open and all cooling availability conditions are met, cooling mode will initiate, and the following will occur:
 - a. All heating devices are shut down.
 - b. The mode switch timer starts before completely switching to cooling mode.
 - c. The reversing valve moves to the cooling position, if the unit is a heat pump.
- F. Digital Statuses: The Heat-Cool Only terminal strip provides the third-party controller with information from devices installed in the unit. The following information is available through those digital statuses.
 - 1. Outside Air Damper Actuator End Switch: When installed, this status provides an indication that the outside air damper actuator has reached a specific open position.
 - 2. Condensate Overflow Switch: This device, when installed, indicates when the condensate drain pan is full and further operation of the refrigeration system could cause an overflow of water in the pan.
 - 3. Energy Recovery Status: When installed, the energy recovery device may have an indication back to the terminal strip that the device is rotating, or the bypass is open.
 - 4. Filter Pressure Switch: If a filter pressure switch or switches are installed, an indication back to the third-party indicates that the filters are dirty.
 - 5. Global Alarm Output: The global alarm output is available on all Heat-Cool Only units. This status indicates that there is an alarm condition in the Heat-Cool Only controller.
- G. Phase and brownout protection: RTU shall have a factory-installed phase monitor to detect electric supply phase loss and voltage brown-out conditions. Upon detection of a fault, the monitor shall disconnect supply voltage to all motors.

2.8 AIRSIDE COILS

- A. Airside refrigeration coil:
 - 1. DX coil shall be AHRI Certified and shall be (silver) soldered or brazed into the compressed refrigerant system.
 - 2. Coil shall be constructed of copper tubing, permanently bonded to aluminum fins and enclosed in a galvanized steel frame.
 - 3. If two compressors are used as components of the unit, then the airside coil shall be of “interlaced” configuration, permitting independent operation of either compressor without conflict with the other compressor.
- B. Hydronic coil:
 - 1. Hot water coil shall be factory installed and meet the design requirements as scheduled.
 - 2. Hot water coil shall be able to simultaneously operate with the air-source heat pump.
 - 3. This coil shall be coated with ElectroFin® coil coating.

2.9 OUTDOOR-AIR INTAKE HOOD

- A. Type: Manufacturer's standard hood or louver.
- B. Materials: Match cabinet.

- C. Bird Screen: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Configuration: Designed to inhibit wind-driven rain and snow from entering unit.

2.10 FILTERS

A. Extended-Surface, Disposable Return Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
3. Thickness: 2 inch.
4. Minimum Arrestance: 90, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
5. Minimum MERV: 8, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
6. Media: Fibrous material formed into deep-V-shaped pleats with antimicrobial agent and held by self-supporting wire grid.

B. Extended-Surface, Disposable Fresh air Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface, self-supporting type.
3. Thickness 2" or 4".
4. Minimum Arrestance: 95, according to ASHRAE 52.1.
5. Minimum MERV: 13, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
6. Media: Fibrous material coated with an antimicrobial agent and constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form by flexible internal supports under rated-airflow conditions.

C. Mounting Frames:

1. Panel filters arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or from access plenum.
2. Extended surface filters arranged for flat orientation, removable from access plenum.
3. Galvanized or stainless steel with gaskets and fasteners, suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks with space for prefilter.

2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. General Electrical Power Connection Requirements: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other necessary electrical devices shall provide a single-point field power connection to unit.
- B. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R, mounted in unit with hinged access door in unit cabinet having a lock and key or padlock and key,
- C. Wiring: Numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
- D. Wiring Location: Install factory wiring outside an enclosure in a raceway.
- E. Power Interface: Field power interface shall be to NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, non-fused disconnect switch.

- F. Factory Wiring: Branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with one of the following disconnecting means:
 - 1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.
 - 2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
 - 3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
- G. Factory-Mounted, Overcurrent-Protection Service: For each motor.
- H. Transformer: Factory mounted with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.
- I. Controls: Factory wire unit-mounted controls where indicated.
- J. Lights: Factory wire unit-mounted lights.
- K. Receptacle: Factory wire unit-mounted, ground fault interrupt (GFI) duplex receptacle.
- L. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays.

2.12 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Control Wiring: Factory wire connection for controls' power supply.
- C. Control Devices: Sensors, transmitters, relays, switches, detectors, operators, actuators, and valves shall be manufacturer's standard items to accomplish indicated control functions.
- D. Remote-Mounted Status Panel:
 - 1. Cooling/Off/Heating Controls: Control operational mode.
 - 2. Damper Position: Indicate position of outdoor-air dampers in terms of percentage of outdoor air.
 - 3. Status Lights:
 - a. Filter dirty.
 - b. Fan operating.
 - c. Cooling operating.
 - d. Heating operating.
 - e. Smoke alarm.
 - f. General alarm.
 - 4. Digital Numeric Display:
 - a. Outdoor airflow.
 - b. Supply airflow.
 - c. Outdoor dry-bulb temperature.

- d. Outdoor dew point temperature.
- e. Space temperature.
- f. Supply temperature.
- g. Space relative humidity.
- h. Space carbon dioxide level.

2.13 Control Dampers:

1. Damper Location: Factory installed inside unit for ease of blade axle and bushing service. Arrange dampers located in a mixing box to achieve convergent airflow to minimize stratification.
2. Damper Leakage: Comply with requirements in AMCA 500-D. Leakage shall not exceed 6.5 cfm per sq. ft. at a static-pressure differential of 4.0 inches water column when a torque of 5 inch pounds per sq. ft. is applied to the damper jackshaft.
3. Damper Rating: Rated for close-off pressure equal to the fan shutoff pressure.
4. Damper Label: Bear the AMCA seal for both air leakage and performance.
5. Blade Configuration: Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control and equipment isolation service and use modulating control when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use an opposed-blade configuration.
6. Damper Frame Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel or stainless steel.
7. Blade Type: Single-thickness metal reinforced with multiple V-grooves or hollow-shaped airfoil.
8. Blade Material: Extruded aluminum, galvanized steel or stainless steel.
9. Maximum Blade Width: 6 inches.
10. Maximum Blade Length: 48 inches.
11. Blade Seals: Replaceable, continuous perimeter vinyl seals and jambs with stainless-steel compression-type seals.
12. Bearings: Thrust bearings for vertical blade axles.
13. Airflow Measurement:
 - a. Monitoring System: Complete and functioning system of airflow monitoring as an integral part of the damper assembly where indicated.
 - b. Remote Monitoring Signal: 0-10 volt or 4-20 mA scaled signal.
 - c. Accuracy of flow measurement: Within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of the scheduled minimum and maximum airflow. For units with a large range between minimum and maximum airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as necessary to comply with accuracy.
 - d. Straightening Device: Integral to the flow measurement assembly if required to achieve the specified accuracy as installed.
 - e. Flow measuring device: Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered outdoor air. If necessary, include temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain the accuracy.

B. Damper Operators:

1. Factory-installed electric operator for each damper assembly with one operator for each damper assembly mounted to the damper frame.
2. Operator capable of shutoff against fan pressure and able to operate the damper with sufficient reserve power to achieve smooth modulating action and proper speed of response at the velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.

3. Maximum Operating Time: Open or close damper 90 degrees in 90 seconds.
 4. Adjustable Stops: For both maximum and minimum positions.
 5. Position Indicator and Graduated Scale: Factory installed on each actuator with words "OPEN" and "CLOSED," or similar identification, at travel limits.
 6. Spring-return operator to fail-safe; either closed or open as required by application.
 7. Operator Type: Direct coupled, designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
 8. Position feedback Signal: For remote monitoring of damper position.
 9. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 10. Circuitry: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
- C. Damper Controls: VFD signal shall modulate outdoor- and return-air dampers proportional to speed change.
- D. DDC Temperature Control: Standalone control module for link between unit controls and DDC temperature-control system. Control module shall be compatible with control system specified. Links shall include the following:
1. Start/stop interface relay, and relay to notify DDC temperature-control system alarm condition.
 2. Hardware interface or additional sensors for the following:
 - a. Room temperature.
 - b. Discharge-air temperature.
 - c. Refrigeration system operating.
 - d. Constant and variable motor loads.
 - e. Variable-frequency-controller operation.
 - f. Cooling load.
 - g. Economizer cycles.
 - h. Air-distribution static pressure and ventilation-air volumes.
- E. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, and display unit status and alarms.
1. Hardwired Points:
 - a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm.
 - b. Control: On-off operation, space temperature set-point adjustment, supply temperature set-point adjustment, space humidity set-point adjustment and space pressure set-point adjustment.
 2. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the DDC system for HVAC operator to remotely control and monitor the unit from an operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at unit control panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

2.14 ACCESSORIES

- A. Service Lights and Switch: Factory installed in each accessible section with weatherproof cover. Factory wire lights to a single-point field connection.

- B. Duplex Receptacle: Factory mounted in unit supply-fan section and refrigeration section, with 20 amp 120 V GFI duplex receptacle and weatherproof cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's rigging and installation instructions for unloading units and moving to final locations.
- B. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure according to "The NRCA Roofing Manual."
 - 1. Install and secure units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction.
 - 2. Coordinate size, installation, and structural capacity of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
 - 3. Coordinate size, location, and installation of unit manufacturer's roof curbs and equipment supports with roof Installer.
- C. Restrained Curb Support: Install restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails on roof structure according to "The NRCA Roofing Manual."
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install wall- and duct-mounted sensors furnished by manufacturer for field installation. Install control wiring and make final connections to control devices and unit control panel.
- F. Comply with requirements for gas-fired furnace installation in NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."
- G. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

- H. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- I. Install drain pipes from unit drain pans to sanitary drain.
 - 1. Drain Piping: Drawn-temper copper water tubing complying with ASTM B88, Type L, with soldered joints.
 - 2. Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D1785, with solvent-welded fittings.
 - 3. Pipe Size: Same size as condensate drain pan connection.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hydronic Piping Connections:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install shutoff valve and union or flange on each supply connection and install balancing valve and union or flange on each return connection.
- C. Duct Connections:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
 - 2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
 - 3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors. Comply with requirements for flexible duct connectors in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements for power wiring, switches, and motor controls in electrical Sections.
 - 1. Install electrical devices furnished by unit manufacturer but not factory mounted.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency:
 - a. Measure gas pressure at manifold.
 - b. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
 - c. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
 - d. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
 - e. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

3. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
 - a. High-limit heat exchanger.
 - b. Alarms.
 4. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
 5. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits and measure and record the following:
 - a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
 6. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
 - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
 7. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
 8. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 9. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 10. Verify that filters are installed.
 11. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
 12. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
 13. Verify bearing lubrication.
 14. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 15. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 16. Start unit.
 17. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
 18. Operate unit for run-in period.
 19. Calibrate controls.
 20. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
 21. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
 22. Verify operational sequence of controls.
 23. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Return-air flow.
 - c. Outdoor-air flow.
- B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.
- C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.

23. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

- a. Supply-air volume.
- b. Return-air flow.
- c. Outdoor-air flow.

B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.

C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.

D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to four visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 237433

SECTION 238146

WATER-TO -WATER HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes unitary heat pumps with refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers, refrigeration circuits, and refrigerant compressor(s).
- B. Heat pump units shall be extended range units designed to operate with 25°F to 110°F entering water temperature range. Units shall consist of high-efficiency scroll compressors and shall have dual independent refrigeration circuits.
- C. Units as manufactured by Carrier with built in Automated Logic controls. Controls shall be factory built in I-Vu.
- D. .2 Contractor shall coordinate between Carrier and Automated Logic for the full release of control rights to Automated Logic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each water-source unitary heat pump.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source unitary heat pump, signed by product manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-source unitary heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source unitary heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Four years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery, water-source heat pumps.

2.2 WATER-TO-WATER HEAT PUMPS

- A. Description: Packaged water-source unitary heat pump as manufactured by Carrier with temperature controls; factory assembled, piped, wired, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.
 - 1. The above item has been approved by the Department as a Proprietary Item. No other item will be accepted. Article 9, Paragraph 9.6, Substitution of Materials, of the General Conditions to the Construction Contract does not apply to the above item.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Cabinet and Chassis: Powder coated galvanized-steel casing with the following features:
 - 1. Removeable access panel for access and maintenance of internal components.
 - 2. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.

3. Cabinet Insulation: Coated fiberglass acoustical liner, minimum 1/2 inch thick, 1.75 lb./CF complying with UL 181, ASTM C1071, and ASTM G21. All fiberglass shall be coated and all edges shall be tucked under flanges.

D. Water Circuits:

1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:

- a. Source-side coaxial heat exchangers with cupronickel water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side.
- b. Load-side coaxial heat exchangers with cupronickel water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side.
- c. Stainless-steel, brazed-plate heat exchanger is leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.
- d. Hot-water generator, copper water tube with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig on refrigerant side and 400 psig on water side, pump, circuit breaker, high water temperature and low water refrigerant cutoffs, and tank connection.

E. Refrigerant Circuit Components:

1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-410A refrigerant.
2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing on each circuit.
4. Reversing Valve: Four-way, solenoid-activated valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
5. Compressor:
 - a. Scroll.
 - b. Single stage or two stage.
 - c. Installed on vibration isolators and mounted on a structural steel base plate and full-length channel stiffeners.
 - d. Exterior of compressor shall be wrapped with a high-density sound-attenuating blanket and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure.
 - e. Factory-Installed Safeties:
 - 1) Anti-recycle timer.
 - 2) High-pressure cutout.
 - 3) Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
 - 4) Internal thermal-overload protection.
 - 5) Freezestat to stop compressor if water-loop temperature in refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger falls below 35 deg F.
 - 6) Water-coil, low-temperature switch.
6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch-thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-developed indexes according to ASTM E84.
 8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal-expansion valve.
- F. Controls: Sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- G. Unit Controls:
1. Solid-State Safety Circuit:
 - a. All units shall have a Unit Protection Module (UPM) safety control circuit with the following features:
 - b. Anti-short cycle time delay (5-minute delay on break).
 - c. Random start time delay on initial power.
 - d. Brownout/surge/power interruption protection.
 - e. 120 second low pressure switch bypass timer.
 - f. High refrigerant pressure shutdown.
 - g. Low refrigerant pressure shutdown.
 - h. Low water temperature shutdown (adjustable for closed loop systems).
 - i. High condensate level shutdown.
 - j. 24 vac alarm output for remote fault indication.
 2. The UPM shall automatically reset after a safety shutdown. Restart the unit if the cause of the shutdown no longer exists (except for low temperature and high condensate level shutdowns). Should a fault re-occur within 60 minutes after reset, then a "hard" lockout will occur. A light-emitting diode (LED) shall annunciate the following alarms: brownout, high refrigerant pressure, low refrigerant pressure, low water temperature and a high level of condensate in the drain pan. The LED will display each fault condition as soon as the fault occurs. If a hard lockout occurs, then the fault LED will display the type of fault until the unit is reset.
 - a. The UPM shall feature the following field configurable adjustments:
 - b. Lock out reset on thermostat interruption or power reset.
 - c. Two or four restart attempts before a hard lockout.
 - d. Test mode (reduces all time delays to 5 seconds for diagnostic work).
 - e. Antifreeze setting for low water temperature sensor.
 3. Safety devices include:
 - a. Low pressure cutout set a 40 psig for loss of charge protection (freezestat and/or high discharge gas temperature sensor is not acceptable).
 - b. High pressure cutout control set at 600 psig.
 - c. Low supply water temperature sensor that detects drops in refrigerant temperature that could result in water coax heat exchanger freezing.
 - d. Low air coil temperature sensor that detects drops in refrigerant temperature that could result in air heat exchanger freezing.
 - e. High level condensate sensor that shuts off the compressor if the condensate drain pan fills with water.
 - f. On board voltage detection that disables the compressor control circuit if there are extreme variations in supply voltage.
 4. Electrical:
 - a. Provide full surge and voltage protection for controls.
 - b. A control box shall be located within the unit compressor compartment and shall contain a 75 va transformer, 24 volt activated, 2 or 3 pole compressor contactor,

terminal block for thermostat wiring and solid-state controller for complete unit operation. Electro-mechanical operation WILL NOT be accepted.

- c. Units shall be name-plated for use with time-delay fuses or HACR circuit breakers.
- d. Unit controls shall be 24 volt and provide heating or cooling as required by the remote thermostat

- H. Controls: factory supplied Automated Logic.
- I. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection with fused disconnect.
- J. Capacities and Characteristics: As Scheduled on the drawings.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hose Kits: Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
 - 1. Minimum Working Pressure: 400 psig.
 - 2. Operating Temperatures: From 33 to 211 deg F.
 - 3. Hose Length: 24 inches.
 - 4. Minimum Hose Diameter: Equal to water-source unitary heat-pump piping connection.
 - 5. Hose Material: Braided stainless steel with adapters for pipe connections.
 - 6. Isolation Valves: Two-piece, bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel ball and stem, standard-port threaded connections, and galvanized-steel lever handle. Valves shall be factory installed on supply and return connections of both load-side and source-side heat exchangers. If balancing valve is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.
 - 7. Strainer: Y-pattern with blowdown valve in supply connections of both load and source side of heat exchangers.
 - 8. Balancing Valves: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.
 - a. Manual, calibrated-orifice balancing valve with memory stop.
- B. Sound attenuation package including compressor blankets.
- C. Hot water generator coil and high temperature switch shall generate hot water within the unit.
- D. The W2W Open controller continuously monitors and regulates heat pump operation reliably and precisely. This controller features a sophisticated, factory-engineered control program that provides optimum performance and energy efficiency. For added flexibility, the W2W Open controller is capable of stand-alone operation. It can also be integrated with any Building Automation System using the BACnet, Modbus, LonWorks, or N2 protocol.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source unitary heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduits before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install water-source, unitary heat pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation and seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with hose kits.
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing water to water heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Heat pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 - 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor and coils.
 - 4. Inspect internal insulation.
 - 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
 - 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 - 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 - 8. Adjust vibration isolators.
 - 9. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 10. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
 - 11. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
 - 12. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
 - 13. Verify thermostat calibration.
 - 14. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source unitary heat pumps.

END OF SECTION 238146

SECTION 238146.13

WATER-TO-AIR HEAT PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Other sections:
 - 1. 230993.11 Sequence Of Operations

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concealed horizontal or vertical units, 6 tons and smaller.
 - 2. Equipment shall be completely assembled, piped and internally wired.
- B. Units as manufactured by Carrier with built in Automated Logic controls. Controls shall be factory built in I-Vu.
- C. .2 Contractor shall coordinate between Carrier and Automated Logic for the full release of control rights to Automated Logic.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each model.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of unit indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which heat pumps are attached.
 - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source unitary heat pump, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-to-air heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15.
 - 2. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery, water-source heat pumps.
- E. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct-system connections.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Four years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCEALED WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS

- A. Description: Packaged water-source heat pump as manufactured by Carrier with temperature controls; factory assembled, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.
 - 1. The above item has been approved by the Department as a Proprietary Item. No other item will be accepted. Article 9, Paragraph 9.6, Substitution of Materials, of the General Conditions to the Construction Contract does not apply to the above item.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Cabinet and Chassis: Galvanized-steel casing with the following features:
 - 1. G90 galvanized metal.
 - 2. Access panel for access and maintenance of internal components.
 - 3. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
 - 4. Flanged duct connections.
 - 5. Cabinet Insulation: Closed cell foam liner, minimum 1/2 inch-thick, shall be installed on interior surfaces of water source heat pump and shall meet the density and compression requirements of ASTM D 1056, the water absorption requirements of ASTM D-1667 and the tensile and elongation requirements of ASTM D-412. Closed cell foam shall meet the flammability requirements of FMVSS302 and UL 94.
 - 6. Units shall include hanging brackets.
 - 7. Units field convertible for various discharge configurations.
 - 8. Condensate Drainage: Stainless-steel drain pan with condensate drain piping projecting through unit cabinet and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - a. Condensate Overflow Protection Switch: Solid state electronic; mechanical float switch not permitted.
 - 9. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 10. Sound Attenuation Package: Provide one or more of the following:
 - a. Minimum 0.598-inch-thick compressor enclosure and front panel. Minimum 0.0937-inch-thick foam gasket around the compressor and perimeter of end panel.

- b. Sound attenuating blanket over compressor.
 - c. Hot-gas muffler.
- D. Fan: Direct driven, centrifugal, with multispeed motor resiliently mounted in fan inlet and with inlet rings to allow wheel removal from one side without removing housing.
 - 1. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 2. Motor: Multispeed, permanently lubricated, ECM motor.
- E. Water Circuit:
 - 1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:
 - a. Refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be of cupronickel inner water tube and steel outer refrigerant tube design rated to withstand 600 psig working refrigerant pressure and 450 psig working water pressure.
 - b. Shell and tube style refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be treated as pressure vessels and shall require refrigerant pressure relief valves piped to the exterior of the building.
- F. Refrigerant-to-Air Coils: Copper tubes with aluminum fins, leak tested to 450 psig.
- G. Refrigerant Circuit Components:
 - 1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-410A refrigerant.
 - 2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
 - 3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing on each circuit.
 - 4. Reversing Valve: Four-way, solenoid-activated valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
 - 5. Compressor: Hermetic rotary or scroll, single-stage compressor installed on vibration isolators and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure with factory-installed safeties as follows:
 - a. Anti-short cycle timer.
 - b. High-pressure cutout.
 - c. Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
 - d. Internal thermal-overload protection.
 - e. Freezestat to stop compressor if water-loop temperature in refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger falls below 35 deg F.
 - f. Condensate overflow switch to stop compressor with high condensate level in condensate drain pan.
 - g. Water-coil, low-temperature switch.
 - h. Air-coil, low-temperature switch.
 - 6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Built in charging ports.
 - 7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch-thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-developed indexes according to ASTM E84.

8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal-expansion valve.
 9. Hot-Gas Reheat Valve: Pilot-operated, sliding-type valve with replaceable magnetic coil.
- H. Hot-Gas Reheat: Reheat valve diverts refrigerant hot gas to reheat coil when remote humidistat calls for dehumidification.
- I. Second stage reheat and heating shall be available through the duct mounted hydronic heating coil. See 230993.11 Sequence of Operations.
- J. Filters: Disposable, pleated type, 2 inches thick and with a minimum efficiency reporting value of 13 according to ASHRAE 52.2 for unit sizes 15 MBH or larger, otherwise, MERV 8, 2"-thick.
- K. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- L. Controls and Safeties:
1. Electrical:
 - a. Provide full voltage and surge protection for controls.
 - b. A control box shall be located within the unit and shall contain a transformer, controls for the compressor, reversing valve and fan motor.
 - c. The transformer shall be rated for a minimum 75 va. All units shall be nameplated for use with time delay fuses or HACR (Heating, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration) circuit breakers. Unit controls shall be 24 volts.
 - d. All transformers shall have a push button reset circuit breaker on the secondary power.
 2. Unit Protection Module (UPM):
 - a. All units shall have a solid-state safety control circuit with the following features:
 - 1) Anti-short cycle time delay on compressor operation, with a 5-minute delay.
 - 2) Random start on power up mode.
 - 3) Brownout/surge/power interruption protection.
 - 4) Low pressure switch 120-second bypass timer.
 - 5) Shutdown on the following fault indications:
 - a) High or low refrigerant pressure safety switches inputs.
 - b) Low water temperature shutdown. Freeze sensors shall monitor refrigerant temperature to the water coil in the heating mode and shall activate the lockout circuit when water temperature drops below either 15°F or 35°F depending on the selection. 15°F is field selectable for installations utilizing antifreeze.
 - c) Condensate overflow protection. A condensate sensor shall activate the lockout circuit upon sensing a high level of condensate in the drain pan and immediately put the unit into a hard lockout. Condensate overflow protection (COP) shall be standard on all units.
 - d) Air coil freeze protection shut down refrigerant coil in the cooling modes.
 - 6) Alarm output which closes for selectable dry contact closure or 24 vac remote fault indication.
 - 7) Alarm output selectable for constant output for general alarm notification, or pulse output for annunciation of the specific fault alarm.

- 8) Activation of any safety device shall prevent compressor operation via a lockout circuit. The lockout circuit shall be reset at the thermostat or at the contractor supplied disconnect switch. Units which may be reset at the disconnect switch only shall not be acceptable.
- 9) Automatic intelligent reset. Unit shall automatically reset after a safety shut down and restart after the anti-short cycle timer and random start timer expire. Should a fault re-occur within 60 minutes after reset, then a permanent lockout will occur. Reset attempts shall be selectable for either 2 or 4 tries. A condensate overflow will place the unit in an immediate hard lockout.
- 10) Ability to defeat time delays for servicing.
- 11) A light-emitting diode (LED) to indicate safety alarms. The LED shall annunciate the following alarms:
 - a) High refrigerant pressure,
 - b) Low refrigerant pressure,
 - c) Low refrigerant temperature to the water coil in the heating operation,
 - d) High level of condensate in the drain pan,
 - e) Brown out/surge/power interruption.
- 12) The LED will display each fault condition as soon as the fault occurs. If a permanent lockout occurs, then the fault LED will display the type of fault until the unit is reset.
- 13) UL listed, UL Canada listed, and RFI, ESD, and transient protected.
- 14) Low refrigerant temperature to the air coil in cooling operation.
- 15) Safety devices:
 - a) Low pressure cutout set at 40 psig for loss of charge protection (freezestat and/or high discharge gas temperature sensor is not acceptable).
 - b) High pressure cutout control set at 600 psig.
 - c) Low supply water temperature sensor protection which monitors refrigerant temperature that could result in water heat exchanger freezing.
 - d) Low air coil temperature sensor protection which monitors refrigerant temperature that could result in air heat exchanger freezing.
 - e) High level of condensate sensor that shuts off the compressor if the condensate drain pan fills with water.
 - f) On board voltage detection that disables the compressor control circuit if there are extreme variations exceeding $\pm 10\%$ in supply voltage.
- 16) Deluxe Control Package shall have all the features of the standard Complete control package with the following additional features:
 - a) Pump-valve relay to enable a pump/valve operation when calling for compressor operation.
 - b) Energy management switch to enable remote operation of WSHP (water source heat pump).
 - c) Phase monitor to protect the compressor from operating in reverse rotation on three phase units.
- 17) WSHP Open Multiple Protocol Control: Units shall have all the features above (Complete C package) and the state of the art WSHP Open multiple protocol interface board will have the ability to be viewed in the Equipment Touch™, System Touch™, or field assistant user interface. All point objects will have the ability to be viewed in the Equipment Touch user interface.

The following points must be available at a central or remote computer location:

- a) Space temperature
 - b) Leaving water temperature
 - c) Discharge air temperature
 - d) Command of space temperature set point
 - e) Cooling status
 - f) Heating status
 - g) Low temperature sensor alarm
 - h) High pressure switch alarm
 - i) Fan on/off position of space thermostat
 - j) Unoccupied/occupied command
 - k) Cooling demand
 - l) Heating demand
 - m) Fan "ON/AUTO" command
 - n) Fault prevention with auto reset
 - o) Itemized fault code viewed with Equipment Touch interface
- 18) Additional WSHP Open multiple protocol control features shall include:
- a) Three-speed fan control. Controller shall automatically, based upon space temperature input, operate the fan at the lowest of 3 selectable speeds to achieve space temperature set point.
 - b) Power fail restart delay
 - c) Multiple-protocol WSHP Open controller remote ZS sensors for DDC (direct digital controls) control options. Only Carrier ZS sensors can be used with the WSHP Open controller. Sensors are available as follows, and all sensors below offer monitoring of space temperature only, or space temperature and CO₂, or space temperature and humidity, or space temperature and CO₂ and humidity.
 - d) ZS Pro-F sensor with communication port, occupancy status indicator, local occupancy override, set point adjustment, LCD display, alarm indicator, fan speed control, cooling/heating/fan only mode control and F to C conversion.

M. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection with fused disconnect.

N. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the drawings.

2.2 SOUND ATTENUATION

A. Compressor blanket shall be provided on units having a capacity above 24,000 Btuh.

2.3 HOSE KITS

A. General: Hose kits shall be designed for minimum 400-psig working pressure and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F. Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

B. Hose: Length 36 inches braided stainless steel, complete with adapters. Minimum diameter, equal to water-source, heat-pump connection size.

- C. Isolation Valves: Two-piece, bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel, standard-port ball and stem with normal pipe thread (NPT) connections, and galvanized-steel lever handle. Provide valve for supply and return. If balancing device is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.
- D. Strainer: Y-type with blowdown valve in supply connection.
- E. Balancing Device: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.
 - 1. Manual, calibrated-orifice balancing valve.

2.4 Factory options to be included:

- A. Extra quiet sound packages, with compressor blankets for units 1 ½-ton and larger.
- B. Constant air flow ECM motors for units 1 ¼-ton and larger.
- C. Cupronickel water coils.
- D. Modulating hot gas reheat where scheduled.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduits before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with unions and shutoff valves.

2. Connect heat-pump condensate drain pan to indirect waste connection with condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.
- B. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 1. Connect supply and return ducts to water-source heat pumps with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.
 - D. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
 - E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
 1. After installing water-source heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Unit start up technician shall energize dehumidification control sequence.
- D. See Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- E. Heat pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
2. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
3. Inspect internal insulation.
4. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
5. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
6. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
7. Verify that filters are installed.
8. Adjust vibration isolators.
9. Inspect operation of barometric dampers.
10. Verify bearing lubrication on fan.
11. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
12. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
13. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
14. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
15. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
16. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
17. Verify thermostat and humidistat calibration.
18. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
19. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
20. Start refrigeration system, and measure and record the following:
 - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
21. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Return-air volume.
 - c. Relief-air volume.
 - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Replace filters used during construction prior to air balance or Substantial Completion.

- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished, water-source heat pumps, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source heat pumps.

END OF SECTION 238146.13

SECTION 238216.11

HYDRONIC AIR COILS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hydronic heating and cooling air coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each air coil.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and pressure drops for each air coil.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which coil location and ceiling-mounted access panels are shown and coordinated with each other.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air coils to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

2.2 COILS

- A. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- B. Minimum Working-Pressure/Temperature Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

- C. Source Quality Control: Factory tested to 300 psig.
- D. Tubes: ASTM B743 copper, minimum 0.035 inch thick.
- E. Fins: Aluminum, minimum 0.010 inch thick.
- F. Headers: Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
- G. Frames: Galvanized-steel channel frame, minimum 0.064 inch thick for flanged mounting.
- H. Hot-Water Coil Capacities and Characteristics: As Scheduled on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, plenums, and casings to receive air coils for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting coil performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before coil installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install coils level and plumb.
- B. Install coils in metal ducts and casings constructed according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."
- C. Install moisture eliminators for cooling coils. Extend drain pan under moisture eliminator.
- D. Straighten bent fins on air coils.
- E. Clean coils using materials and methods recommended in writing by manufacturers, and clean inside of casings and enclosures to remove dust and debris.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to coils to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect water piping with unions and shutoff valves to allow coils to be disconnected without draining piping. Control valves are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves," and other piping specialties are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

END OF SECTION 238216.11

SECTION 238239.16

PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes propeller unit heaters with hot-water coils.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- C. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
 - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
 - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which propeller unit heaters will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For propeller unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in vertical and horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 2021.
- D. Comply with UL 823.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.3 HOUSINGS

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heaters before shipping.

- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

2.4 COILS

- A. General Coil Requirements: Test and rate steam propeller unit-heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.
- B. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, minimum 0.025-inch wall thickness, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 325 deg F, with manual air vent. Test for leaks to 350 psig underwater.

2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

- A. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.
- B. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.6 CONTROLS

- A. Control Devices:
 - 1. Unit-mounted, variable fan-speed switch.
 - 2. Unit-mounted thermostat.

2.7 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. As scheduled on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive propeller unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install propeller unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Install propeller unit heaters level and plumb.
- C. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Piping installation requirements are specified in the following Sections:
 - 1. Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
 - 2. Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to propeller unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.
- D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of propeller unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on steam-supply connection and union, strainer, steam trap, and gate or ball valve on condensate-return connection of propeller unit heater.
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.

3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain propeller unit heaters.

END OF SECTION 238239.16

SECTION 238413.29

SELF-CONTAINED STEAM HUMIDIFIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Other related sections:
 - 1. 230993.11 Sequence Of Operations

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Self-contained, atmospheric steam generated electric-resistance humidifiers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of humidifiers. Include piping details, plans, elevations, sections, details of components, distributor tubes/manifolds, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For humidifiers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location and installation of humidifiers with distributor tubes/manifolds in ducts and plenums or occupied space. Revise locations and elevations to suit field conditions and to ensure proper humidifier operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with AHRI 640.
- C. Comply with UL 998.
- D. Listed and labeled by CE, ETL and CSA.
- E. Listed and labeled by ETL.
- F. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 SELF-CONTAINED ELECTRIC-RESISTANCE HUMIDIFIERS

- A. Capacities and Characteristics: As scheduled on the drawings.
- B. Water Type: Suitable for use with deionized or reverse osmosis water.
- C. Immersion Heating:
 - 1. Evaporation Chamber: Cleanable, stainless steel, type 304 or stainless steel, type 316.
 - 2. Elements: Incoloy-sheathed, stainless-steel sheathed, or alloy-sheathed aluminum.

D. Wall Mounted Cabinet:

1. Powder-coated enclosure, factory-insulated for safe operating surface temperature, for housing heater cylinder, electrical wiring, components, controls, and control panel.
2. Hinged or removable cover, keyed to restrict unauthorized access.
3. Plumbing and electrical components housed in separate parts of the cabinet.
4. Threaded outlet in bottom of cabinet for drain piping.

E. Control Panel:

1. Touchscreen controller with standard building automation and Online connectivity:
 - a. Intuitive touchscreen control with color graphic user interface.
 - b. Standard building automation communication protocols BACnet IP, BACnet MSTP and Modbus. Additional hardware required for building automation communication not acceptable.
 - c. Embedded web interface for easy configuration and remote monitoring from any computer with a web browser over a local area network (LAN) connection.
 - d. USB interface for new software/feature upload and download of operational information.
 - e. Single or dual channel analog signal acceptance, supporting both demand and transducer control. Ability to control setpoint from humidifier control when using transducer controls.
2. Microprocessor-based control system for modulating control.
 - a. Modulating capability from 100% down to 4%.
 - b. Control accuracy up to +/- 1% RH.
3. Factory-wired disconnect switch.
4. Liquid-crystal display.
5. Programmable keypad.
6. Low-voltage control circuit, with fused transformer.
7. Diagnostic, maintenance, alarm, and status features.
8. Safety switch interlocked to shut off heaters when cabinet is open.
9. Internal electrical controls prewired to appropriately marked terminals for field connection.
10. Electrical terminals for connection to each controlling device and alarm.
11. NEMA 250, type 3R, to comply with environmental conditions at installed locations.
12. Material: Powder-coated steel.
13. Building Automation System Interface:
 - a. Full Communication Interface: BACnet MSTP.

F. Controls:

1. Solenoid Magnetic Fill Valve Maintains Water Level: Stainless steel or Bronze, including fill tee with built-in air gap to prevent back siphoning. Include stainless-steel or bronze inlet strainer.
2. Field-adjustable timer or conductivity controller to control drain cycle for flush duration and interval.
3. Controls shall drain tanks if no demand for humidification for more than 72 hours.
4. Set-point adjustment.
5. Low-water switch shuts down heater to protect elements.

6. Over-temperature switch shuts down heater.
 7. Aquastat maintains minimum water temperature in tank during short periods of no demand.
 8. Foaming detection and correction.
 9. Dual magnetic electronic float system located outside of boiling water.
 10. Scale management system.
- G. Atmospheric Steam Distributer Tube(s): Single or multiple, atmospheric steam distributer tube extending across entire width of duct or plenum and equipped with mounting brackets on ends. Nozzles/metered orifices are spaced evenly along distributer tubes and provide dry and uniform steam distribution.
1. Material: Stainless steel.
 2. Insulation: Uninsulated.
- H. Atmospheric Steam Panel Distribution Manifold:
1. Prefabricated steam dispersion grid assembly.
 2. Designed for short absorption distance.
 3. Suitable for atmospheric steam applications.
 4. Extending the full width and height of duct or plenum.
 5. Horizontal or Vertical header with multiple vertical or horizontal tubes designed for dry steam injection within short absorption distance.
 6. Nozzles/metered orifices, spaced evenly along distribution tubes, provide dry and uniform steam distribution.
 7. Distribution panel extending the full width and height of duct or plenum.
 8. Headers and Distribution Tubes:
 - a. Material: Stainless steel.
 - b. Insulation: Insulated, minimum R-0.5.
 9. Steam Separator: Separators/baffles, integral to the header, provide condensate-free steam to distribution tubes.
- I. Accessories:
1. Steam and Condensate Hoses: For interconnection of humidifier to distributer tube(s)/manifold.
 2. Standard building automation communication protocol BACnet MSTP capability.
 3. Scale tank.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, air-handling units, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before humidifier installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install humidifiers with required clearance for service and maintenance. Maintain path, downstream from humidifiers, clear of obstructions as required by ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Seal all duct and plenum penetrations with flange.
- C. Install humidifier assemblies in metal ducts and casings constructed according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."
- D. Install galvanized-steel drain pan under each manifold mounted in duct.
 - 1. Construct drain pans with connection for drain; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2. Connect to condensate trap and drainage piping.
 - 3. Extend drain pan upstream and downstream from tube(s)/manifold a minimum distance recommended by manufacturer but not less than required by ASHRAE 62.1.
- E. Install tube(s)/manifold supply piping pitched to drain condensate back to humidifier or as recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- G. Install all manufacturer-furnished accessories in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - 1. Install piping adjacent to humidifiers to allow service and maintenance.
 - 2. Install shutoff valve, strainer, backflow preventer, and union in humidifier makeup line.
- B. Install piping specialties furnished by manufacturer but not factory mounted.
- C. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- D. Connect breeching full size to steam-generator outlet.

- E. Connect combustion-air inlet to intake terminal using PVC piping with solvent-cemented joints. Run from boiler connection to outside and terminate adjacent to flue termination.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
 - 3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between control devices.
- C. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Humidifier will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Department's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain humidifiers.

END OF SECTION 238413.29

SECTION 25 08 00

COMMISSIONING OF INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 – General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. The requirements of this Section apply to all sections of Division 25, or Division 23 if Division 25 is not used on this project.
- B. Owner's Project Requirements (OPR) and Basis of Design (BOD) documentation prepared by Owner and Architect contains requirements that apply to this Section.
- C. This project will have selected building systems commissioned. The complete list of equipment and systems to be commissioned are specified in Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. The commissioning process, which the Contractor is responsible to execute, is defined in Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Division 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- B. Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.4 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for commissioning plumbing systems, sub-systems and equipment. This Section supplements the general requirements specified in Section 01 91 13 General Commissioning Requirements.
- B. The commissioning activities have been developed to support the United States Green Building Council (USGBC) LEED™ rating program and to support delivery of project performance in accordance with the Contract Documents developed with the approval of the OWNER.
- C. Commissioning activities and documentation for the LEED™ section on "Energy and Atmosphere" prerequisite of "Fundamental Building Systems Commissioning".
- D. Commissioning activities and documentation for the LEED™ section on "Energy and Atmosphere" requirements for the "Enhanced Building System Commissioning" credit.
- E. Refer to Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for more specifics regarding processes and procedures as well as roles and responsibilities for all Commissioning Team members.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for definitions.

1.6 COMMISSIONED SYSTEMS

- A. Commissioning of a system or systems specified in this Division is part of the construction process. Documentation and testing of these systems, as well as training of the OWNER's Operation and Maintenance personnel, is required in cooperation with the OWNER and the Commissioning Agent.
- B. For a list of Automation systems that will be commissioned refer to 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. The commissioning process requires review of selected Submittals. The Commissioning Agent will identify, from a list provided by the Contractors, which submittals will be reviewed by the Commissioning Agent.
- B. The commissioning process requires Submittal review simultaneously with engineering review. Specific submittal requirements related to the commissioning process are specified in Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SYSTEMS READINESS CHECKLISTS

- A. The Contractor shall complete Systems Readiness Checklists to verify systems, sub-systems, and equipment installation is complete and systems are ready for Systems Functional Testing. The Commissioning Agent will prepare Systems Readiness Checklists to be used to document equipment installation. The Contractor shall complete the checklists. Completed checklists shall be submitted to the OWNER and to the Commissioning Agent for review. The Commissioning Agent may spot-check a sample of completed checklists. If the Commissioning Agent determines that the information provided on the checklist is not accurate, the Commissioning Agent will return the marked-up checklist to the Contractor for correction and re-submission. If the Commissioning Agent determines that a significant number of completed checklists for similar equipment are not accurate, the Commissioning Agent will select a broader sample of checklists for review. If the Commissioning Agent determines that a significant number of the broader sample of checklists is also inaccurate, all the checklists for the type of equipment will be returned to the Contractor for correction and re-submission. Refer to SECTION 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for submittal requirements for System Readiness Checklists, Equipment Startup Reports, and other commissioning documents.

3.2 CONTRACTORS TESTS

- A. Contractor tests as required by other sections of Division 25 shall be scheduled and documented. The Commissioning Agent will witness selected Contractor tests. Contractor tests shall be completed prior to scheduling Systems Functional Performance Testing.

3.3 SYSTEMS FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. The Commissioning Process includes Systems Functional Performance Testing that is intended to test systems functional performance under steady state conditions, to test system reaction to changes in operating conditions, and system performance under emergency conditions. The Commissioning Agent will prepare detailed Systems Functional Performance Test procedures for review and approval by the Owner's Representative. The Contractor shall review and comment on the tests prior to approval. The Contractor shall provide the required labor, materials, and test equipment identified in the test procedure to perform the tests. The Commissioning Agent will direct and document the testing. The Contractor shall sign the test reports to verify tests were performed. See Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS, for additional details.

3.4 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL

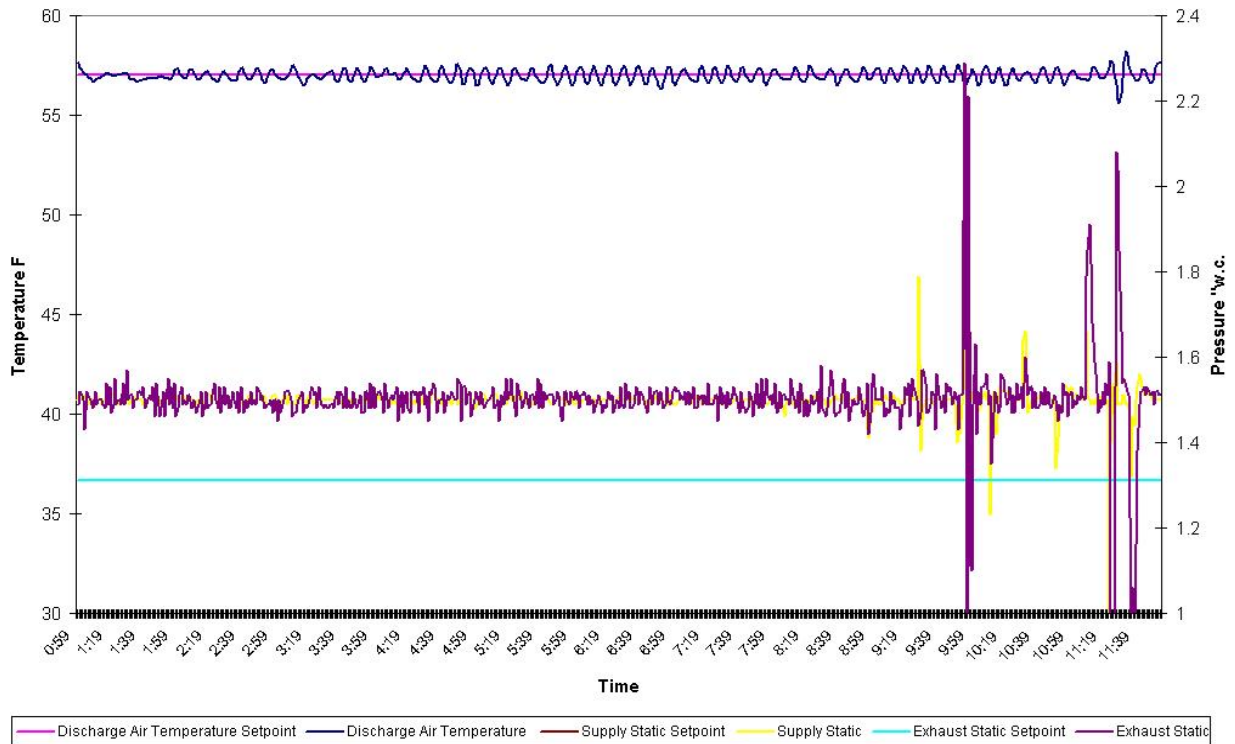
- A. Training of the OWNER operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Owner's Representative and Commissioning Agent. Provide competent, factory authorized personnel to provide instruction to operation and maintenance personnel concerning the location, operation, and troubleshooting of the installed systems. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Owner's Representative after submission and approval of formal training plans. Refer to Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS and Division 25 Sections for additional Contractor training requirements.

3.5 AUTOMATION SYSTEM AND TEMPERATURE CONTROLS

- A. The Controls Contractor shall provide a wireless internet network in the building for use during controls programming, checkout, and commissioning. This network will allow project team members to more effectively program, view, manipulate and test control devices while being in the same room as the controlled device.
- B. The Controls Contractor shall provide graphical trending through the DDC control system of systems being commissioned. Trending requirements will be dictated by the CxA and included with the Functional Performance Test Procedures and/or determined while execution of testing. Trending shall occur before, during and after functional testing. The Controls Contractor shall be responsible for producing graphical representations of the trended DDC points that show each system operating properly during steady state conditions as well as during the functional tests. These graphical reports shall be submitted to the CxA for review and analysis before, during dynamic operation, and after functional testing. The Controls Contractor is required to provide, but not limited to, the following trend requirements and trend submissions:
 - 1. Pre-testing, Testing, Post-testing – Trend reports of trend logs and graphical trend plots are required as defined by the CxA. The trend log points, sampling rate, graphical plot configuration, and duration will be dictated by the CxA. At any time during the Commissioning Process the CxA may dictate changes to aspects of trending as deemed necessary for proper system analysis. No changes in trending requirements will be a basis for additional service change orders by the Contractor. Any pre-test trend analysis comments generated by the Commissioning Team will be addressed and resolved by the Contractor prior to the execution of Functional Performance Testing.
 - 2. Dynamic plotting – The Contractor shall also provide dynamic plotting during functional testing at frequent intervals for points determined by the CxA. The graphical plots will be formatted and plotted at durations dictated by the CxA.

- The graphical plots shall be provided with a dual y-axis allowing 15 or more trend points (series) plotted simultaneously the graph with each series in distinct color. The plots will further require title, axis naming, legend etc. all dictated by the CxA. If this cannot be sufficiently accomplished directly in the Building Automation System then it is the responsibility of the Contractor to plot these trend logs in Microsoft Excel at the direction of the CxA. The following table and graph is a reference sample similar to what will be expected for this project.

Trend Log #1: Temperature & Pressure		
Data Collection Frequency		1 minute
Trend Log Duration		1 week
Trend Log Start Date/Time		Minimum 1 day before test
Trend Log Stop Date/Time		Minimum 5 days after test
Point #1		Discharge Air Temperature
Point #2		Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint
Point #3		Supply Static Pressure
Point #4		Supply Static Pressure Setpoint
Point #5		Return Static Pressure
Point #6		Return Static Pressure Setpoint



- In addition to the documentation requirements outlined above and in 019113 General Commissioning Requirements, the Contractor is required to provide the following

information prior to Functional Performance Testing. Any documentation that is modified after submission needs to be recorded and resent as As-Built records.

- a. Point-to-Point checkout documentation;
- b. Sensor field calibration documentation similar to the table shown below;

SYSTEM			
Sensor	Measured Value	BAS Value	Correction Factor
Discharge air temperature	55.4 °F	57.59 °F	-2.19

- c. A sensor calibration table listing the referencing the location of procedures to following in the O&M manuals, and the frequency at which calibration should be performed for all sensors, separated by system, sub-system, and type. The calibration requirements shall be submitted both in the O&M manuals and separately in a standalone document containing all sensors for inclusion in the commissioning documentation. The following table is a sample that can be used as a template for submission.

SYSTEM		
Sensor	Calibration Frequency	O&M Calibration Procedure Reference
Discharge air temperature	Once a year	Volume I Section D.3.aa
Discharge static pressure	Every 6 months	Volume II Section A.1.c

- d. Loop tuning documentation and constants for each loop of the building systems. The documentation shall be submitted in outline or table separated by system, control type (e.g. heating valve temperature control); proportional, integral and derivative constants, interval (and bias if used) for each loop. The following table is a sample that can be used as a template for submission.

AIR HANDLING UNIT AHU-1				
Control Reference	Proportional Constant	Integral Constant	Derivative Constant	Interval
Heating Valve Output	1000	20	10	2 sec.

END OF SECTION 25 08 00

SECTION 260100

BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract apply to this and the other sections of Division 26.
- B. This section is a Division 26 Common Work Results for Electrical section and is a part of each Division 26 Section.
- C. Requirements of the following Division 26 Sections apply to this section:
 - 1. Common Work Results for Electrical.

1.2 SUMMARY:

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements for electrical installations.
 - 1. Pre-Construction Meeting.
 - 2. Abbreviations and Definitions.
 - 3. Permits, Codes, and Inspections.
 - 4. Utilities.
 - 5. Visiting Premises.
 - 6. Submittals.
 - 7. Project Drawings and Specifications.
 - 8. Cooperation and Coordination with Other Trades.
 - 9. Space Priority.
 - 10. Product Listing.
 - 11. Nameplate Data.
 - 12. Record Documents.
 - 13. Maintenance Manuals.
 - 14. Warranty.
 - 15. Performance of Equipment.
 - 16. Delivery, Storage and Handling.
 - 17. Rough-ins.
 - 18. Electrical Installations.
 - 19. Cutting and Patching.
 - 20. Cleaning.
 - 21. Testing.
 - 22. Instructions to the Owner.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Utilize the following abbreviations and definitions for discernment within the Drawings and Specifications.

ANSI	American National Standards Institute.
ASA	American Standards Association.
ASTM	American Society of Testing Materials.
CBM	Certified Ballast Manufacturers.
E.C.	Electrical Contractor.

EIA	Electronic Industries Association.
ETL	Electrical Testing Laboratories, Inc.
G.C.	General Contractor.
HVAC	Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning Contractor.
ICEA	International Cable Engineers Association.
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.
IES	Illuminating Engineering Society.
NEC	National Electrical Code.
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association.
O.E.M.	Original Equipment Manufacturer.
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Admin.
P.C.	Plumbing Contractor.
UL	Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. PROVIDE means to furnish, place, erect, connect, test and turn over to Owner, complete and ready for the regular operation, the particular work referred to. INSTALL means to join, unite, fasten, link, attach, set up or otherwise connect together before testing and turning over to Owner, complete and ready for regular operation, the particular work referred to.
- B. FURNISH means to supply all materials, labor, equipment, testing apparatus, controls, tests, accessories and all other items customarily required for the proper and complete application for the particular work referred to.
- C. WIRING means the inclusion of all raceways, fittings, conductors, connectors, tape, junction and outlet boxes, connections, splices, and all other items necessary and/or required in connection with such work.
- D. CONDUIT means the inclusion of all fittings, hangers, supports, sleeves, etc.
- E. AS DIRECTED means as directed by the Engineer.
- F. CONCEALED means embedded in masonry or other construction, installed behind wall furring or within double partitions or installed within hung ceilings.
- G. ACCEPTED means as accepted by the Engineer.
- H. APPROVED means as approved by the Engineer.
- I. EQUAL means equivalent as approved by the Engineer.
- J. CONTRACTOR as stated herein shall mean Electrical Contractor.

1.5 PERMITS, CODE, AND INSPECTIONS

- A. General: Contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits and inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations having jurisdiction for work included under this Contract and shall submit approval certificates to the Engineer.

- B. Codes: The electrical installation shall comply fully with all local, county, and state laws, ordinances and regulations applicable to electrical installations.
- C. The Electrical installation shall be in compliance with the requirements of the latest applicable versions as per the Pennsylvania Uniform Construction Code:
 1. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
 2. Institution of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE).
 3. National Electric Code (NEC) 2008.
 4. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).
 5. National Board of Fire Underwriter's (NBFU).
 6. Authority having Jurisdiction.
 7. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL).
 8. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA).
 9. National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA).
 10. National Safety Code.
 11. Legislative Act 235 (1965) - Handicapped.
 12. Legislative Act 287 (1974) - Excavation.
 13. International Building Code (IBC) 2009.
 14. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
 15. All local codes and ordinances in effect and having jurisdiction.
 16. All requirements of electric, telephone, and CATV utility companies.
 17. All approved published instructions set forth by equipment manufacturers.
- D. Submit certificates issued by approved authorized agencies to indicate conformance of all work with the above requirements, as well as any additional certificates as may be required for the performance of this contract work.
- E. Should any change in Drawings or Specifications be required to comply with governmental regulations, the Contractor shall notify Engineer prior to execution of the work. The work shall be carried out according to the requirements of such code in accordance with the instruction of the Engineer and at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.6 VISITING PREMISES

- A. General: The Bidder shall visit the project site before submitting their bid, in order to familiarize themselves with existing conditions that may affect their work. It is the Contractor's responsibility to analyze existing conditions. Sufficient allowances shall be provided in the Contractor's bid to cover work, due to existing conditions, that will be required to complete this contract work.
- B. By submission of a bid, the Contractor is attesting that responsible personnel did in fact visit the site during the bidding period and verified all existing pertinent conditions.
- C. Contractor shall verify all measurements and dimensions at the site prior to submitting a bid.

1.7 PROJECT DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Contractor shall carefully examine the Drawings and Specifications of all trades and report all discrepancies to the Engineer in writing to obtain corrective action. No departures from the Contract Documents will be made without prior written approval from the Engineer.

- B. Questions or disputes regarding the intent or meaning of Contract Documents shall be resolved by the interpretation of the Engineer. The Engineer's interpretation is final and binding.
- C. The Drawings and Specifications are not intended to define all details, finish materials, and special construction that may be required or necessary. The Contractor shall provide all installations complete and adequate as implied by the project documents.
- D. Drawings are diagrammatic only and do not show exact routes and locations of equipment and associated wiring. The Contractor shall verify the work of all other trades and shall arrange their work to avoid conflicts. In the event of a conflict, the Contractor shall obtain corrective action from the Engineer.
- E. All work shall be considered new, unless noted otherwise.

1.8 COOPERATION AND COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. This Electrical Contractor must cooperate completely and coordinate work with the Contractors of other trades providing equipment under this division and other divisions of the specifications.
- B. Coordinate the location of each and every electrical panel, pullbox, transfer switch, ect. with the Engineer before rough-in. The above required floor plans shall be reviewed and approved by the Owner and Engineer and shall be signed by both the Owner and the Engineer.
- C. Individual trade interference drawings may be used as shop drawings and/or as record drawings at the completion of the project.

1.9 COORDINATION OF THE WORK

- A. Certain materials will be provided by other trades. Examine the contract documents to ascertain these requirements.
- B. Carefully check space requirements with the existing conditions and the physical confines of the area to ensure that all material can be installed in the spaces allotted there to including finished suspended ceilings. Make modifications there to as required.
- C. Transmit to other trades all information required for work to be provided under their respective sections in ample time for installation.
- D. Where ever work interconnects with work of other trades, coordinate with other trades to insure that all trades have the information necessary so that they may properly install all the necessary connections and equipment. Identify all items of work that require access so that the ceiling trade will know where to install access doors and panels.
- E. Due to the type of the installation, a fixed sequence of operation is required to properly install the complete systems. Coordinate, project and schedule work with the Engineer in accordance with the construction sequence.
- F. The locations of panels and other equipment indicated on the Drawings are approximately correct, but they are understood to be subject to such revision as may be found necessary or desirable at the time the work is installed.

- G. Exercise particular caution with reference to the location of panels and have precise and definite locations approved by the Engineer before proceeding with the installation.
- H. The Drawings show only the general run of raceways and approximate location of outlets. Any significant changes in location of outlets, cabinets, etc., necessary in order to meet field conditions shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Engineer and receive his approval before such alterations are made. All such modifications shall be made without additional cost to the owner.
- I. Obtain from the Engineer in the field the location of such devices or equipment not definitely located on the Drawings.
- J. Circuit "tags" in the form of arrows are used where shown to indicate the home runs of raceways to electrical distribution points. These tags show the circuits in each home run and the panel designation. Show the actual circuit numbers on the finished record tracing and on panel directory card. Where circuiting is not indicated, Electrical Contractor must provide required circuiting in accordance with the loading indicated on the drawings and/or as directed.
- K. The Drawings generally do not indicate the exact number wires in each conduit for the branch circuit wiring of fixtures, and outlets, or the actual circuiting. Provide the correct wire size and quantity as required by the indicated circuiting and/or circuit numbers indicated and control wiring diagrams, if any, specified voltage drop or maximum distance limitations, and the applicable requirements of the NEC.
- L. Adjust location of conduits, panels, equipment, pull boxes, fixtures, etc. to accommodate the work to prevent interferences, both anticipated and encountered. Determine the exact route and location of each raceway prior to installation.
- M. Contractor shall furnish services of an experienced Superintendent, who shall be in constant charge of all work, and who shall coordinate his work with the work of other trades. No work shall be installed before coordinating with other trades.

1.10 NAMEPLATE DATA

- A. Provide permanent operational data nameplate on each item of power operated equipment, indicating manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and similar essential data. Locate nameplate in an accessible location.

1.11 OMISSIONS FROM THE DRAWINGS

- A. Should a Bidder find discrepancies in or omissions from the drawings or specifications or be in doubt as to their meaning, they shall notify the Engineer before submitting their proposal. The Engineer will in turn, send written instructions to all Bidders. The Design Professional will be responsible for oral instructions. If the Contractor fails to comply with this requirement, they shall accept the Engineer's interpretation as to the intended meaning of the drawings and specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Major items of equipment shall have manufacturer's name, address, and catalog number on a plate securely attached in a convenient place. All equipment or apparatus of any one (1) system must be the product of one (1) manufacturer or approved equivalent products of a number of manufacturer's that are suitable for use in a unified system.
- B. All materials and equipment for which Underwriter's Laboratories have established standards shall bear a UL label of approval.
- C. In all cases where a device, function or item of equipment is herein referred to in the singular, such reference shall apply to as many such items as are required to complete the installation.
- D. All listed materials and equipment shown on drawings and/or specified herein, are indicative of complete and whole units and shall be furnished as such.
- E. Comply with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations as minimum criteria for the installation of equipment.
- F. All materials and equipment provided under this Contract shall be completely satisfactory and acceptable in operation, performance and capacity. No approval, either verbal or written, of any drawing, descriptive data or samples of such materials, equipment and/or appurtenances, shall relieve this Contractor of his responsibility to turn over all items in perfect working order at completion of the work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for distinct identification; adequately packaged and protected to prevent damage during shipment, storage and handling.
- B. Store equipment and materials at the site, unless off-site storage is authorized in writing. Protect stored equipment and materials from damage.
- C. Coordinate deliveries of electrical materials and equipment to minimize construction site congestion. Limit each shipment of materials and equipment to the items and quantities needed for the smooth and efficient flow of installations.

3.2 ROUGH-IN

- A. Obtain written approval of locations of all electrical devices from the Engineer prior to rough-in. The Engineer reserves the right to move any or all electrical devices prior to rough-in, at no additional cost.
- B. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.

- C. Refer to equipment specifications for rough-in requirements.
- D. Contractor shall obtain detailed and specific information regarding location of all equipment. Final locations may differ from those indicated on drawings. Work improperly placed because of Contractor's failure to obtain this information shall be relocated and reinstalled as directed, without additional costs to the Contract.
- E. The design shall be subject to such revisions as may be necessary to overcome building obstructions. No charges shall be made in location of equipment without prior written approval.
- F. Rough-ins for devices in concrete block walls shall be installed level and plumb. Devices adjacent to each other shall be installed at the same elevation. Saw cut openings to the size required, such that oversized cover plates are not required.

3.3 INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of electrical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Coordinate electrical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
 - 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
 - 3. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in other building components during progress of construction, to allow for electrical installations.
 - 4. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 - 5. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
 - 6. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
 - 7. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Engineer.
 - 8. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components.
 - 9. Coordinate the cutting and patching of building components to accommodate installation of electrical equipment and materials.
 - 10. Coordinate the installation of electrical materials and equipment above existing ceilings with suspension system, existing mechanical equipment and systems, and existing structural components.
 - 11. Install electrical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations.
 - 12. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

3.4 EQUIPMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide supports, hangers and auxiliary structural members required for support of the work.

- B. Furnish and set all sleeves for passage of raceways through structural, masonry and concrete walls and floors and elsewhere as will be required for the proper protection of each raceway and passing through building surfaces.

3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching associated with all Division 26 work:
 - 1. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of electrical equipment and materials required to:
 - a. Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.
 - b. Remove and replace defective Work.
 - c. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - d. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.
 - e. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
 - f. Upon written instructions from the Engineer, uncover and restore Work to provide for Engineer observation of concealed Work.
 - 2. Cut, remove, and legally dispose of selected electrical equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of electrical items indicated to be removed and items made obsolete by the new Work.
 - 3. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
 - 4. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
 - 5. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
 - 6. Arrange and pay for repairs required to restore other work, because of damage caused as a result of electrical installations.
 - 7. No additional compensation will be authorized for cutting and patching work that is necessitated by ill-timed, defective or non-conforming installations.
 - 8. Patch all finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers. For Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Contractor is responsible for returning work areas to owner in a safe and clean condition.

3.7 DEBRIS

- A. Debris resulting from work under this Contract, shall all be removed promptly from the premises by this Contractor.
- B. Remove all dead wire and associated raceway resulting from work under this contract.

3.8 TESTING

- A. Contractor, at his own expense, shall make any tests directed by an inspection authority or by the Engineer and shall provide all equipment, instruments and materials to make such tests.

- B. All overload devices, including equipment furnished under other contracts, shall be set and adjusted to suit load conditions.
- C. Unless otherwise approved, all connections shall be made and all components shall be in place, complete and operational, at time of final inspection and tests.
- D. Time of such tests, the manner in which they are made and the results of the tests, shall be subject to approval.
- E. Upon completion of work, all component parts, both singularly and as a whole, shall be set, calibrated, adjusted and left in satisfactory operating condition to suit load conditions, by means of instruments furnished by the Contractor.
- F. Complete testing of equipment and systems shall be provided throughout this project.
- G. Industry standards shall apply except as otherwise specified.
- H. Provide all labor, premium labor and materials required by shop and field testing as specified in the Contract Documents and as required by the authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Notify the Engineer seven (7) days prior to the testing dates. Upon completion of a test, a statement of certification shall be forwarded to the Engineer for their approval.
- J. Conduct tests at a time agreeable to the Engineer. Provide premium labor as necessary.
- K. Products which are found defective or do not pass such tests shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Tests shall be repeated.

3.9 FIRE STOPS

- A. Openings for electrical equipment penetrating a fire rated floor, wall or ceiling, shall be resealed as required by Code. Install fire rated sealant equal to or greater than the fire rating of the penetrated surface.

3.10 WATERPROOFING

- A. Avoid, if possible, the penetration of any waterproof membranes such as roofs, machine room floors, basement walls and the like. If such penetration is necessary, perform it prior to the waterproofing and furnish all sleeves or pitch-pockets required.
- B. If Contractor penetrates any walls or surfaces after they have been waterproofed, they shall restore the waterproof integrity of that surface at their own expense and as directed by the Engineer.
- C. Contractor shall advise the Engineer and obtain written permission before penetrating any waterproof membrane, even where such penetration is shown on the drawings. Such work shall be performed in such a manner as to maintain any warranties in place.

3.11 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS AND NOTIFICATION

- A. The Contractor shall notify, in writing, the Owner and the Engineer of construction progress. At a minimum, the Contractor shall notify at the 50% rough in of conduit, prior to enclosing or burying, and at "punch list" time lines.

END OF SECTION 260100

SECTION 260200

QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

- A. Section Includes:
1. Contractors Guarantee.
 2. Materials, Workmanship, and Methods.
 3. Control of Installation.

1.2 CONTRACTORS GUARANTEE:

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall guarantee for a period of one (1) year from the date of acceptance of the job that all equipment, material, and labor furnished by them are free from defects. Any defects in material and workmanship shall be corrected by the Electrical Contractor without further expense to the Owner. All items specified to have a longer warranty shall be guaranteed for that longer period. Controls shall have a minimum of two (2) year guarantee on parts and labor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce Work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step-in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the Work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

3.2 MATERIALS, WORKMANSHIP, AND METHOD

- A. All materials and equipment shall be new, of highest quality, and shall conform in all respects to these specifications. All work shall be performed in keeping with the highest standards of workmanship and quality. All mechanical equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions which shall be available at the job site. All mechanical equipment shall bear the label of an approved agency.
- B. The means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures, and job site safety shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.

3.3 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not conforming to specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Architect, it is not practical to remove and replace the Work, Architect will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

END OF SECTION 260200

SECTION 260500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. This section is a Division 26 Common Work Results for Electrical Section and is a part of each Division 26 section.
- B. The Division 26 contractor shall be responsible for all work listed on the drawings and in the specification section for Division 28, and shall apply to this section.
- C. Coordinate work of Division 26 with the work of Divisions 21, 22 and 23.
- D. Drawings, General Provisions, Special Provisions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes limited scope general construction materials and methods for application with electrical installations as follows:
 - 1. Sleeves and Penetrations.
 - 2. Fire Stopping
 - 3. Locations
 - 4. Outages and Disruptions
 - 5. Temporary
 - 6. Painting
 - 7. Vibration Isolation

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for the following products:
 - 1. Joint sealers
 - 2. Firestop materials
- C. Shop drawings detailing fabrication and installation for metal fabrications and wood supports, and anchorage for electrical materials and equipment.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All products, materials and processes shall comply with the Design and Construction Standards of DGS. Where a conflict arises between these specifications and / or the project drawings and the Design and Construction Standards of DGS, the Design and Construction Standards shall be followed.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer for the installation and application joint sealers, access panels, and doors.

- C. Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 1. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
- D. Fire-resistance Ratings: Where a fire-resistance classification is indicated, provide access door assembly with panel door, frame, hinge, and latch from manufacturer listed in the UL "Building Materials Directory" for rating shown.
 - 1. Provide UL Label on each fire-rated access door.
- E. ASTM E-814 or UL 1479 for firestop system assemblies that provide a fire rating equal to that of construction being penetrated.
- F. ANSI Compliance: Comply with requirements of ANSI Standard A13.1, "Scheme for the identification of Piping Systems," with regard to type and size of lettering for cable labels.
- G. Electrical Component Standard: Components and installation shall comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver joint sealer materials in original unopened containers or bundles with labels informing about manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- B. Store and handle joint sealer materials in compliance with the manufacturers' recommendations to prevent their deterioration and damage.
- C. Deliver firestop materials undamaged in manufacturer's clearly labeled, unopened containers, identified with brand type, and UL label. Store materials under cover and protect from weather and damage. Comply with recommended procedure, precautions and remedies described in material data sheets.

1.6 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate electrical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for mechanical installations.
- C. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- E. Coordinate connection of electrical services with equipment provided under other sections of the specifications.

- F. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors where items requiring access are concealed behind finished surfaces.
- G. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- H. Coordinate delivery of firestop materials with scheduled installation date to allow minimum storage at job site
- I. Coordinate the shut-off and disconnection of electrical service with the Engineer.
- J. Notify the Engineer at least 5 days prior to commencing demolition operations.
- K. Perform demolition in phases as indicated. Coordinate electrical equipment installation with other building components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MISCELLANEOUS METALS

- A. Steel plates, shapes, bars, and bar grating: ASTM A-36.
- B. Cold-formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A-500
- C. Hot-rolled Steel Tubing: ASTM A-501.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A-53, Schedule 40, welded.
- E. Non-shrink, Non-metallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous grout, recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Fasteners: Zinc-coated, type, grade, and class as required.

2.2 JOINT SEALERS

- A. General: Joint sealers, joint fillers, and other related materials compatible with each other and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application.
- B. Colors: As selected by the Engineer from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Elastomeric Joint Sealers: Provide the following types:
 - 1. One part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for uses in non-traffic areas for glass, aluminum, and non-porous joint substrates; formulated with fungicide; intended for sealing interior joints with non-porous substrates; and subject to in-service exposure to conditions of high humidity and temperature extremes.

2.3 FIRE STOPPING

- A. Use only that manufacturer listed in UL Fire Resistance Directory for the UL system involved.
- B. All firestopping materials used on this project shall be the products of one manufacturer. Each trade shall use products of the same manufacturer.
- C. Standards: The firestop systems and products shall have been tested in accordance with the procedures of U.L. 1479 (ASTM E814-81) and material shall be UL classified as Fill, Void or Cavity Materials for use in Through-Penetration Firestops. The firestop system shall comply with NEC Paragraph 300-21. All work shall comply with NFPA 101-Life Safety Code, latest edition.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. All construction under this contract shall be completed in a neat and craftsman-like manner. Work that, in the judgement of the Engineer, is not satisfactorily installed shall be removed and replaced to the Engineer satisfaction, at the Contractor's expense.
- B. Housekeeping: Throughout construction, all work areas and storage areas shall be kept clean. The Contractor shall keep all items clean of dirt, rust, dust and fingermarks.

3.2 SLEEVES AND PENETRATIONS

- A. Contractor shall provide sleeves where raceways pass through walls, partitions, floors, and ceilings.
- B. Sleeves in bearing and/or masonry walls and/or partitions shall be of galvanized rigid steel conduit finished with smooth edges. For other than masonry or bearing walls/partitions, sleeves shall be EMT conduit.
- C. Sleeves in masonry ceilings and floors shall be galvanized rigid steel conduit finished with smooth edges. For other than masonry ceilings and floors, sleeves shall be EMT conduit. All sleeves shall be properly installed and cemented in place.
- D. Floor sleeves shall extend 1" above finished floor, unless otherwise noted. Space between floor sleeves and piping or raceway shall be caulked with UL listed fire resistive and waterproof caulking compound as approved.
- E. Where piping or raceways pass through waterproofed floors or walls, design of sleeves shall be such that waterproofing can be flashed into and around the sleeves.
- F. Where items provided under this Contract pass through roofs this Contractor shall coordinate the installation with the Roofing Contractor and shall provide an approved penetration. The Electrical Contractor shall make provisions not to void the roof bond.
- G. Sleeves through exterior walls below grade shall be fitted with seals which have the ability to be ratcheted tight via bolts.

- H. Where sleeves pass through walls from the interior to the exterior, conduits shall be sealed on the inside with an UL approved sealant

3.3 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Where conduits, conduit sleeves, wireways and other electrical raceways or cables pass through fire partitions, fire walls, fire floors, or smoke walls, the Electrical Contractor shall provide a fire or smoke stopping that provides an effective barrier against the spread of fire, smoke or gases.
- B. Installation of Fire-Stopping Materials: Install materials to fill openings around electrical services penetrating floors and walls and provide fire-stops with fire-resistance ratings indicated for floor or wall assembly in which penetration occurs. Install materials in accordance with printed instructions of the UL Fire Resistance Directory and per manufacturer's published instructions.
- C. All cables that are installed in conduit sleeves or in wireways through fire or smoke floors or partitions shall be provided with an equally rated re-enterable U.L. listed fire and smoke rated silicone RTV foam in the opening.
- D. Examine fire/smoke-stopped areas to ensure proper installation before concealing or enclosing areas.
- E. Keep areas of work accessible until inspection by applicable code authorities.

3.4 LOCATIONS

- A. Obtain written approval of locations of all electrical devices from the Engineer prior to rough-in. The Engineer reserves the right to move any or all electrical devices prior to rough-in, at no additional cost.
- B. Contractor shall obtain detailed and specific information regarding location of all equipment. Final locations may differ from those indicated on Drawings. Work improperly placed because of Contractor's failure to obtain this information shall be relocated and reinstalled as directed, without additional costs to the Contract.
- C. The design shall be subject to such revisions as may be necessary to overcome building obstructions. No changes shall be made in location of equipment without prior written approval.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Factory-painted equipment cabinets and trim shall not be field-painted except for touching up scratches or damage where necessary to achieve like-new finish. Touching up shall be done after equipment is in its final location.

3.6 VIBRATION ISOLATION

- A. Isolation mounting shall be provided for all moving equipment where the energy of the vibration is of sufficient magnitude to produce perceptible vibration or structure transmitted noise in occupied areas. Isolation equipment shall be selected, installed and adjusted in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

- B. All equipment and material shall be installed so as to operate without objectionable noise or vibration as determined by Engineer and Owner. Should such objectionable noise or vibration be produced and transmitted to occupied portions of the building by apparatus, piping or other parts of this work, any necessary changes as approved shall be made by the Contractor.
- C. All conduit terminations to noise or vibration producing equipment (i.e. motors, transformers) shall be made with a short section of liquid-tight flexible metal conduit.

3.7 OUTAGES AND DISRUPTIONS

- A. Continuity of operation of all essential HVAC, plumbing and electrical items, including water, gas, electrical service, lighting, outlets, power and controls for heating and cooling equipment, auxiliary systems, fire alarm, emergency lighting and power, program, sound, alarms and telephones shall be provided as required for occupancy of the premises during the construction period.
- B. The schedule and timing of any interruption of electrical service or disruption of occupied areas that may affect use of the premises by the Owner and the public shall be coordinated with the Engineer. Temporary or interim use feeders and facilities shall be provided by the Contractor, as approved and/or directed, to minimize the duration and extent of outages or interruptions.
- C. In areas where the construction work will interfere unduly with use of the premises, the Owner may direct that construction work be performed during time periods other than indicated above or on Saturdays, Sundays, or Holidays. Judgment as to whether such undue interference may exist shall rest solely with the Owner. Also, the Owner may require that temporary or interim use feeders and facilities shall be provided by the Contractor as approved and/or directed, to minimize the duration and extent of outages or interruptions.
- D. Preparatory work shall be performed as completely as possible in each instance prior to scheduled service outages.
- E. Contractor shall be responsible for any and all premium time/overtime required to perform outages and cutovers of services. Coordinate with Engineer.
- F. Contractor shall be responsible for any and all premium time/overtime required to complete the work in the various areas within the allotted time, as well as any premium/overtime required to install work through unaffected or remote areas from the work as necessary to maintain continuity of services and occupancy of the existing buildings, as required. Coordinate with Engineer.

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
3. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.
2. Section 271300 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.
3. Section 271500 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer's authorized service representative.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
 1. Cerro Wire LLC.
 2. Okonite Company (The).
 3. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 2. RoHS compliant.
 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 ASTM B 496 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 5. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 6. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 7. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
 8. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- F. Shield:
 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Encore Wire Corporation.
2. Okonite Company (The).
3. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

G. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, size as recommended by system manufacturer.

1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ILSCO.
 - 2. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - 3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: Copper.
 - 2. Type: One or Two hole with long barrels.
 - 3. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.
- G. PV Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway Underground feeder cable, Type UF.
- E. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway Underground branch-circuit cable, Type UF.
- I. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- J. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- K. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with dual tape shield.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is[**not**] permitted.
 - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:

- a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
- a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
- 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260523

CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 4. Category 6a balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 5. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 6. RS-485 cabling.
 - 7. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 8. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 9. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with eggshell black latex paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.3 CATEGORY 5e BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.
 - 2. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 3. West Penn Wire.

- C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

2.4 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 2. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 3. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

2.5 CATEGORY 6a BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 2. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
 - 3. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Riser Plenum.

G. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

2.6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
2. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
3. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.

C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as balanced twisted pair cable, from single source.

E. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e 110-style IDC for Category 6 66-style IDC for Category 5e. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:

- a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
- b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
- c. Replaceable connectors.
- d. 24 or 48 ports.

2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.

3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standards:
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 6, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - c. Category 6a, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

K. Faceplate:

1. Two Four Six port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall boxes.
2. Eight Ten Twelve port, vertical double-gang faceplates designed to mount to double-gang wall boxes.
3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.7 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired,, No. 20 No. 22 No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x28) (7x30) (7x32) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.

3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, No. 20 No. 22 No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x28) (7x30) (7x32) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.8 RS-485 CABLE

A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.9 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.10 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Encore Wire Corporation.
2. Service Wire Co.
3. Southwire Company.

B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

- D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- E. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 - 1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
 - 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
 - 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.

5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
 13. Provide strain relief.
 14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
1. Install wiring in raceways.

2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- F. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- G. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Test wells.

- 2) Ground rods.
- 3) Ground rings.
- 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS NFPA 70B.

- 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
- 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
 2. ERICO International Corporation.
 3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
 4. ILSCO.
 5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 6. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.

- 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
 - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one-piece clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.

- a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install barecopper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers,

humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
 - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.6 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet except as follows:
 - 1. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet.
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.

- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.7 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 - 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect

- grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install copper bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
1. Install copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- K. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 feet long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create the required length.
- L. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells , and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 - 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- F. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 - 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
 - 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 - 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- I. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 - c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2) Hilti, Inc.
 - 3) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA 101
 3. NECA 102.
 4. NECA 105.
 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 - d. Wheatland Tube Company.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
5. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
6. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
7. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
8. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
9. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 - d. Wheatland Tube Company.
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203, UL 886 and NFPA 70.
 6. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
 7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Kraloy.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fiberglass:
 - a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
 - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
 - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
4. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
5. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
6. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
7. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
8. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
9. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
10. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.

B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - c. Kraloy.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
 - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. B-line, an Eaton business.
 2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 3. Square D.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 2. FSR Inc.
 3. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 4. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 5. Wiremold / Legrand.

- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
 - 1. Material: Cast metal.
 - 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
 - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round or rectangular.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb.
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- M. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- N. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- P. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
 - c. Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried or concrete encased.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4 as specified on the plans.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: RNC identified for such use.
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Maintenance/Repair Bay
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.

2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
 - O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
 - P. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
 - Q. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
 - R. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
 - S. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
 - T. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
 - U. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
 - V. Surface Raceways:
 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
 - W. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
 - X. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.

5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- AA. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- EE. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- FF. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

- GG. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- HH. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- II. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260543

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks, and in single duct runs.
 - 2. Handholes and boxes.
 - 3. Manholes.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Summary" for requirements to provide stainless steel conduit and cast aluminum boxes for the wash bay and wash equipment room.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
 - 2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
 - 3. Accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes.
 - 4. Warning tape.
- B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:
 - 1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - 2. Reinforcement details.
 - 3. Frame and cover design and manhole frame support rings.
 - 4. Ladder details.
 - 5. Grounding details.
 - 6. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
 - 7. Joint details.
- C. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:

1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 2. Cover design.
 3. Grounding details.
 4. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
- D. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
 - B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
 - C. Source quality-control test reports.
 - D. Field quality-control test reports.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Comply with ANSI C2.
 - B. Comply with [NFPA 70][the California Electrical Code (CEC)].
 - C. Installer Qualifications:
 1. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: Certified by manufacturer as trained in installation of PVC-coated conduit.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.
 - B. Store precast concrete and other factory-fabricated underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
 - C. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and/or Owner no fewer than twenty-four hours in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Construction Manager's and/or Owner's written permission.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT ACCESSORIES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. ARNCO Corp.
 2. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
 3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 4. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
- B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type EB-40-PVC, ASTM F 512, UL 651A, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.
- C. Duct Accessories:
 1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
 2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.3 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the requirements of PennDot Bulletin 15, provide products by one of the following: (No substitutions)

1. Concrete Concepts, Inc.
 2. Concrete Safety Sys.
 3. Eagle Concrete Prod.
 4. Faddis Concrete Products.
 5. Wine Concrete Products, Inc.
- B. Comply with PennDot Publication 72M, standard drawing RC-81M for construction standards for handholes JB-1, JB-2, JB-11 and JB-12 as applicable. Standards are available for use on PA Dot website at <ftp://ftp.dot.state.pa.us/public/bureaus/design/PUB72M>.
- C. Comply with PennDot publication 408, sections 605, 701, 703 704, 714, 910 and 1100 for material requirements.
- D. Description: "Pre-cast" handholes shall be made from Class AA concrete and conform to PennDot publication 408, section 714.
- E. Frame and Cover: Shall be malleable iron or gray iron casting in conformance with PennDot publication 408, section 1105.02 (h).
1. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC", or "COMMUNICATIONS" as required for each service.
 2. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Conform to standards as outlined on PennDot standard drawings RC-81M and RC-82M
 - a. Pre-cast handholes: Provide knockouts in accordance with detail C on PennDot standard drawing RC-81M.
- F. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. Carson Industries LLC.
 - c. CDR Systems Corporation.
 - d. NewBasis.

2.4 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Pre-cast handholes: Provide testing and acceptance in accordance with PennDot publication 408, section 714.7.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Ducts for Electrical Cables Over 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40PVC, in concrete-encased

duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks, Driveways, and Roadways: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring:
 - 1. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: PennDot JB-1 & JB-2 as applicable.
 - 2. Units subject to Vehicular traffic loads: PennDot JB-11 & JB-12 as applicable.

3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- B. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching."

3.4 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes to drain in both directions.
- B. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 25 feet, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- D. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Division 26 Section "Common Work

Results for Electrical."

- E. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psi hydrostatic pressure.
- F. Pulling Cord: Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire, including spares.
- G. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
 - 1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 5 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 - 2. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
 - 3. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Use a plank to direct concrete down sides of bank assembly to trench bottom. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
 - 4. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. On the drawings (see duct bank section[s]) details for additional reinforcement requirements. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 - 5. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
 - 6. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts. See duct bank section(s) details for additional duct spacing criteria.
 - 7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 8. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
 - b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

9. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape directly above ductbank at 12 inches below finished grade. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.

H. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:

1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 5 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 31 Section "Earthmoving – Building Pad" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
4. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earthmoving – Building Pad."
5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earthmoving – Building Pad."
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
9. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
 - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE HANDHOLES

- A. Installation of concrete handholes shall be done in compliance with PennDot publication 408, section 910 as outlined below.
- B. Obtain acceptance of any change in box location before installation.
- C. Excavation: Excavate, then construct or install handhole. Backfill around handhole and dispose of excess or unsuitable material. Ground the handhole as required.
- D. Pre-cast handholes: If using precast handholes with knockouts, remove the knockouts, then tightly grout the conduit or conduit sleeves in place with non-shrink mortar.

- E. Grounding: Ground exposed metal parts of handhole with a minimum 21.15 mm squared (No. 4 AWG) ground wire and a minimum 12 mm x 2.5 m (1/2-inch by 8-foot) ground rod. Connect the ground wire to the ground rod with either an exothermic weld or with a bronze connector clamp. Connection to an adjacent system ground rod is allowable.

3.6 GROUNDING OF DUCTBANKS

- A. Ground underground ducts according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
 - 2. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
 - 3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

SECTION 260544

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 6. Pressure Plates: Plastic.
 - 7. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. HOLDRITE.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
 - 2. Labels.
 - 3. Bands and tubes.
 - 4. Tapes and stencils.
 - 5. Tags.
 - 6. Signs.
 - 7. Cable ties.
 - 8. Paint for identification.
 - 9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
 - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - d. Panduit Corp.

B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. HellermannTyton.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.

C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Grafoplast Wire Markers.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
 2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. HellermannTyton.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Panduit Corp.

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Champion America.

- c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. HellermannTyton.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch-wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Seton Identification Products.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - 2. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 3. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".

- c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
4. Tag: Type I:
 - a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches.
 - c. Thickness: 4 mils.
 - d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft..
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf and 2500 psi.
 5. Tag: Type II:
 - a. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches.
 - c. Thickness: 12 mils.
 - d. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft..
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 400 lbf and 11,500 psi.
 6. Tag: Type ID:
 - a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches.
 - c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
 - e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft..
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf and 4600 psi.
 7. Tag: Type IID:
 - a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches.
 - c. Overall Thickness: 8 mils.
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
 - e. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft..
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf and 12,500 psi.
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch.

2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Marking Services, Inc.
 - c. Seton Identification Products.

- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory screened permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.

- C. Write-on Tags:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Seton Identification Products.
 2. Polyester Tags: 0.015 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
 4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Brady Corporation.
- b. Champion America.
- c. Marking Services, Inc.
2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Marking Services, Inc.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Self-adhesive.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. HellermannTyton.
 2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 3. Marking Services, Inc.
 4. Panduit Corp.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 4. Color: Black.

- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.

- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and load shedding.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- W. Underground Line Warning Tape:
1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- X. Metal Tags:
1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Secure using general-purpose UV-stabilized plenum-rated cable ties.
- Y. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Secure using general-purpose UV-stabilized plenum-rated cable ties.
- Z. Write-on Tags:
1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Secure using general-purpose UV-stabilized plenum-rated cable ties.
- AA. Baked-Enamel Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.
- BB. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- CC. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

DD. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch-high, black letters on 20-inch centers.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 30-foot maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- H. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.

- I. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- J. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- K. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- L. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- M. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- N. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
 - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- O. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- P. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- Q. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- R. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- S. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- T. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and load shedding.
- U. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Indoor Equipment: Baked-enamel signs.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Switchgear.
 - e. Switchboards.
 - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - g. Substations.
 - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - i. Motor-control centers.
 - j. Enclosed switches.
 - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - l. Enclosed controllers.
 - m. Variable-speed controllers.
 - n. Push-button stations.
 - o. Power-transfer equipment.
 - p. Contactors.
 - q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
 - r. Battery-inverter units.
 - s. Battery racks.
 - t. Power-generating units.
 - u. Monitoring and control equipment.
 - v. UPS equipment.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 26 08 00

COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 – General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. The requirements of this Section apply to all sections of Division 26.
- B. Owner's Project Requirements (OPR) developed by the Commissioning Authority (CxA) and Basis of Design (BOD) documentation prepared by the Client Agency and Design Professional contains requirements that apply to this Section.
- C. This project will have selected building systems commissioned. The complete list of equipment and systems to be commissioned are specified in Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. The commissioning process, which the Contractor is responsible to execute, is defined in Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Division 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

- B. Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

1.4 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for commissioning electrical systems, sub-systems and equipment. This Section supplements the general requirements specified in Section 019113 General Commissioning Requirements.
- B. Refer to Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for more specifics regarding processes and procedures as well as roles and responsibilities for all Commissioning Team members.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for definitions.

1.6 COMMISSIONED SYSTEMS

- A. Commissioning of a system or systems specified in this Division is part of the construction process. Documentation and testing of these systems, as well as training of the CLIENT AGENCY's Operation and Maintenance personnel, is required in cooperation with the CLIENT AGENCY and the Commissioning Agent.
- B. For a list of Electrical systems that will be commissioned refer to 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. The commissioning process requires review of selected Submittals. The Commissioning Agent will identify, from a list provided by the Contractors, which submittals will be reviewed by the Commissioning Agent.
- B. The commissioning process requires Submittal review simultaneously with engineering review. Specific submittal requirements related to the commissioning process are specified in Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Prepare schedule indicating anticipated start dates for the following:
 - 1. Equipment and system startups.
 - 2. System checkout.
 - 3. System orientation and inspections.
 - 4. Operation and maintenance manual submittals.
 - 5. Training sessions.
- B. Schedule occupancy sensitive tests of equipment and systems during conditions of both minimum and maximum occupancy or use.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Notify Commissioning Authority minimum of four weeks in advance of the following:
 - 1. Scheduled equipment and system startups.
 - 2. Scheduled system checkouts.
- B. Coordinate programming of systems with construction and commissioning schedules.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Place Electrical systems and equipment into full operation and continue operation during each working day of commissioning.

3.2 SYSTEMS READINESS CHECKLISTS

- A. The Contractor shall complete Systems Readiness Checklists to verify systems, sub-systems, and equipment installation is complete and systems are ready for Systems Functional Testing. The Commissioning Agent will prepare Systems Readiness Checklists to be used to document equipment installation. The Contractor shall complete the checklists. Completed checklists shall be submitted to the CLIENT AGENCY and to the Commissioning Agent for review. The Commissioning Agent may spot-check a sample of completed checklists. If the Commissioning Agent determines that the information provided on the checklist is not accurate, the Commissioning Agent will return the marked-up checklist to the Contractor for correction and re-submission. If the Commissioning Agent determines that a significant number of completed checklists for similar equipment are not accurate, the Commissioning Agent will select a broader sample of checklists for review. If the Commissioning Agent determines that a significant number of the broader sample of checklists is also inaccurate, all the checklists for the type of equipment will be returned to the Contractor for correction and re-submission. Refer to SECTION 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for submittal requirements for System Readiness Checklists, Equipment Startup Reports, and other commissioning documents.

3.3 CONTRACTORS TESTS

- A. Contractor tests as required by other sections of Division 26 shall be scheduled and documented. The Commissioning Agent will witness selected Contractor tests. Contractor tests shall be completed prior to scheduling Systems Functional Performance Testing.

3.4 SYSTEMS FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. The Commissioning Process includes Systems Functional Performance Testing that is intended to test systems functional performance under steady state conditions, to test system reaction to changes in operating conditions, and system performance under emergency conditions. The Commissioning Agent will prepare detailed Systems Functional Performance Test procedures for review and approval by the Client Agency's Representative. The Contractor shall review and comment on the tests prior to approval. The Contractor shall provide the required labor, materials, and test equipment identified in the test procedure to perform the tests. The Commissioning Agent will direct and document the testing. The Contractor shall sign the test reports to verify tests were performed. See Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS, for additional details.

3.5 TRAINING OF CLIENT AGENCY PERSONNEL

- A. Training of the CLIENT AGENCY operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Client Agency's Representative and Commissioning Agent. Provide competent, factory authorized personnel to provide instruction to operation and maintenance personnel concerning the location, operation, and troubleshooting of the installed systems. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Client Agency's Representative after submission and approval of formal training plans. Refer to Section 019113 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS and Division 26 Sections for additional Contractor training requirements.

END OF SECTION 260800

SECTION 262726

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 3. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
 - 4. Wall plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for pre-marking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
 - 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 - 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 - 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.4 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

A. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- 3.

B. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

2.5 WALL PLATES

A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.

4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailling existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles down. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
 - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Non-fusible switches.
 - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 4. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and SKM electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and SKM electronic format.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Square D; by Schneider Electric; or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 - 1. Single throw.
 - 2. Three pole.
 - 3. 600-V ac.
 - 4. 1200 A and smaller.
 - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
 - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 - 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NON-FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Square D; by Schneider Electric; or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 - 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 7. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Square D; by Schneider Electric; or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. General Electric Company.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated. Circuit breaker/circuit breaker combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."

- E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: 60A and smaller. Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Larger than 60A, smaller than 100A. Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- H. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: 100A and larger. Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Instantaneous trip.
 - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response (As Indicated.)
- I. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- J. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- K. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- L. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- M. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Lugs: Mechanical or Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint..
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1) directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9). The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used

to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X Stainless Steel.
 - 3. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp and maintenance/repair bay, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 9.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.

- i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
- j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

F. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- d. Verify that the unit is clean.
- e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
- h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit

breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

- b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

- 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

G. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- 1. Test procedures used.
- 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
- 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 265119

LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology as specified on construction drawings.
 - 2. Lighting fixture supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

- a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
- 1. Luminaires.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
 - 4. Structural members to which equipment and or luminaires will be attached.
 - 5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - 7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F.
 - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- B. Altitude: Sea level to 2000 feet.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- F. CRI of minimum 80 CCT of 3500 K or as indicated on plans.
- G. Rated lamp life of minimum 35,000 hours.
- H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- I. Internal driver.
- J. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac or 277 V ac as indicated on the plans.
 - 1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

- B. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.
- C. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
 - 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secured to outlet box.
 - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
 - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
 - 1. Ceiling Mount:
 - a. Two 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to required length.
 - b. Four-point pendant mount with 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to required length.
 - c. Hook mount.
 - 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
 - 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 - 4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
 - 5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
 2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
- I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
- B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 265219

EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Emergency lighting units.
 - 2. Exit signs.
 - 3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
 - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
 - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.
 - a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires and signs, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires and signs shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.

2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule:
1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
 4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
 - e. Sprinklers.
 - f. Access panels.
 7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

- B. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for the entire warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for recessed luminaires.
- F. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
 - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1400 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
 - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - 3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F or exceeding 104 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
 - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F.
 - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
 - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet.
4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
- a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- G. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
- 1. Emergency Connection: Operate LED lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire.
 - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - 3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
 - 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
 - 6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
 - 7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - 8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - 9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Luminaires:
 - 1. As indicated on Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule,

C. Emergency Lighting Unit:

1. As indicated on Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule,

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

A. Internally Lighted Signs:

1. As indicated on Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule,
2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Conduit: Rigid galvanized steel, Electrical metallic tubing, Flexible metallic conduit, minimum 3/4 inch in diameter.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of fixture weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
 - 2. Do not attach fixtures directly to gypsum board.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of fixture oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
 - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
 - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service:
 - 1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
 - 1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.
 - a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265219

SECTION 312000

EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

- I. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- J. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material test reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- B. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D 2487 Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3 according to AASHTO M 145], or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 2 inches (75 mm)] in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487 Groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 294/D 2940M 0; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940/D 2940M; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored to comply with local practice or requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored to comply with local practice or requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.

1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.3 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

3.4 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired dump truck to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

- B. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.5 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2 MPa), may be used when approved by Architect.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

3.6 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.7 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 - 1. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 - 2. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

3.8 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.9 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
 - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

3.10 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - 2. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform inspections:
- B. Testing Agency: Owner may engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.12 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.13 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

SECTION 321216

ASPHALT PAVING

1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. The specifications sections "General Conditions of the Construction Contract", "Special Conditions", and "Division 1 - General Requirements" form a part of this Section by this reference thereto, and shall have the same force and effect as if printed herewith in full.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, fill material, separation geotextiles, unbound-aggregate subbase and base courses, and aggregate pavement shoulders.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each paving material. Include statement that mixes containing recycled materials will perform equal to mixes produced from all new materials.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements for asphalt paving work.
 - 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692/D 692M, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- B. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.

2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: ASTM D 6373 or AASHTO M 320 binder designation PG 64-22.
- B. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397/D 2397M or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

2.3 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense-graded, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Asphalt Mix Design Methods".
 - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
 - 1. Patch surface depressions deeper than 1 inch (25 mm) after milling, before wearing course is laid

3.3 PATCHING

- A. Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into

perimeter of adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

- B. Tack Coat: Before placing patch material, apply tack coat uniformly to vertical asphalt surfaces abutting the patch. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- C. Placing Patch Material: Fill excavated pavement areas with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

3.4 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.5 PLACING HOT-MIX ASPHALT

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand in areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
 - 1. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
 - 2. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.6 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 - 1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041/D 2041M, but not less than 90 percent or greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- G. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch (3 mm)
 - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch (6 mm).

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 330500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping joining materials.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Sleeves.
 - 5. Identification devices.
 - 6. Piping system common requirements.
 - 7. Equipment installation common requirements.
 - 8. Painting.
 - 9. Concrete bases.
 - 10. Metal supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
- B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Dielectric fittings.

2. Identification devices.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.

C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch-thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
1. ABS Piping: ASTM D2235.
 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F493.
 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D3138.

2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
- C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 and Larger:
1. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Description: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
 - 1. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
 - b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
 - 1. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 and smaller.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded.
- F. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
 - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

- D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other utilities Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
- C. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
- E. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Department.
- F. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
 - 1. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- G. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least 3 mils thick.
 - 1. Width: 1-1/2 inches on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches; 2-1/2 inches for larger pipes.
 - 2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
 - 1. Material: 0.032-inch- thick, polished brass or aluminum.
 - 2. Size: 1-1/2 inches in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
- I. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.
- J. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.

1. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
 2. Thickness: 1/16 inch, for units up to 20 sq. in. or 8 inches in length, and 1/8 inch for larger units.
 3. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
- K. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric couplings or dielectric nipples.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Dielectric nipples.
 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems. Refer to Section 232113.33 "Open-Loop Well Water Piping" for underground piping requirements.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

- I. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - b. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
- J. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- K. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B32.
- I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

- K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D2235 and ASTM D2661 appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D2855.
 - 5. PVC Non-pressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
 - 6. PVC to ABS No-npressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D3138 Appendix.
- L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3139.
- M. Plastic Non-pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D3212.
- N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D2657.
 - 1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
 - 1. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot non-insulated piping.
 - 2. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
 - a. Near each valve and control device.
 - b. Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
 - c. Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
 - d. At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch-high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch high for distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
 - 2. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
- C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

3.8 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.9 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 330500

SECTION 331114

OPEN LOOP HEAT PUMP EXTRACTION/DISCHARGE WELLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Two existing wells have been drilled on the site in areas as indicated on the drawings. The existing wells are cased to depths as indicated on the drawings.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible to provide all items as defined herein and as detailed in the drawings for a complete and working system.
- C. The project intent is to have both wells changeable between extraction and discharge capabilities.
- D. Section Includes:
 - 1. Well casings finish materials.
 - 2. Submersible well pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
- C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- D. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit certified performance curves and rated capacities of selected well pumps and furnished specialties and accessories for each type and size of well pump indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For well pumps. Show layout and connections.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 2. Setting Drawings: Include templates and directions for installing foundation bolts, anchor bolts, and other anchorages.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each well pump to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with AWWA A100 for water supply wells.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The wells have been drilled and tested to provide adequate flow and discharge capabilities as required for this project.
- B. Final well reports will be made available to accepted .2 Contractor upon request.

2.3 WELL CASINGS

- A. Existing steel cased, single ply, steel pipe with threaded ends and threaded couplings for threaded joints were installed for this project. Existing casings shall be finished as required.
- B. Pitless Adapter: Fitting, of shape required to fit onto casing, with waterproof seals.
- C. Pitless Unit: Factory-assembled equipment that includes pitless adapter.
- D. Well Seals: Casing cap, with holes for piping and cables, that fits into top of casing and is removable, waterproof, and vermin proof.

2.4 SUBMERSIBLE WELL PUMPS

- A. Description: Submersible, vertical-turbine well pump.
- B. Standards: HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3.
- C. Impeller Material: Stainless steel.
- D. Motor: Capable of continuous operation under water, with protected submersible power cable.
- E. Well Drop Piping: Non-threaded locking type joint ASTM D1784 Schedule 80 pipe also meeting ASTM D1785 and ASTM D2837, capable of meeting pressure rating not less than 160 psig. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw." Joints shall be a spline lock joint, using elastomeric seal gaskets.

- F. : ASTM D2239, SDR Numbers 5.3, 7, or 9 PE pipe; made with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw."
 - 1. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated, male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics as scheduled on the drawings.

2.5 CASING ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide well pipe centering sleeves as required. Sleeves shall be plastic type devices that snap fit around pipe.
- B. Provide torque arrestor in pipe line above pump discharge. Arrestor shall be multi-piece design. Material shall be flexible PVC. Attach arrestor to pipe with stainless steel pipe clamps.

2.6 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide permanent casing with temporary well cap. Install with top of casing 36 inches above finished grade.
- B. Install submersible well pumps according to HI 2.4 and provide access for periodic maintenance.
 - 1. Before lowering permanent pump into well, lower a dummy pump that is slightly longer and wider than permanent pump to determine that permanent pump can be installed. Correct alignment problems.
 - 2. Before lowering permanent pump into well, start pump to verify correct rotation.
 - 3. Securely tighten discharge piping joints.
 - 4. Connect motor to submersible pump and locate near well bottom.
 - a. Connect power cable while connection points are dry and undamaged.
 - b. Do not damage power cable during installation; use cable clamps that do not have sharp edges.
 - c. Install water-sealed surface plate that will support pump and piping.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are as detailed in the drawings. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - 1. Connect water distribution system in trench to well pipe at pitless adapter.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Water supply well will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Water Analysis Testing:
 - 1. Engage a qualified testing agency to make bacteriological, physical, and chemical analyses of water from each finished well and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Analyze water sample from each finished well for bacteriological, physical, and chemical quality and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Water Quality Protection: Prevent well contamination, including undesirable physical and chemical characteristics.
- B. Protect water supply wells to prevent tampering and introducing foreign matter. Retain temporary well cap until installation is complete.

END OF SECTION 331113